Returning to Eden:
True Unity & Willing Communication

by Wade Black

"I am the light of the world. Whoever follows me will never walk in darkness but will have the light of life."
~ Jesus
# Table of Contents

**Chapters Relating Only to Horses are in Bold**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Preface</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>True Unity</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In the Beginning: A Perfect World</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In the Beginning: God, Man, Animals</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Class Lecture: Horse Behavior</strong></td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Two Thought Processes</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job Completion vs. True Unity</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>God’s Will: Driving Factors</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Confidence/Faith</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obstacles in Accomplishing the Job</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>God’s Will: To Do a Job</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st Obstacle: Submitting Our Will</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Two Levels of Submission</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Two Kinds of Horses and Two Kinds of People</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd Obstacle: Communicating God’s Will</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Direction for My Ministry: “Communication”</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd Obstacle: Obeying Commands</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resistance in Obeying Commands &amp; Building Confidence</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4th Obstacle: Completing the Job</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Willing Submission</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Communication</td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Direction and Life</td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>False Direction</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Balanced Direction to Life Ratio</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solid Foundation of Maneuvers (Mechanical)</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solid Foundation of Maneuvers (Mental)</td>
<td>188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solid Foundation of Maneuvers (Bringing Mechanical to Mental)</td>
<td>195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Three Stages of Breaking a Horse</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theme of the Book: “Communication”</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rivers in Eden: The Way to Paradise</td>
<td>205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rivers in Eden</td>
<td>208</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Euphrates: Up To Our Ankles</td>
<td>209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hiddekel: Up To Our Knees</td>
<td>210</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
I have been raised in a Christian family and have known I have a savior for as long as I can remember. I have always said that if someone put a gun to my head and asked me if I was a Christian, I would die for the Lord. However, it wasn’t until I received Mononucleosis, the Epstein Bar Virus, and then was diagnosed with Chronic Fatigue Syndrome, that I would fully understand what it meant to die for Christ.

It is easy to say that you would die for Christ if the time ever came, but your true loyalty to the Lord comes when you are willing to live for Christ. This is a lesson I have learned through the calling of Jesus Christ. “And we know that in all things God works for the good of those who love him, who have been called according to his purpose. For those God foreknew he also predestined to be conformed to the likeness of his Son, that he might be the firstborn among many brothers. And those he predestined, he also called; those he called, he also justified; those he justified, he also glorified” (Romans 8:28-30).

I was 16 when the Lord first called me. I gave Him my life to be used in building His kingdom in the summer, and in the fall I began to get sick. I continually got sicker, until I had to give up high school sports, including a rodeo scholarship. Sports were very important to me throughout high school and it was very tough for me to give them up. I looked to the doctors and they told me there was not much they could do. They said I would need to learn to manage my sickness in order to get on with my life.

The prognosis was not good. The doctors said if I managed it correctly, in five years I might be back to fifty percent; in ten years, seventy-five percent, and in twenty years, I would be the same as the rest of the people my own age. The medical field gave me no hope. It had been a virus that depleted my immune system and caused me to become very weak. Once my immune system went down, my body could not fight off harmful substances and my internal organs had trouble operating the way they should; causing me to remain sick. Herbal pills helped my immune system to gain some strength back and helped my organs to function a little better. However, I still remained very weak.

I knew that the Lord had let a sickness fall upon me and I knew that He could heal me. However, I was a little bitter about having to give everything up, and I was not ready to come running back to Him yet. It took me a while of running around in my weakening flesh, trying to find comfort everywhere else, before I came back to the Lord. Finally, I came to the point where I could run no longer.

Although, I did not know it at the time, I needed a new organ that was vital to my recovery; I needed a new heart. Through a man in Christ, the Lord took out my heart of stone and gave me a new heart to serve Him. All along, I had thought it had been my body that had failed me, but in all reality, it was my heart. It was from that moment on, that I noticed I started to recover from my sickness.

The Lord has given me a great gift. Although my flesh is weak, when I seek Him I receive strength. “To keep me from becoming conceited because of these surpassingly great
revelations, there was given me a thorn in my flesh, a messenger of Satan, to torment me. Three times I pleaded with the Lord to take it away from me. But he said to me, ‘My grace is sufficient for you, for my power is made perfect in weakness.’ Therefore I will boast all the more gladly about my weaknesses, so that Christ’s power may rest on me’ (2 Corinthians 12:7-9). The Lord has not totally healed my flesh from this sickness yet, but when I am seeking Him, I am strengthened. The Lord has called me and He knows I have the attention span of a five-year-old on a sugar high. To ensure that I stay on the right path, He has given me a thorn in my flesh; that I must seek His spirit. “That is why, for Christ’s sake, I delight in weaknesses, in insults, in hardships, in persecutions, in difficulties. For when I am weak, then I am strong” (2 Corinthians 12:10). His spirit is where I have learned to find comfort and this is where He has revealed Himself to me.

I am excited to be an instrument for God. I have given Him my life and I will follow Him wherever He chooses to lead me. However, I feel I suffer from a little ADD. I feel like a Border Collie pup who set out to do a job with his Master; raring to please Him. I see the cows and am obeying the commands one minute and the next minute, I am chasing a deer over a hill, with God shaking His head at me. God then grabs me by the ears and shakes me around a little bit. Then I remember what we set out to do; we’re moving cows!

I then dive back in, trying to please Him and I work like a charm. That is, until I see a rabbit go running by me and then I am off again. God’s love never ceases to amaze me. He is patient and when I have returned from chasing the distraction, He is waiting to pick up where we left off. The consequences of chasing distractions are not fun, so I am trying to learn to stay focused on the will of my Master.

I can really relate to one of Jesus’ disciples, Peter. One minute Jesus is telling him that upon his revelation He was going to build His church, “And I tell you that you are Peter, and on this rock I will build my church, and the gates of Hades will not overcome it” (Matthew 16:18), and the next, He says, “Get behind me, Satan! You are a stumbling block to me; you do not have in mind the things of God, but the things of men” (Matthew 16:23). Peter also tried to defend Jesus by chopping an ear off one of the guards who was seizing Him, “Then the men stepped forward, seized Jesus and arrested him. With that, one of Jesus’ companions reached for his sword, drew it out and struck the servant of the high priest, cutting off his ear” (Matthew 26:50-51). And in Matthew 26:69-75 Peter disowned Jesus three times. Peter matured in his walk with the Lord, and God was able to use him in amazing ways. I give my life to God, that He may guide me to maturity and that I may live the life He has called me to live.

This book is what the Lord has shown me, and what I have experienced, in my walk with Him. The Lord did not reveal these things to me because I have lived a righteous life; that is certainly not true. I have hit the bars with the same intensity that I have charged after the Lord. However, God is changing me; I love Him and want to give Him my life. I believe the Lord has revealed Himself to me because I have been willing to leave everything behind and climb the mountain to experience Him; just as Moses did. I hunger and thirst for what Moses tasted and I have come boldly to the throne to receive it. I often get distracted, but He is always changing me, conforming me to the likeness of His son, “For those God foreknew he also predestined
to be conformed to the likeness of his Son, that he might be the firstborn among many brothers” (Romans 8:29), and I want nothing more than to please Him.

We are all called to be a light for Christ. “…let your light shine before men, that they may see your good deeds and praise your Father in heaven” (Matthew 5:16). However, God uses us all in different ways. I asked the Lord how He wanted to use me one time and He told me I was to use horses to bring people closer to Him. I teach the colt starting classes at MSU and the Lord has helped me develop a very simple way of teaching the class; the teachings of Jesus Christ. I have learned a lot both directly and indirectly from Tom Dorrance (indirectly), Ray Hunt (my grandfather), and Martin Black (my father), and I would not be where I am today without the teachings of these men. I owe these men a great deal of credit for what little I have been able to absorb from them. I say “what little I have absorbed” because I have been blessed with the opportunity to be raised around some great horsemen and if I would have absorbed even a quarter of their talent, I should be a lot further from where I am today. These men, along with many others, have had a great impact in my life in setting a foundation for understanding the horse. However, my greatest teacher has been Jesus Christ. I give God all the glory and the praise for where I am today.

The biggest limiting factor in helping my students progress in their horsemanship is the inability to communicate with the horse and learning how to change their perspective. They must learn how to quit focusing on job completion and begin riding in perfection. This is what I try to teach them in my class. I am not interested in job completion; but perfection. Everything that I teach in my class is a parable to help them come into perfection in Christ Jesus, “We proclaim him, admonishing and teaching everyone with all wisdom, so that we may present everyone perfect in Christ” (Colossians 1:28). This book is not meant to teach you about God, but to help you realize that we can be taught by God and inspire you to go boldly to the throne to be taught. The biggest limiting factor with my students is lack of communication and the biggest limiting factor in our relationship with God is a lack of communication. One of my goals in this book is to help you realize what is holding you back from communicating with your horse, but more importantly to help you realize what is holding you back from communicating with God.

In 2007 I was competing at a PRCA rodeo in Miles City, MT and was fighting my head pretty badly before getting on my horse. I was trying to picture a perfect saddle bronc ride and trying to get all the rides of imperfection out of my mind. I was trying to stand on Scripture to psych myself up and give me strength and energy. However, I kept feeling tired and weak, and I could not get my mind off all the rides of imperfection. I knew if I got on my saddle bronc in this mindset it was not going to be very pretty. So I snuck away and laid down in our rodeo rig and submitted everything into the Lord’s hands.

I laid everything at His feet and prayed for the Lord’s help. As I began to pray, I could feel the Lord’s presence begin to saturate my body taking away all my cares and worries, leaving me with total peace. I quit looking at everything from my perspective and started to feel total comfort knowing that everything was in God’s hands. The Lord redirected my focus from selfish ambitions (riding broncs) to a heavenly perspective (building the Kingdom). The Lord opened my eyes and showed me a vision concerning the hearts of the men behind the bucking chutes.
The Lord showed me how many of them had received a little spark for Him, but the spark had never been fanned giving it the opportunity to grow. He told me to “fan the flame.” The Holy Spirit is like a mighty wind and will bring life to a tiny spark, igniting an all-consuming fire. As the Lord began to speak to me giving me direction for my life, I became sanctified by the word of God, “For it is sanctified by the word of God and prayer” (1 Timothy 4:5 KJV), and empowered by the Holy Spirit. “For you shall receive power after the Holy Ghost has come upon you” (Acts 1:8).

I jumped out of the seat of the car and with a new perspective on life prepared to get on my horse. I was no longer tormented by rides of imperfection, but filled with the all-consuming peace and joy of the Holy Spirit. I climbed on my horse with the mindset of having fun and riding entirely for the Lord. The Lord blessed me with an 83-point spur ride which won the rodeo and let me take home the first place check.

This is what I hope the Lord is able to give you after reading this book; an open line of communication. “My sheep hear my voice, and I know them, and they follow me” (John 10:27 KJV). God has not called me to preach the Gospel, but to demonstrate the Gospel. I am only called to prepare the way for the teacher. I am called to help people come into the fullness of the New Covenant and be taught by God. I am called to introduce people to the Holy Spirit and God has showed me He will do the rest. Just like a person must prepare a colt before he can start to communicate with them, I am called to show people how to prepare themselves so that they may start communicating with God. God wants to communicate with us, we just need to be “willing” and then able. It is so simple; the things that hold us back from communicating with our horse are the same things that hold us back from communicating with God.

Seven years ago the Lord told me, “Write down the words that I have given you, that they may know I am God.” In 2002 the Lord showed me a vision of Amaia (my wife) and me walking to Bozeman, MT and opening a book. Once we opened the book, fire came out of the book and people started to gather around the fire dancing and the fire spread across the state. Originally, I thought the book was a Bible, meaning God wanted me to start a Bible study. However, I believe that the book that I was supposed to open in Montana is this book. A year ago the Lord gave me another vision where I was riding in a boat with my friends. Jesus then walked out on the water, grabbed my hand and led me across the water. Once I had reached the shore I started handing out books. I have stepped out of the boat, relying on God that He will take care of me as a minister of Christ and these are the books that I have been called to hand out. “So do not be ashamed to testify about our Lord, or ashamed of me his prisoner. But join with me in suffering for the gospel, by the power of God, who has saved us and called us to a holy life – not because anything we have done but because of his own purpose and grace” (2 Timothy 1:8-9).

I hope after reading this book you will have a better understanding of how to eliminate the resistance that is holding you back from Returning to Eden: True Unity and Willing Communication.
**Introduction**

Is God real, or is He just an imaginary friend for grown ups? I think this is a very good question and it all depends on who you ask. Some people believe that God does not exist; some believe in some kind of a higher power, and some believe in the God of Abraham.

There are 3.8 billion people in the world that believe in the God of Adam, Noah, Abraham, and Moses. The 3 primary religions are Islam, Judaism, and Christianity. Followers of Islam number 1.2 billion and make up 19.6% of the world’s population. Muslims believe that the Jewish god is the same as their god and that Jesus is a divinely inspired prophet, but not God. Muslims revere the Qur’an as the final uncorrupted word of God or the last testament brought through the last prophet, Muhammad. Muhammad is regarded as the "Seal of the Prophets" and Islam is viewed as the final monotheist faith for all of humanity (Wikipedia, 2008). Islamic beliefs are segregated into 4 major denominations.

Judaism followers total 14.5 million and make up 0.2% of the world’s population. Jewish theology is based on the Hebrew Bible, where the nature and commandments of God are revealed through the writings of Moses, the Torah, and the writings of the prophets, psalmists and other ancient canonized scriptures, together with the Torah known as the Tanakh. Additionally, it usually has a basis in its Oral Law, as recorded in the Mishnah and Gemora which form the Talmud (Wikipedia, 2008). Jewish theology does not revere Jesus as God or an inspired prophet, but believes that someday the Messiah will return. Judaism has separated into 5 main branches or denominations.

Christianity followers number 2.03 billion and make up 33% of the world’s population. Christians believe that the god worshipped by the faithful Hebrew people of the pre-Christian era has always revealed Himself as He did through Jesus; but this was never obvious until the Word of the Lord, the revelation of God, became flesh and dwelt among us (see John 1). Also, despite the fact that the Angel of the Lord spoke to the Patriarchs revealing God to them, it has always been only by the spirit of God granting them understanding, that men have been able to perceive afterward that they had been visited by God Himself. After Jesus was raised from the dead—according to Christian scriptures—this ancient Hebrew witness of how God reveals Himself as Messiah came to be seen in a very different light. It was then that Jesus’ followers began to speak widely of Him as God himself (see John 20:28; Wikipedia, 2008). Christianity has divided into 300 branches making up 38,000 denominations.

Is the God of Abraham the same God that sent His son Jesus Christ? If He is, then why don’t the Jews and the Muslims believe in Him? Is Christ the only way to heaven? Is there any way of truly knowing who is right and who has the answers? If Christianity is right, and there are 38,000 different denominations that claim to follow Christ, which one of them has the answers? If Christianity is right, does God want His church divided into 38,000 different denominations?

“I appeal to you, brothers, in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ, that all of you agree with one another so that there may be no divisions among you and that you may be perfectly united in mind and thought. My brothers, some from the Chloe’s household have informed me that there are quarrels (debates) among you. What I mean is this: One says,

There are 38,000 denominations that believe different things and claim that Christ is the head of the Church. It looks to me like Christ is divided among the Christians. I am not talking about God’s children meeting in different places to be taught by the teacher (Holy Spirit – John 14:26) and follow the priest of the New Covenant, Jesus Christ (Hebrew 9:11). No, it would be hard to fit 2.03 billion people in the same building. I am talking about 2.03 billion people segregated into 38,000 different denominations all believing different things, following different doctrines. If all 38,000 denominations follow Jesus, then why do they all believe different things and teach different doctrines? Is it even possible to think that all of God’s children could believe the same thing and become united in Christ Jesus?

Who do you belong to? Who do you follow? Do you believe in the God of Abraham? Do you believe that there is a higher power? Do you follow the beliefs of the atheists? Do you follow the religious beliefs of the big bang theory? Where do you put your faith? Whose teachings do you follow? Do you follow the beliefs of the Catholics, Lutherans, Baptists, Presbyterians, Mormons, or Quakers? There are 38,000 different denominations, and if you believe in God you more than likely belong to one of them.

Is it possible to have answers for our questions about God, or will we never really know until we die? Is it possible in this life for our beliefs to become reality? Is there any way of truly knowing? If there is a higher power, can He speak to His people? If He can speak to His people, does He want to? If He can speak to His people and He wants to speak to His people, why can’t His people hear Him and why is there confusion and division among His children? Hopefully this book will help answer some of these questions.

For eighteen years I believed in the God of Abraham and I believed in Christ. I thanked Him for the past and looked forward to the future. I thanked God for sending His son to die for my sins and I looked forward to the day when I would get to meet Him face to face. I knew God in the past and I looked forward to knowing Him in the future. However, I never knew we could know Him in the present. This book is what I have learned regarding God in the present. I never knew that God could be so real in the present. Below are some words that I heard as I was riding a colt one day. I wrote down the words the Lord had given me and was amazed at how real He could be, even while I was riding a colt. These are the words that He gave me that day:

**Simplicity**-

Those who seek answers often never find solutions,
For the solution comes to those who wait patiently upon the Lord.

If you are hungry do not leave the table until you are fed,
Lest you leave discontented and die from starvation.

Turn to man with a problem and receive numerous answers,
Turn to God and receive the solution.

Do not cheat off your neighbor or you may get caught in a lie,
Raise your hand and the Teacher will help.

If the road to take seems unclear in your mind,
Open your eyes before you get lost.

Confusion leads the blind into destruction,
But, simplicity is for they who find peace in the Shepherd.

Another time as I was praying, I tried to think about God from the different perspectives of the people around the world. God showed me that there were basically 3 kinds of people; those who do not believe in God, those who believe in God, and those who know God. As I started to write, God began to speak through my pen and I began to feel the emotions of God. To the first group I felt God’s pain and suffering and I started to cry; To the second group I could feel God’s anger and disappointment; and to the last group, I could feel the overflowing love and excitement God had towards them.

GOD speaks to His children-

Am I real? Do I exist? Am I just a fairy tale passed down through the generations?

It depends on who you ask.

Some say that I am not real. They say, “I can not see you. Therefore you do not exist.”

-To them I say, “Open your eyes my child, I am right in front of you. Open your heart and you will see me. I swear to you by the blood of my only begotten son, I do exist. He is the way, the truth, and the life; no one can come to me, but through Him. If you would only open your heart, you could see Him and you would know I am real.”

Some say they know I am real. They say, “We know you are real, because we believe in the promise of our fathers. Our fathers said you are real and we have faith in our fathers.”

-To them I say, “Get away from me, you that love sin. You do not know me; if you knew me you would know my son and I would see Him in you. When I look at you, I see the son of perdition not the son of righteousness. I do not exist in the promise of your fathers, I exist in my son. He is the priest of the New Covenant. If the spirit of my son lives in you, then I exist in you. He in Me and you in Him and we are all in one. How do you not know this? Who has taught you? I told you I would send you the Teacher (Holy Spirit). Whose pupil are you? If you knew me, you would know my son. Return to your first love and I will return to you. I do not dwell in temples made with hands, I dwell in you.”

Yet some say, “I want to know you. Show me that you are real, show me your glory.”
To them I say, “Take the keys to the kingdom of heaven. I look for such as you. I will show myself to you. I will teach you. Oh my precious child come to me, the door is open. You know the door, you have the key, come unto me and I will make my abode in you.”

Am I real? Do I exist? Am I a fairy tale passed down through the generations?

It depends on who you ask.

Some say no, because they cannot see me. They are blind.
Some say yes, because they have faith in someone who saw me. Yet they are still blind.
However, some say, I want to know you.
They shall see me, they will know me, they shall see in a new light.

Am I real? Do I exist?

Ask me! I will always tell you the truth. I will show you I am real, and that you may believe and not be deceived. Seek ye first the kingdom of God and His righteousness, and all these things shall be added unto you. Ask and you shall receive, seek and you will find, knock and the door will be opened.

More than likely there will probably be things in this book, which will not line up with what you have been taught, or what you believe. That is ok; my goal for this book is not to have you adopt my beliefs. My goal for this book is to help you realize that God can speak to His people and inspire you to go to Him. Then, that you will learn to hear Him speak, and have Him tell you what to believe. I have believed in God my whole life and I never doubted He was real. I always believed in His omnipresence - “God is everywhere, whether we can sense Him or not” (Nori, His Manifest Presence, 1988). However, I never knew we could constantly experience His manifest presence in our life. “His manifest presence is revealed whenever He makes Himself real to you, personally in your spirit and you know without a shadow of a doubt God has spoken to your heart” (Nori, His Manifest Presence, 1988). The God of Abraham is a real and living God and His presence can guide His children today, in the same real way He led the Israelites out of Egypt.

“By day the Lord went ahead of them in a pillar of cloud to guide them on their way and by night in a pillar of fire to give them light, so that they could travel by day or night. Neither the pillar of cloud by day nor the pillar of the fire by night left its place in front of the people” (Exodus 13:21-22). God is real and the kicker is He wants to show us He is real. However, we have to be willing to go to Him. If God’s children would only pray the prayer of Moses, “If you are pleased with me, teach me your ways so I may know you and continue to find favor with you” (Exodus 33:13). If we would only ask for the heart and desire of Moses. “If your Presence does not go with us, do not send us up from here. How will anyone know that you are pleased with me and with your people unless you go with us? What else will distinguish me and your people from all the other people on the face of the earth?” (Exodus 33:15-16). “Then Moses said, “Now show me your glory (manifest presence)” (Exodus 33:18). Have you ever prayed that prayer? Once we begin to pray with the heart of Moses, our lives will never be the same again.
See what Rahab the spy had to say about the God of Abraham, “We have heard how the Lord dried up the water of the Red Sea for you when you came out of Egypt, and what you did to Sihon and Og, the two kings of the Amorites east of the Jordan, whom you completely destroyed. When we heard of it, our hearts melted and everyone’s courage failed because of you, for the Lord your God is God in heaven above and on the earth below” (Joshua 2:10-11).

Do people say that about your God? Do people fear your God? There undoubtedly is a lot of confusion about God in the world we live in today. People are confused because instead of praying Moses’ prayer, we are content sitting around talking about God. We discuss and interpret what our fathers had to say about God, instead of listening to what He has to say about Himself. As with anything in life, if we are confused by the interpretation, we should go to the source. I am here to tell you that my God is real! We can go to Him and He can speak to us. I serve the God of Elijah! In 1 Kings 18:22-39, Elijah thought he was the only prophet of God left alive and there were 450 prophets serving Baal. Elijah told them to get 2 bulls and they would each put a bull on their altar. “Then you call on the name of your god, and I will call on the name of the Lord. The god who answers by fire—he is God” (1 Kings 18:24). Elijah and the followers of Baal each prepared their sacrifice on the altar and the worshippers of Baal called out first to their god. They cried out constantly from morning till evening and slashed themselves with swords and spears, as was their custom, until blood flowed. But nothing happened.

Then Elijah told them to drench the altar of the Lord with water and fill the trench surrounding the altar with water. He then stepped up and prayed, “O Lord, God of Abraham, Isaac and Israel, let it be known today that you are God in Israel and that I am your servant and have done all these things at your command. Answer me, O Lord, answer me, so these people will know that you, O Lord, are God, and that you are turning their hearts back again.” “Then the fire of the Lord fell and burned up the sacrifice, the wood, the stones, and the soil, and also licked up the water in the trench. When all the people saw this, they fell prostrate and cried. ‘The Lord—He is God! The Lord—He is God!’” (1 Kings 18:36-39). God is unable to show Himself to His people if we are unwilling to look to Him. All it takes is one prayer, one prayer calling out to truly know God. God is waiting and looking for those people. Have you ever called out desperately wanting to know the God of Elijah?

As long as we are content sitting around talking about God, it is awfully hard to hear from God Himself. If everyone; Jews, Muslims, Christians, higher power believers, and the atheists, would only call out wanting to know God with an open heart, He would reveal Himself and there would be no more division. Division comes from man interpreting man and not softening our hearts to listen to God Himself. Division comes from trying to understand interpretations, instead of going to the source. Religious people say, “We have the answers, come join our church and we will help you.” True followers of God say, “He has the answers, come follow Him and He will help you.”

I always believed in a real God. However, it has been only through the past 7 years that I am beginning to know God. Is God real? Is He just an imaginary friend for grown ups? Well, you may think I am crazy, but my imaginary friend came to life 7 years ago. Although sometimes I
leave Him, He never leaves me. It is my choice every second of every day, to have Him by my side or to cast Him to the side. It is my choice, to experience Him like the men in the Bible, or to be content talking about the men in the Bible. If I let Him, He never leaves my presence; I can always feel His manifest presence in my midst. He never quits teaching and guiding, I just sometimes quit listening and looking.

If you are unsure about God, or often wonder if there may be more; I hope this book will help you come to know God in a deeper and greater way and HE will be able to answer all your questions. If there is one thing I know, it is that I have absolutely no answers, but I know of someone who does. If you come to me for the answers, I will save you the suspense; you will ultimately be disappointed. However, if you will take what the Lord has given me and go to Him, I guarantee you will never be disappointed again.

When we go to man to learn about God, it should not stop at the man. We should go through the man and ultimately stop in the manifest presence of God, for that is the only place that our needs will always be met. That is the only place that we are guaranteed peace and contentment, in this life. If you receive anything from this book, if anything speaks to your heart, it did not come from me, but by the grace of God. Grace comes from a Greek word meaning graciousness (gratifying) and means: the divine influence upon the heart and its reflection in the life. We often do not need more teaching from men, just a little grace from above. Hopefully you are able to receive the latter through the former.
Reading the title of this book, a person may say it is a spin-off of Tom Dorrance’s book, *True Unity: Willing Communication Between Horse and Human*. However, I think it is the other way around. *True Unity: Willing Communication Between God and Man* has been the theme of God’s book since the beginning of time. Tom was one of the greatest horsemen of all time. His teachings have shaped the training methods in the U.S. and many parts of the world. Tom, no doubt, had a gift. The gift that Tom possessed was not obtained through selfish ambitions or earthly knowledge. Tom’s gift was a gift from God. Tom did not possess magical powers and he was not a witch doctor. His gift originated in his heart, and gave life to a new perspective. Tom could see things in a horse that no one else could see. He had a gift to see inside the horse; a gift that I believe came from God.

Why did God give Tom this gift? I think for the same reason He gives any man a gift; to help equip them to build the kingdom of God. Although, for the majority of Tom’s life he did not give God credit for the gift, I believe the gift was given to glorify God. Tom has passed away and is with God in heaven. However, his teaching still lives on and many lives are touched. So, who receives the glory for Tom’s teaching, Tom or God? What is the focus of nearly every horse clinic, the horse or God? “Who changed the truth of God into a lie, and worshiped and served the creature more than the Creator. . .” (Romans 1:25 KJV).

Tom laid the foundation that would influence and help shape many lives. I do not believe this gift was given to Tom so that through his teaching people could gain fame and fortune. In Acts 8:9-25 we are told the story of Simon the Sorcerer who thought he could buy the gift of the Holy Spirit, so that he could be great among men. Peter told him, “May your money perish with you, because you thought you could buy the gift of God with money! You have no part or share in this ministry, because your heart is not right before God. Repent of this wickedness and pray to the Lord. Perhaps he will forgive you for having such a thought in your heart. For I see that you are full of bitterness and captive to sin” (Acts 8:20-23).

It is no secret that God gives gifts unto men. “But to each one of us grace has been given as Christ apportioned it. This is why it says: ‘When he ascended on high, he led captives in his train and gave gifts to men’” (Ephesians 4:7-8). But what gift did Tom possess? He possessed the gift of Love.

“If I speak in the tongues of men and of angels, but have not love, I am only a resounding gong or a clanging cymbal. If I have the gift of prophecy and can fathom all mysteries and all knowledge, and if I have a faith that can move mountains, but have not love, I am nothing. If I give all I possess to the poor and surrender my body to the flames, but have not love, I gain nothing. Love is patient, love is kind. It does not envy, it does not boast, it is not proud. It is not rude, it is not self-seeking, it is not easily angered, it keeps no records of wrongs. Love does not delight in evil but rejoices with the truth. It always protects, always trusts, always hopes, always perseveres” (1 Corinthians 13:1-7).

I believe that Tom had 2 gifts; he had the gift of love, but almost as important, God gave him perspective. These two go hand in hand and one without the other does not yield the same
results. Since the beginning of time there has been man and horse, and since around 3,000 B.C. man has been using the horse. For as long as there has been man and horse there has been man and God. In the same way we have wanted to use the horse, God has wanted to use man.

Throughout history there have been people that God has been able to use in amazing ways: Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, Joseph, Moses, David, Isaiah, Elijah, John the Baptist, and the disciples, just to name a few. What was it that these people possessed that separated them from the rest? Two things separated them; their heart and their perspective. Looking at these extraordinary men, we can see that they undoubtedly had the power of God upon them. However, God’s power was able to be manifested in their life, because they had a heart for God and their perspective on life revolved solely around him.

Every one of these people knew God. They had a relationship with Him and He was real in their life. They could communicate with God and they knew when they were in His perfect will and knew if they ever fell out of it. What separated these men is that if they ever fell out of God’s perfect will, they did not stay there. They ran back into the perfect will of God.

Besides love, what was Tom’s other gift? Perspective. Tom could see things inside a horse that other people could not see. What was it that Tom saw? Tom could see perfection. He could see when a horse was in perfect unity with a person, and he could see the instant they fell out of that perfection. What separated Tom was that he did not like to remain in imperfection. He took as long as it would take to find what was causing the imperfection and fix it. People would come to him and say, “I am having a horse problem.” He would reply, “I think your horse is having a people problem.” It never was the horse, it was always the person. It is never God, it is always the person.

What I do not understand is that I read the Bible and it speaks of perfection. Christ died for this perfection and it is available for anyone who believes in Him and continually seeks His will. So why do so many people believe that perfection is unattainable? Here is the kicker; this perfection is only attainable in Christ Jesus, “We proclaim him, admonishing and teaching everyone with all wisdom, so that we may present everyone perfect in Christ” (Colossians 1:28). To be “in” Christ Jesus you are no longer “in” yourself. We must die to ourselves that He may live inside us, “We were therefore buried with him through baptism into death in order that, just as Christ was raised from the dead through the glory of the Father, we too may live a new life” (Romans 6:4). “For we know that our old self was crucified with him so that the body of sin might be done away with, that we should no longer be slaves to sin – because anyone who has died has been freed from sin” (Romans 6:6-7). We must decrease that He may increase, “He must become greater; I must become less” (John 3:30).

There is something that I am constantly reminded of in Scripture and it speaks true in my life. The only thing that keeps me from perfection in Christ is me. It is not because of a lack of God’s ability, but because of a lack of my ability to submit to His will. The same is true with our horses. If perfection is ever attainable with our horse, or with God, it must begin in our heart.

When a person is starting a colt, it is nice to know the horse’s background. It is nice to know how much the horse has been worked with and what kind of foundation has been laid. I would
like to do the same thing with man and animals and our history with God. I would like to talk about “the beginning.” I think this is very important because as Christians, we need to look back at God’s relationship with man and animals and try not to make the same mistakes that others have made before us.

I think as Christians we need to look at how things were with God in the past, how they are now, and how things are going to be in the future. If we do not fully understand all that was taken from us in the beginning through sin, we cannot fully understand all that we are capable of having now, by Jesus taking that sin. I think as Christians, the majority of us do not even come close to scratching the surface of everything that God has for us on this earth; if we would only let Him show us. “But as it is written, Eye hath not seen, nor ear heard, neither have entered into the heart of man, the things which God hath prepared for them that love him. But God hath revealed them unto us by his Spirit: for the Spirit searcheth all things, yea, the deep things of God” (1 Corinthians 2:9-10 KJV).
~In the Beginning: A Perfect World~

If a man was driving down the road in perfect peace and harmony with no troubles, hardships, hurts, or cares in the world and ran into something, changing a state of peace, joy, and happiness into confusion and despair, he would have to ask himself a few questions. The first question would have to be, what happened?

After he had determined that he had hit another car, then he would ask, how did this happen? Once the man had drawn the conclusion that he had caused the accident by running a stop sign, he would then have 2 choices. He could make excuses for the accident and try to blame it on someone else, then forget the accident and hope it didn’t happen again. Or he could take responsibility for the accident, learn from it, and prevent it from happening again.

If the man chooses to learn from the accident and prevent it from happening again, he must first determine what went wrong. To do this he should think back to when everything was perfect, and see what steps were taken in the wrong direction, which led to the accident. Most of the time, a person will take a certain number of steps in the wrong direction before they find themselves off the right path, and in an accident. What was the first step that the man took which led to all the destruction?

The man had a destination in mind and set out on a path that would lead to his destination. He was driving on the road and was obeying the rules of the road, to ensure his safety and the safety of those around him. The first step that the driver took in the wrong direction was taking his eyes off the road. The second step taken was that he forgot about the road and focused on an object off the road that was pleasing to his eyes. Once he had forgotten about the road, even though it was only for a moment, he unwillingly and unknowingly broke the law. He ran a stop sign, causing pain, suffering, confusion, and death. Taking his eyes off the road did not cause the destruction. It occurred when his focus left the road and was drawn to something else.

Looking at our world and seeing all of the pain, suffering, confusion, and death, I think it is fair to say that we do not live in a perfect world. The question is, was the world ever perfect? God created man, animals, the heavens and earth, and everything in it and God is perfect. “God saw all that he had made, and it was very good” (Genesis 1:31). If God is perfect and He says something is “very good,” I do not think He would have settled for mediocre. I believe it was perfect. So if God created a perfect world, and we are living in an imperfect world, just like the car crash we should ask ourselves some questions. What happened? How did it happen? And, how can we prevent it from happening again?

What happened? Sin entered the world. “Therefore, just as sin entered the world through one man, and death through sin, and in this way death came to all men, because all sinned” (Romans 5:12). How did it happen? Adam and Eve were deceived by Satan. They disobeyed God, and ate from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. “And the LORD God commanded the man, ‘You are free to eat from any tree in the garden; but you must not eat from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, for when you eat of it you will surely die’” (Genesis 2:16-17). How can we prevent it from happening again? Just like the car crash
we need to think back to when everything was perfect, and see what steps were taken in the wrong direction, which led to the accident.

The last verse in Genesis, Chapter 2, says, “The man and his wife were both naked, and they felt no shame” (Genesis 2:25). If they were not ashamed, that meant they were without sin and if they were without sin, they were living in a perfect world. What was the first step in the wrong direction? They took their eyes off the road. “Now the serpent was more crafty than any of the wild animals the LORD God had made. He said to the woman...” (Genesis 3:1). Once Eve shifted her focus to Satan it was immediately off God. “No one can serve two masters. Either he will hate the one and love the other, or he will be devoted to the one and despise the other” (Matthew 6:24).

God created a perfect world and the only thing Adam and Eve could not do in this perfect world, was eat from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. The devil knew this. He knew if he could get their eyes off God, if only for a moment, he could deceive them, cause them to sin, and cause separation in this perfect world, between God and man.

The second step the person took was forgetting about the road and finding something that was pleasing to their eyes. “When the woman saw that the fruit of the tree was good for food and pleasing to the eye, and also desirable for gaining wisdom, she took some and ate it. She also gave some to her husband, who was with her, and he ate it” (Genesis 3:6). Much like the car crash, taking her eyes off of God did not bring evil into the world, but once her eyes were off of Him, she unknowingly broke God’s commandment. The man would not have knowingly run a stop sign and hit another car, causing death, but by not watching the road, he could not see the stop sign. Eve would not have tried to purposely disobey God, but by taking her eyes off of God and listening to Satan, she too caused death.

Once the man ran into another car, he immediately knew something was wrong, just like Adam and Eve, when they ate of the fruit. “Then the eyes of both of them were opened, and they realized they were naked; so they sewed fig leaves together and made coverings for themselves” (Genesis 3:7).

As soon as they had sinned, they too like the driver had 2 choices. They could make excuses for the accident and try to blame it on someone else, or take responsibility, learn from the accident and prevent it from happening again. Adam and Eve chose to make excuses. “And he said, ‘Who told you that you were naked? Have you eaten from the tree that I commanded you not to eat from?’ The man said, ‘The woman you put here with me—she gave me some fruit from the tree, and I ate it.’ Then the LORD God said to the woman, ‘What is this you have done?’ The woman said, ‘The serpent deceived me, and I ate’” (Genesis 3:11-13).

So with sin Adam and Eve were kicked out of their perfect world. “So the LORD God banished him from the Garden of Eden to work the ground from which he had been taken” (Genesis 3:23).
From that moment sin has been in the world, and man has been in sin. “Therefore, just as sin entered the world through one man, and death through sin, and in this way death came to all men, because all sinned” (Romans 5:12). What are the consequences of sin? “For the wages of sin is death. . .” (Romans 6:23). Nobody is without sin, so by right, everyone deserves to die.

We are all sinners, born into a world of sin. If a person has committed one sin, they are just as guilty as someone who has lived in sin their whole life. Also, one sin is not greater than another is, because in God’s eyes every sin has the same penalty, death. However, God is loving, and loves His people and wants His people to love him. In His love He sent His son to die on the cross for our sins, and save us from death. “But the gift of God is eternal life through Jesus Christ our Lord” (Romans 6:23).

How do we become saved? “That if you confess with your mouth, ‘Jesus is Lord,’ and believe in your heart that God raised him from the dead, you will be saved” (Romans 10:9). To be spared of our sins and become born again into God’s kingdom, we must first do 2 things; confess with our mouth and believe in our heart. We must acknowledge that God sent His son, Jesus Christ, to pay the penalty for our sin. Then we must ask Him into our heart and give our life over to Him.

By Adam sinning, death entered the world, but Jesus’ death gave eternal life. “For since death came through a man, the resurrection of the dead comes also through a man. For as in Adam all die, so in Christ all will be made alive” (1 Corinthians 15:21-22). Without Jesus we would have died in our sin, but with Jesus we may live with the Father. “Jesus answered, ‘I am the way and the truth and the life. No one comes to the Father except through me’” (John 14:6). How do we go to the Father? We must first die to ourselves. How do we die to ourselves? Be made alive in Christ. “In the same way, count yourselves dead to sin but alive to God in Christ Jesus” (Romans 6:11). How do we become alive to God in Christ Jesus? By becoming transformed into the image of Jesus Christ “And we, who with unveiled faces all reflect the Lord's glory, are being transformed into his likeness with ever-increasing glory, which comes from the Lord, who is the Spirit” (2 Corinthians 3:18). How do we do that? By eating the bread and drinking the wine. “The Lord Jesus, on the night he was betrayed, took bread, and when he had given thanks, he broke it and said, ‘This is my body, which is for you; do this in remembrance of me.’ In the same way, after supper he took the cup, saying, ‘This cup is the new covenant in my blood; do this, whenever you drink it, in remembrance of me’” (1 Corinthians 11:23-25). We are changed into Christ’s image when we read our Bible, and are in His presence. How do we get in His presence? First we must ask God’s forgiveness for our sins. Then the blood of Jesus washes our sins away and makes us pure, and blameless before God. Then we ask, seek, and knock. “Ask and it will be given to you; seek and you will find; knock and the door will be opened to you. For everyone who asks receives; he who seeks finds; and to him who knocks, the door will be opened” (Matthew 7:7-8).

Ask the Lord to show His glory so that you may feel His presence, and be changed from the inside out. Jesus answers our prayers for such little things as helping us to win a football game, giving us strength when we are tired, and helping us find our car keys. How much more will He
gladly answer our prayers when we want to see Him, be closer to Him, experience His greatness, love Him and know Him in a deeper, greater way? “If ye then, being evil, know how to give good gifts unto your children: how much more shall your heavenly Father give the Holy Spirit to them that ask him?” (Luke 11:13 KJV).

That is what He has wanted from the very beginning. This is what He wanted when He created His perfect world, and it was His intent for our lives before sin entered the world. He wanted to love us and wanted us to know Him, be close to Him, and to walk and talk with Him. What kept us from God’s perfect world in the beginning? Sin. What keeps us from God’s perfect world now? It is still sin. However, Jesus died for our sins and “...there is now no condemnation for those who are in Christ Jesus” (Romans 8:1).

If you are in Christ Jesus, you are no longer in sin, no longer of this world, and you can experience God’s original purpose for your life. This is to know God, to be close to God, and to walk and talk with our Creator. So what is still keeping us from God? Satan.

How did Adam and Eve fall into sin in the beginning? Satan deceived them from believing God’s word. God is never changing. He is the same yesterday, today, and forever (Hebrews 13:8). Satan is also never changing. What he did in the beginning we can expect him to do until the end. Satan deceived them from believing God’s word in the beginning and he is still deceiving us from believing God’s truth today. Satan is going to try to deceive us the same way he deceived Adam and Eve. Looking back at the Garden of Eden, we can see he is using the same tactics today, as he did in the beginning and he will continue to use them until the end.

God is predictable; He is loving, kind, patient, wants the best for our lives, and demands obedience. Satan is also predictable; he is sly, evil, and unjust. He comes to rob, steal and destroy, and wants the absolute worst for our lives. He also wants obedience. Who you choose to be obedient to will be evident in your life. God is love. “Love is patient, love is kind. It does not envy, it does not boast, it is not proud. It is not rude, it is not self-seeking, it is not easily angered, it keeps no records of wrongs. Love does not delight in evil but rejoices with the truth. It always protects, always trusts, always hopes, always perseveres” (1 Corinthians 13:4-7).

We know that Satan will try to deceive us the same way he deceived Adam and Eve in the beginning. By knowing the strategy of the enemy, and what tricks he is going to use, we can prepare ourselves to not be deceived.

Eve could not tell that there was anything evil about Satan when he approached her. He looked very innocent. “Now the serpent was more subtle than any beast of the field which the Lord God had made” (Genesis 3:1 KJV). Scripture says that the serpent was subtle. The opposite of subtle is obvious. It is not always going to be obvious when Satan is trying to tempt us. It is also important to note that he was in a snake’s body. Satan will sometimes use the bodies of others to approach us.

The first words out of Satan’s mouth were in the form of a question. It had a little truth, but was filled with a big lie. “He said to the woman, ‘Did God really say, ‘You must not eat
from any tree in the garden?” (Genesis 3:1). The first words out of Satan’s mouth were questioning God’s word. That will be the first thing he does every time. The Bible is the inspired word of God. If Satan can get people to believe that the Bible is not true, he does not have to go any further. He can take their minds and mold them with whatever lies he chooses.

Because man did not love God, Satan has captured the minds of the atheist and the evolutionist, and he is using them to get Christians as far away from God as possible. Due to the popular following of the evolution theory, Christianity and God are no longer allowed in schools. We are instead taught the religious beliefs of the big bang theory and evolution. I love the country that we live in. We have the ability to practice our faith and believe in whatever we choose. What saddens me is that students are being taught that the big bang theory has scientific evidence to support it. I received my masters in animal “science” and in order for something to have scientific merit it must be tested, observed, and repeated. Evolution “within species” is science. It is observable; it can be tested and repeats itself. I have no problem believing this. Evolution within species would have had to taken place with the animals coming off Noah’s ark.

However, in order for the big bang theory to have to taken place, 6 different types of evolution would have had to happen; cosmic (big bang), chemical (periodic table), stellar and planetary (stars and planets), organic (non-living produce living), macro-evolution (change from one specie to another), and micro-evolution (change within specie). The first 5 types of evolution are not science, they are religious beliefs. If you choose to believe in them, you have to put your faith in them, because they cannot be proven scientifically. They cannot be tested and observed (science). If the big bang theory is not science and only a theory, are there any other theories that have scientific findings to support them? Yes, I am sorry but for lack of a better term, creation “science” makes the big bang theory look stupid. I have done a fair amount of research and I am blown away at the scientific evidence to support creation and disprove the big bang theory. At the very least, if we are not trying to brainwash our children, they should be taught both theories in school. Creation and evolution are both religious beliefs. The only difference is the evolution religion is tax supported.

But what is the main reason creation science is not taught in schools? I will let Paul answer this question, “And with all deceivableness of unrighteousness in them that perish; because they received not the love of the truth, that they might be saved. And for this cause God shall send them strong delusion, that they should believe a lie” (2 Thessalonians 2:10-11). People choose to believe in the big bang theory because the alternative is a very scary thought. If there truly is a real God, then we will be held accountable for what we did with our life. There will be consequences for our actions.

Creation science offers some amazing material to support the Bible and the evolutionists offer numerous theories to support the big bang theory. However, neither one can be proven beyond a shadow of a doubt. Neither one would hold up in a court of law. We have to decide what we are going to put our faith in, which religious theory we will accept. Bottom line, we have to choose if we are going to believe in the beginning God, or in the beginning dirt. I think it all boils down to which theory has the greatest amount of evidence to support it. I have seen scientific debates on creation and evolution, and the creationists tear apart the big bang theory.
But where does that get us? We are still going to believe what we want to believe. We need solid concrete evidence in which to put our faith.

I agree that looking at the average Christian church it is hard to find solid concrete evidence to support a real God. However, I guarantee you if you go to God and ask HIM with an open heart, He will give you all the evidence you need. God is real and He wants to show us He is real. However, He cannot be found in religion. He can only be found through His son Jesus Christ, and He *does* want to give us solid proof beyond a reasonable doubt. I hope this book is able to help you come to the place where you can receive solid evidence upon which to base your beliefs. If it doesn’t and you truly have an open heart wanting solid evidence from God, I would love to help. This is my calling; to position people to help them communicate with their horse and to position people to help them communicate with God.

It saddens me that so many children will lose their faith based on a religious theory, believing that they are being taught science. America’s children are taught evolution from the first grade and 75% of kids attending colleges will lose their faith in God. We have the freedom in this country to believe in whatever we choose. However, whatever we choose to believe in, we will be held accountable for all eternity. It is one thing to believe in something that will affect our own life. However, if our beliefs cause one of God’s children to stumble, we will suffer greater consequences. “*And whosoever shall offend* (Greek word meaning – *strip up, stumble*) *one of these little ones that believe in me, it is better for him that a millstone were hanged about his neck, and he were cast into the sea*” (Mark 9:42). If you believe in the big bang theory, I am very proud of you for being open-minded and still reading this book. I pray that God is able to speak to your heart and that He is able to prove to you that He is real. With that being said, God has given you free will and you have the right to believe in whatever you choose. Just remember that Satan’s sole job is to deceive us from God’s truth. He is the master of lies. I am not trying to convert you to adopt my beliefs. I am only trying to get you to ask God. He will never lie. “*In hope of eternal life, which God, that cannot lie, promised before the world began*” (Titus 1:2 KJV).

Satan has and always will come to us trying to get us to believe his lies, trying to get us to question God’s word. Satan will even try to get believers to question God’s word. Once we start questioning God’s word, we have set ourselves up to be deceived. GOD’S WORD IS TRUTH. BELIEVE IT, AND DO NOT BE DECEIVED! There is only one sure way to not be deceived; that is by hearing the word of God, from God Himself.

It is important to note that Satan approached Eve. He did not come to Adam. I believe he did not come to Adam because Adam had heard the word from God, standing face to face with God. Adam knew His word. His truth went into his heart, and he could not be deceived. “*For Adam was first formed, then Eve. And Adam was not deceived, but the woman being deceived was in the transgression*” (1 Timothy 2:13). Scripture tells us that God told Adam not to eat of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. Scripture does not say that He ever told Eve.

God created Eve after He had spoken to Adam about the tree. I believe that Adam repeated what God had told him to Eve and this is why Satan approached Eve. She had heard God’s word
from Adam, and believed it to be true, but having not heard the word straight from God Himself; she was able to be deceived. “But I fear, lest by any means, as the serpent beguiled (Greek – deceived) Eve through his subtlety, so your minds should be corrupted from the simplicity that is in Christ” (2 Corinthians 11:3).

Eve was deceived into sin. Once sin was in the world, Adam then took her sin upon himself and ate of the apple, knowing that there would be consequences. From that moment on, sin has been in the world, and sin has kept us from God. Jesus died to wash us of our sins, that we may see the Father. Jesus died to take us to the Father. Let Jesus cleanse you of your sins, that you may go straight to the Father and hear the word of God, AND NOT BE DECEIVED.

“In fact, though by this time you ought to be teachers, you need someone to teach you the elementary truths of God’s word all over again. You need milk, not solid food! Anyone who lives on milk, being still an infant, is not acquainted with the teaching about righteousness. But solid food is for the mature, who by constant use have trained themselves to distinguish good from evil” (Hebrews 5:12-14). This book is milk. Go on to receive your meat from God Almighty! Jesus is the way, the truth, and the life. Eve was deceived because she tried to argue with Satan after having eaten only milk. From Eve’s example, we learn that having someone tell us what the Word of God says will keep us alive, give us hope, and keep us on the right path for only a while, but ultimately we will be deceived by Satan.

In God’s perfect world, Adam walked and talked with God. God loved Adam and Eve, and all He wanted was for them to love Him back, BUT He commanded obedience. He told them not to eat from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. Adam and Eve never sinned while they were in God’s presence; it is impossible to do so. But, it is interesting to me that in God’s perfect world, He left their presence to test their obedience.

“So the man and his wife heard the sound of the LORD God as he was walking in the garden in the cool of the day, and they hid from the LORD God among the trees of the garden” (Genesis 3:8). Adam and Eve were out of God’s presence when they sinned. If they had been in His presence, they wouldn’t have needed to hide from His presence when they heard Him coming.

It was not the fruit that opened their eyes to their sin. It was the fact that they had disobeyed a command from God. “Then the eyes of both of them were opened, and they realized they were naked” (Genesis 3:7). When someone asks, “Do you love me?” And you tell them, “Yes, I love you.” Then they say, “If you truly love me you will do what I say.” It is easy to do what they say when you are standing in their presence. But, when you leave their presence that is when your obedience to the person you love is truly tested.

God could have made Adam and Eve stay in His presence and they would have never sinned, but He let them leave. They did not know of His presence for a while, but after they had sinned, He let Himself be known. Adam and Eve were not in God’s presence when they sinned, but God was watching them the whole time. When we feel like we are being deceived, are going through tough times, and we cannot feel God’s presence we need to remember He is still there. He is
watching us, praying for us, and testing our obedience to see if we truly love Him. “Simon, Simon, Satan has asked to silt you as wheat. But I have prayed for you, Simon, that your faith may not fail. And when you have turned back, strengthen your brothers” (Luke 22:31-32). When Jesus let Satan tempt and deceive Simon (Peter), although Jesus was not in Peter’s presence, He was still praying for him.

God will let us leave His presence to make us stronger in Him, but He will always let us come back. When you have sinned, run back into His presence, ask for forgiveness, and stay in His presence as long as you can. “There is now no condemnation for those who are in Christ Jesus” (Romans 8:1). After Satan has tricked you into sinning, he is going to make you feel ashamed, tell you to hide from God, to make excuses, and tell you you’re not worthy to go back into His presence. “But the LORD God called to the man, ‘Where are you?’ He answered, ‘I heard you in the garden, and I was afraid because I was naked; so I hid’” (Genesis 3:9-10). Satan has already deceived you into sinning. Do not let him deceive you further and keep you from God’s original plan for our lives; to be close to Him.

God had a perfect world for us until sin entered it. God’s original intent for our life was for us to walk and talk with Him. Jesus died to take away all sin, that we may know the Father. Satan is going to try to deceive us from believing God’s word, and from having a close relationship with our heavenly Father. In order to not be deceived, a person needs to accept Jesus Christ as their Lord and Savior and continue to hear God’s word.

Without doing so, not only will they not be close to the Father now, but they will also be separated from the Father for all eternity. Mankind is born into sin, and the punishment is death. In order to escape the punishment and have ever-lasting life, we must ask forgiveness for our sins, thank Him for dying on the cross to wash away all our sins, and ask Him to come into our hearts and change our lives.
God created the heavens and the earth, man, woman, and all the animals. God created man in His own image. He was without sin and was perfect. God then gave Adam dominion over all the animals. “Then God said, ‘Let us make man in our image, in our likeness, and let them rule over the fish of the sea and the birds of the air, over the livestock, over all the earth, and over all the creatures that move along the ground’” (Genesis 1:26).

God brought all the animals to Adam so he could name them. When someone names something it gives them a sense of ownership. God brought the animals to Adam because he was to rule over them. He was to be their master. In that same way God named man. He is our master and has dominion over us.

In God’s perfect world man was without sin, and there was no fear or suffering. Animals were not afraid of man or other animals. Man and all the animals were vegetarians. “Then God said, ‘I give you every seed-bearing plant on the face of the whole earth and every tree that has fruit with seed in it. They will be yours for food. And to all the beasts of the earth and all the birds of the air and all the creatures that move on the ground—everything that has the breath of life in it—I give every green plant for food’” (Genesis 1:29-30).

When God had finished everything He had made, “God saw all that he had made, and it was very good” (Genesis 1:31). I do not picture a lion tearing into the flesh of a defenseless calf. Before the fall of man there was no suffering or death. Also, when Noah gathered the animals to put on the ark, they were not afraid of him, or each other. “Pairs of clean and unclean animals, of birds and of all creatures that move along the ground, male and female, came to Noah and entered the ark, as God had commanded Noah” (Genesis 7:8-9). Noah gathered the animals and loaded them. This tells us 2 things; that they obeyed Noah, and that they were not afraid of him or the other animals hurting them. They were obviously not eating each other at this time or there would have been only carnivores getting off the ark.

It wasn’t until Noah had gotten off the ark that fear grew between man and animals and between animals and animals. “The fear and dread of you will fall upon all the beasts of the earth and all the birds of the air, upon every creature that moves along the ground, and upon all the fish of the sea; they are given into your hands. Everything that lives and moves will be food for you. Just as I gave you the green plants, I now give you everything” (Genesis 9:2-3).

Once sin had entered the world, man lost the perfect world that God had created for them. They lost the closeness they had with God, along with the loyalty of the animals. After they left the ark, man was permitted to eat animals and animals began to eat other animals. Fear and self-preservation entered into prey animals, with the instinct to fight or run for their lives.

God says He will return and restore that which was taken, and the world will be how it once was. “Righteousness will be his belt and faithfulness the sash around his waist. The wolf will live with the lamb, the leopard will lie down with the goat, the calf and the lion and the
yearling together; and a little child will lead them. The cow will feed with the bear, their young will lie down together, and the lion will eat straw like the ox” (Isaiah 11:5-7).

I believe that Noah was able to have closeness with the animals because he was perfect, and God needed someone He could bring the animals to. “But Noah found grace in the eyes of the Lord. Noah was a just man and perfect in his generations, and Noah walked with God” (Genesis 6:8-9 KJV). God blessed Noah’s sons and spared their lives to replenish the earth, but it never says that they were perfect.

This is why I believe He commanded them to eat meat and that “The fear and dread of you will fall upon all the beasts of the earth and all the birds of the air, upon every creature that moves along the ground, and upon all the fish of the sea” (Genesis 9:2). Since they were not perfect, because of sin, they could no longer have dominion over the animals without having to overcome a lack of trust and disobedience. For with sin in the world, this is what we must overcome to have closeness with our Master.

However, there is one more aspect about the Garden of Eden and the relationship between man and animals that we need to look at. When the snake spoke to Eve in the garden, she did not say, “Wow! A talking snake! Quick Adam, come see this talking snake!” No, she struck up a conversation and began to talk to him. This makes me think of the possibility that there might have been communication between man and animals before sin entered the world. If an animal talking to Eve was out of the ordinary, why didn’t she ask the snake who he was?

Why didn’t she ask the snake what gave him the ability to talk, when all the other animals could not? The fact that she was not suspicious of a talking animal makes me believe that it may not have been out of the ordinary for man and animals to communicate.

Man and animals had a special bond before sin entered the world, just like man and God. The problems we have with our animals not obeying are the same problems God has with us. I believe these problems can be linked back to 3 primary factors: disobedience, lack of trust (due to self-preservation), and a lack of communication.

God tells us to trust in Him. “Trust in the LORD with all your heart and lean not on your own understanding (self-preservation); in all your ways acknowledge him, and he will make your paths straight” (Proverbs 3:5-6). He also expects obedience so we will follow His commands. In Deuteronomy God tells His people what will happen if they obey Him and what will happen if they do not. “See, I am setting before you today a blessing and a curse – the blessing if you obey the commands of the LORD your God that I am giving you today; the curse if you disobey the commands of the LORD your God and turn from the way that I command you today. . .” (Deuteronomy 11:26-28).

Not only does God want us to trust Him and expects obedience, but He wants to have a relationship. He wants to communicate with us. “My sheep listen to my voice; I know them and they follow me” (John 10:27). Once we have received the Spirit, God is then able to speak to us and we are able to hear His voice. God is then able to communicate His will to us and we are able to follow Him.
“I keep asking that the God of our Lord Jesus Christ, the glorious Father, may give you the Spirit of wisdom and revelation, so that you may know him better. I pray also that the eyes of your heart may be enlightened in order that you may know the hope to which he has called you, the riches of his glorious inheritance in the saints, and his incomparably great power for us who believe. That power is like the working of his mighty strength. . .” (Ephesians 1:17-19).

Just like our horses, there are consequences for the choices we make. If our horses do what is right, we reward them with relief. If they choose to do things their own way, we make them work at it until they look for a way out. They look for a better way, because doing things their way is too much work. The Lord says, “Come to me, all you who are weary and burdened, and I will give you rest” (Matthew 11:28). This is what good horsemen offer their horses, and the Lord has the same thing waiting for us; if we would only follow His will.

Sin is what keeps us away from God, and the price of sin is death. However, by accepting Jesus into our heart the blood that He shed wipes away all of our sins and we can be close to Him; just like He intended in His perfect world. The more time we spend with Him, the more He grows in us, until we are transformed into His image and become like Him.

What is God? God is love. “Love is patient, love is kind. It does not envy, it does not boast, it is not proud. It is not rude, it is not self-seeking, it is not easily angered, it keeps no records of wrongs. Love does not delight in evil but rejoices with the truth. It always protects, always trusts, always hopes, always perseveres” (1 Corinthians 13:4-7). Having true harmony with your horse is not a change of mind, it is a change of heart, and the same is true with the Lord.

God is love and He waits for us to turn to Him. A good horseman does not drive a horse to do a job every step of the way. Instead he waits for the horse, until it is their idea. If he forced the horse to do a job, it would then become the will of the man pushing the horse, instead of the will of the horse. If it is not the will of the horse, the horse will likely not want to obey the human, and will resist. The same is true with the Lord. He waits for us to come to Him.

With our horses, we set it up through pressure and relief, until the horse wants to do the job for us. When the horse is not doing what we want, he experiences pressure that is undesirable. Then, when he turns and does things our way, we immediately give him relief. By doing this, what we would like our horse to do, they not only do, but they would have it no other way. The will that we would have for our horse, becomes the will of the horse. This is what God wants for us; True Harmony Between God and Man.

God created the world and He controls everything in it. He has dominion over us, but not wanting robots, He gives us free choice to serve Him or not serve Him. God gave us dominion over the animals and I believe that the problems we have with them are to teach us how to grow closer to God. Today, man does rule over the animals. If we believe that God does not rule over man, and that there are not consequences for our actions, we are going to have a wake up call some day.
A lack of trust and communication, along with disobedience, are what keeps us from true harmony with God. This is what keeps us from true harmony with our animals as well. We know that love works with our horses. Tom Dorrance understood this and Ray Hunt has been trying to show a form of this to people for years, just in a round about way.

If we apply what Paul says in 1 Corinthians about love to our horsemanship, and continually approach the horse in this matter, we will gain trust. However, we must also have obedience. If all we have is trust, they often walk over the top of us. Without obedience, they will do what they want, and they will not obey us.

So we put some walls up and let the horse run into them. The horse does what he wants and runs into some pressure, until it is uncomfortable and he takes the path that we have chosen for him. It is easy to tell if your horse is really with you, just give him his head and give him the slightest cues and see if he does exactly what you want him to do.

The Lord does the same thing with us to test our obedience. He will try to guide us and if we will not listen, He lets us go get into trouble, so we will come back and appreciate the better life He has to offer. A frightened colt with bad experiences does not become a bridle horse overnight. Similarly, a confused person with bad experiences can’t totally understand and become one with God overnight. However, with patience and timing, a horse can learn to trust and be obedient, and a person can turn to God and live the life they were called to live.
This is a handout that I give my colt breaking and training classes. It is easy to see the correlation between man & horse and God & man. I will be referring back to this handout and will elaborate on the different parts as the book progresses.

**Traditional Thought Process**

**Primary Objective:** Get horse to do a job  
**Primary Obstacle:** Horse will not do the job

How do I get my horse to do the job?

To eliminate all problems you will ever have with your horse, change your objective.

**Alternative Thought Process**

**Primary Objective:** Horse and Person becoming one; “perfect unity” (Perfection)  
- The will of the horse becoming the will of the person: instead of 2 forces moving against each other, 2 forces moving together as one, “His legs are my legs, we are one body” (Ray Hunt).

Ray Hunt says, “It’s like a dance. You are leading and the horse following, but you are both moving as one. It’s like a peaceful waltz in perfect unity.” Not a high school, uncoordinated bumpin’, grindin’ hot and sweaty, seizer fit.

*With the second objective you will not have obstacles, because the objective is to eliminate the cause of all obstacles. You are finding a cure instead of treating symptoms.*

*The first measures outward status to determine progress. In this mind set, perfection is unattainable, and has the potential of creating problems.  
*The second deals with inward status to measure progress. This will not cause problems and has the potential of perfection.*

My goal for this class has not been to help treat your symptoms, but to help YOU find the cure. THE CURE FOR YOUR HORSE HAS NOTHING TO DO WITH YOUR HORSE AND EVERYTHING TO DO WITH YOU. As soon as a person realizes this, they have taken the first step in becoming a horseman or horsewoman.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Horse’s Will</th>
<th>Man’s Will</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Primary Driving Factors</strong></td>
<td><strong>To do a job</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1) Survival/Self-Preservation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2) Companionship</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3) Comfort</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Variable Factor = Hormones</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Major underlying factors:**  
1) Confidence  
2) Energy
Confidence
- Confidence is the main underlying factor which drives all 3 of the primary driving factors.
- A horse will experience comfort when they are confident in a person or situation.
- A horse develops companionship when they are confident in someone or something.
- A horse is driven by self-preservation when they lose confidence in a person or a situation.

Increase in Confidence = Decrease in Self-Preservation (vice versa)
Comfort and Companionship Increase = Increase in Confidence (vice versa)
Comfort and Companionship Increase = Decrease in Self-Preservation (vice versa)

Measures of Confidence Level
1) Head height (best measure of confidence level)
   a) High = Bothered/Unconfident
   b) Low = Relaxed/Confident
2) Tail (clamped down/relaxed)
3) Eyes (wide-eyed/dopey)
4) Movements
   a) Tight, stiff, quick movements from fear, braced up = Unconfident
   b) Relaxed, free moving (but not scared), supple = Confident

Energy
- Energy is often a major underlying factor of self-preservation, which inhibits the other 2 driving factors; comfort and companionship.

*As the Energy level decreases ~ Self-Preservation decreases ~ which opens the door to increase Comfort and Companionship (when presented in the correct manner)*

Obstacles in Accomplishing a Job
1st Obstacle – Horse submitting to man’s will.
2nd Obstacle – Communicating man’s will.
3rd Obstacle – Obeys commands.
4th Obstacle – Completing the job.

In order to get a horse to do a job for us, they must first submit their will and accept our will. Then we must try to communicate our will, and finally they will need to obey our commands.

Many people try to overcome the 4th obstacle without paying any attention to the previous three.

Question to Ask
Does the horse want to do what you are asking?
Does he know how to do what you are asking?

I. 1st Obstacle – Submitting to Man’s Will
   - Two types of Submission
     A) Willing
B) Unwilling

Both are effective to get the job done. However, unwilling has negative consequences.

(A) Unwilling Submission “Giving to Pressure”
- Attained by Force
1) Horse submits because he has no choice.
2) Body submits to will of human, but the mind has not.
3) Horse would rather be somewhere else.
4) Horse becomes a “slave.”
   - Rebels if gets a chance
     Example: run, buck, brace up
   - Horse is driven to do job.
   - Horse does the job, but doesn’t like it.
     Example: tight, head raised, maneuvers have braces

(B) Willing Submission “Seeking Relief”
- Attained by Free Choice
1) The horse chooses to do the job.
2) Set it up so the horse would have it no other way than to do what you want to do.
3) Horses are driven by comfort. Make it comfortable to do the job.
   “Make the wrong thing difficult and the right thing easy” (Ray Hunt).
4) In this way the horse and person become partners. The horse has a choice.
5) Requires patience, timing, and feel.
6) A person can ask a lot more of a horse once they have submitted willingly.
7) Willingly submitted horses try to please their riders.

Two Levels of Submission & Two Kinds of Horses
I. Ground Level: “Turning to You”
- Our first approach to saddle and ride.
- For them to follow our will, we must meet their driving factors.
  - Not be scared of us, “self preservation”
  - Offer them “comfort” and “companionship”
- This can be attained in the pasture and with their buddies. So why do they need us?
- We must develop a need for us in their life.
- This is done by putting pressure on them until they turn to us, and then relieving the pressure.
- “It takes pressure for relief to be effective and relief for pressure to be effective.”
- If there is any hope of perfection, this must be attained before we get on them. This is easily achieved in a day.

A) First Type of Horse: Those that haven’t been handled
- It takes longer to gain trust.
- But relief, comfort, and companionship are much easier to attain.
- Very little pressure has to be applied for them to turn to you for relief (only time).
- No false teachings – when pressure is applied they usually give.

B) Second Type of Horse: Those that have been handled
- Trust, comfort, and companionship have already been established.
- But is very hard to establish the need for you.
- In many cases, a great deal of pressure must be applied for relief to have meaning.
- May have developed false teachings. They lean into pressure instead of giving.

II. On Their Back: “Two Becoming One”
- If the first has not been established this is very difficult.
- This type of submission is never ending, until perfection is attained. Until perfect trust, obedience, and communication are established and they never leave your will.
- Achieving perfection: following submission, there must be a perfect level of communication.

II. 2nd Obstacle – Communicating Man’s Will
- How does man communicate with horse?
  - We don’t speak the same language, or think the same way.
  - Non-verbal communication
    - Example: body language, feel
  - Communication involves two individuals (two-way communication).
  - The person must learn to read the horse. What is the horse saying?
    - Example: head raised = bothered, head lowered = relaxed
  - We are good about communicating our will to horse, but do we listen?
  - We communicate through their driving and underlying factors.
    - Self-preservation, comfort, companionship, confidence, energy
  1) A person can get more done with a horse out of trust (comfort, companionship) than out of fear (self-preservation).
  2) A person must decide in what manner they will communicate with the horse.
    - “Slave” or “Partnership”
    - “Tell the horse” or “Ask the horse”

After the first level of submission has been met, the most effective method of communication is through 3 factors.

3 Factors of Communication
1) Feel
2) Timing
3) Balance

*The rate a person is able to move toward perfection rests entirely upon these three factors*

“Feeling” of the Horse
  Ray Hunt says, “You can’t buy it and I can’t give it to you.” You can read all the books in the world, have people tell you what “feel” is, see people that ride through “feel,” but you will never have it until you experience it. It can only be achieved between you and the horse. People can help situate you, so that you and the horse are in a position to experience “feel,” but ultimately it is between you and the horse. I can tell my class what to do and show them what to do, but ultimately it is between them and the horse. If you can’t feel when things are perfect, how do you expect to attain perfection?
Often perfection will pass by in a split second and then vanish. A person needs to recognize these split seconds and relieve the applied pressure. It is through receiving relief that the horse develops the desire to stay in perfection. Then the seconds can be multiplied to minutes. **A 30-minute ride with 2 minutes of perfection is better than a 3-hour ride with no perfection.** The 2 minutes may be multiplied. However, the 3 hours without perfection will lead to an unwillingly submitted horse, leading to resentment.

### III. Obstacle – Obeying Commands

3 Main reasons horses don’t obey commands:

1) **Self-Preservation**
   - Due to lack of trust

2) **Disobedience** (bitter resistance against commands)
   - Due to false teaching (operating through unwilling submission)

3) **Lack of Understanding/Communication**
   - Horse needs more time, patience, and teaching

A person must learn to distinguish between the three, if they are ever to become a good horseman/woman.

- The person must learn to read the horse to determine why the horse is not obeying.
- This is extremely crucial because the person’s reaction to the horse’s action will greatly impact the horse’s mind set and overall trust for the person.

- Resistance arises as a result of these three factors.
- As resistance level rises, self-preservation rises (Fight or Flight).
- The resistance level of the horse is a direct result of the amount of pressure put on by the person.

**Resistance in Obeying Commands**

#1 Reason = Horse hasn’t submitted to man’s will

3 Stages of Resistance:

1) **Disagreement**
   - Good, builds trust. Horses must learn it is always easier to obey our commands.
     - Horse builds confidence in your decisions
     - Horse needs to learn that your decisions are always right. Be consistent.
       - It is always easier to obey your commands.
     - Person always has best interests in mind for horse.
   - Don’t give him more than he can handle.

2) **Arguing**
   - Heated disagreement.
   - A result of false teaching (operating through unwilling submission).
   - Needed sometimes, but not always necessary.
   - Often results when confidence is lost and self-preservation starts to kick in.
If caused by too much pressure by person, not good. Slow down, build confidence.
If caused by a stimulus that scares the horse, this is part of starting colts (doubling a scared horse). Go back and build the horse’s confidence, slow down and start over.

3) Fighting
- Due to false teaching.
- In confused and scared horses, this is caused by impatience of the person. Slow down!
- There is no good that can ever come from fighting with a horse. All we do is shatter their confidence. Depending on the intensity of the fight it may take a hundred good experiences to offset the fight and sometimes they never fully do regain confidence.
- A horse will always win a fight against a man if they choose to, they are bigger and stronger.

- However, there are some horses that have been handled under false teaching and have been taught to fight. They become filled with resentment and have been taught to fight against commands (example: shoeing).
- Do not fight with a horse. If you do not have time to slowly build their confidence, set it up so that they are fighting against themselves.
  Example: tie their head solid, tie a leg up, rope a hind leg with another horse, tie a leg back, set your hands solid on their neck (collecting).
- Make sure that when they are done fighting against themselves, you are there to offer them a better, more comfortable way.
- We are not trying to punish them for wanting to fight (they did not want to fight in the first place, they were taught to fight) we are showing them there is an easier way.

Example
To better explain the different levels of resistance I will give an example of trying to achieve direction (suppleness through poll and loin). An example of agreement would be as soon as the slack is taken out of the rein, applying pressure to the horse’s mouth, the horse seeks relief by breaking in the poll, softens through the loin, and willingly gives his eye, putting slack in the rein.

Disagreement – When the slack is taken out of the rein the horse hesitates, the person has to wait for the horse to give (usually driven by lack of communication).
Solution – Patience, wait for the horse to give. Look for the “smallest change and the slightest try.” Moving the horse’s hindquarters and putting life in the feet may help to put slack in the rein (Stage 1 – foundation of maneuvers). As soon as the horse puts slack in the rein relieve the pressure.

Argument – When the slack is taken out of the rein the horse’s head comes up causing the horse to be stiff through the poll and loin (usually driven by self-preservation or lack of communication).
Solution – Slow down and lighten the pressure until the horse’s head comes down, then wait for the horse to give.

Fighting – When slack is taken out of the rein the horse flips or shakes his head (usually driven by resentment).
Solution – NOT GOOD! It is easier for horses with bad teeth to become resentful to pressure on the bit (get your horse’s teeth checked). However, bad teeth or not, it is always because of too much pressure applied, too much direction. This is not an easy problem to fix. It is far better to never let it get this far. For best results I set my hands on the horse’s neck and apply light pressure getting the horse to flex in the poll (vertical direction). This may take a while, because the horse is resentful to pressure and will try to root against the bit or flip their head. Once they have learned to give to pressure and relax, flexing in the poll vertically, then I lightly try to get them to give their nose and break in the poll horizontally, and submit their hindquarters. They must learn to willingly submit again, driven by a soft feel, instead of unwilling submission (false-teaching).

It is also important to note that in order for a horse to elevate or flip their head their hindquarters must be underneath them. By getting a horse’s hindquarters willingly submitted (Stage 1), the horse will quit fighting and arguing against the bit.

The man and horse relationship is similar to the relationships we have with people. The level of our relationship is based on the amount of agreement we have. If we agree on the big things (willing submission) the little things (obeying commands) will most often fall into place. However, if there is no agreement on the large issues, although we may have come to agreement on some smaller issues, when our relationship is put to the test it will fall apart.

Because horses are prey animals, trust is the main issue. We must gain trust on the ground, on their back, standing, walking, trotting, loping, and galloping. If speed exceeds confidence, the trust that was previously established most often is lost and must be re-established. Horses are very forgiving and with time will learn to trust us again. However, similar to us, we can only shatter that trust so many times before they learn that we are not trustworthy. The amount of time the horse was ridden after losing confidence will determine how long it will take to build confidence and gain trust again. Some horses with a history of riding without confidence will never fully be able to trust.

A horse is going to have to run into some resistance from time to time, until our will for the horse has become the horse’s will. However, make sure that your relationship is based on agreements and not on disagreements, arguments, or fights. If the man and horse are not operating in agreement, it is either because of false teachings or because of poor communication by the human.

IV. Obstacle – Completing the Job
*Resistance is what keeps us from completing the job.*

4 Things Need To Be Established To Prevent Resistance:

A) Willing Submission
Definition – When a request is made the horse willingly performs the task requiring little to no pressure; it is the horse’s idea. After initial contact the horse performs the task on a loose rein and with no leg pressure.
B) Good Communication
Definition – Learning to read, feel, and understand what the horse is saying in response to our request (Communication involves two individuals, what is the horse saying?). We communicate through the horse’s driving and underlying factors along with feel, timing, and balance

C) Balanced Life to Direction Ratio

**Life** – The ability to move the horse, with any speed at any time.
- When the person’s legs are lightly fanned the horse should move their feet in the direction we want, with the speed that we want.

**Direction** – When the slack is taken out of the rein the horse puts the slack back in the rein with suppleness through the poll and loin.

a) **Vertical Direction** – (Atlas Vertebrae)
When the slack is taken out of both reins, the horse breaks in the poll vertically, willingly putting the slack back into the reins. This should be achieved at all speeds; standing, walking, trotting, loping, and galloping.

b) **Horizontal Direction** – (Axis Vertebrae)
When the slack is taken out of one rein, the horse puts slack back into the rein (left and right), with suppleness through the poll and loin. Horizontal Direction should be achieved at all speeds; standing, walking, trotting, loping, and galloping.

1) Break in the poll.
2) Nose should be directly underneath the eye.
3) Should not be able to see any white in the eye.
   - When the horse is stiff through the poll he will be looking forward and we can see the white in his eye. When he breaks in the poll, “giving the eye,” he will look back and the white will turn black.
4) Poll and loin should make a perfect “C.”
   - Should be able to ride a perfect circle (“C” is half an “O”).
   - After tipping the nose, the front feet and hind feet should travel on the same path as the nose making a curved line.

**False Direction** – The horse puts slack back into the rein by giving his nose, without breaking in the poll; a “rubber-necked” horse. On the outside the horse is giving, but on the inside they are tight and stiff (unwilling submission).

- Poll and loin are “I” shaped instead of “C” shaped in turns.
- Results in dropped shoulders, leaning out in turns, kicking hindquarters out or hopping in spins and rollbacks, and not holding a pivot foot.
- Also results in rubber-necked horses, hard mouths, stiff movements, missing leads and cross firing.
Balancing the ratio
The ratio is determined by the speed with which we can willingly bring the life up, and willingly direct it on a set line (straight or curved), without losing “direction” (suppleness through the poll and loin).

*The horse’s feet are directed by both our reins and our legs. Our reins only show them where to go, our feet get them there. Our reins are the steering wheel which tells our horses where to go. Our legs are the gas pedals which bring life to the direction, enabling them to move willingly. If we show them where to go with our reins and they do not move, they most often need more life, not direction. If they do not receive the needed life to help direct the feet, but instead receive more direction from the reins, they will often become resentful to the direction by: elevating, flipping, or shaking their head, or rooting their nose against the bit. Or they will become numb and dull. All are forms of unwilling submission.

4 Types of Horses and Riders
1) No life, no direction
2) Life with no direction
3) No life and direction
4) Life with direction

The horse’s head is directed with the reins. When the slack is taken out of the reins, if the horse does not put slack back into the reins, the horse is being ridden in unwilling submission/false teaching (wearing pressure instead of giving to pressure).

There are 2 different factors here, “direction” and “life.” We run into 2 problems with our horses, we can’t get them to go on our path, and we can’t get them motivated to go at all. It is easier to get a horse on our path if they are already moving. The goal is to start slow and build speed. Start simple and get more complicated. Get direction at a walk, then life. Then start putting the two together. Get direction and develop a soft feel at a walk, then get life. Once you have the life then try to direct it.

First, just try to go straight in a perfect line. Keep the horse directly between your hands and feet, on a loose rein, no leg pressure, and traveling on the set path you have chosen. This is the first step to perfection: life on a straight line. Then gradually start to complicate things and keep the perfection. Start making turns and changing directions. If perfection is lost, go straight until it is perfect again, until they are riding perfectly between your hands and feet.

Keep building this confidence, until any path you put them on they stay perfectly between your hands and feet. Whether it is loping circles, making turns, backing up, tracking cows, any line whether straight, or curved, forward or back, they stay on it. It’s all about life, and direction. It would be scary to try to accomplish our job with all life and no direction, but on the other hand with all direction and no life, we would not get anywhere and our horse would get very sluggish and numb to our cues. We need to find a balance and the goal is always perfection. Whenever perfection is lost, go to a place where it can be attained again. Try to give your horse a job, somewhere to go, something to do. They get bored and numb the longer you stay doing the same thing without giving them something new to work on.
6 Steps in Building a Foundation (Direction and Life)

1) Submit and contain life on the ground
   - Stand quietly to saddle, bridle, and mount.
2) Life on the ground with saddle
   - Loping calmly and relaxed with saddle.
3) Direction on the ground
   - Horizontal direction and disengaging hindquarters (Stage 1 – Foundation of Maneuvers).
   - Putting slack in the rein when slack is taken out; suppleness through the poll and loin (direction).
   - Pivoting around the inside front foot, stopping forward motion, disengaging hindquarters (Stage 1 – Foundation of Maneuvers).
4) Direction on their back
   - Disengaging hindquarters, “Doubling” (safety valve).
   - Standing, walking, trotting, and loping.
   - Putting slack in the rein when pulled on and stopping forward motion, pivoting around inside front foot at all speeds (Stage 1).
5) Life on their back
   - Loping calmly and relaxed with rider.
6) Life with direction
   - Supple through poll and loin, directing hindquarters to stay on a line.
   - Direction and Stage 1.

(See Solid Foundation of Maneuvers)

D) Solid Foundation of Maneuvers
Two types:
   a) Mechanical
   b) Mental

- Mechanical
  - Total control of:
    1) Head and Neck
    2) Shoulders
    3) Hindquarters

Definition of Mechanical – The ability to move the 3 parts of the horse in any direction to accomplish any job (4 stages).

1) Stage 1 – Hindquarters
   - Lateral movement of the hindquarters. Stopping the inside front foot and pivoting the other feet around it.
   - Should be able to walk the hindquarters around the inside front foot on a loose rein. The hindquarters should move off our leg like an oiled-up hinge. After an initial cue (rein, leg) the horse should perform at least a quarter of a circle on a loose rein and no leg pressure. Stage 1 is about submitting the hindquarters and is the most important stage in the mechanical
foundation of maneuvers. Stage 1 enables the horse to perform the other 3 stages in the mechanical foundation of maneuvers. If any of the following stages (2, 3, or 4) are lacking, it is because Stage 1 is lacking.

Example – Lightly take the slack out of your rein and lightly bring your calf into the side of the horse. If the horse does not respond, make contact with your spur to the horse’s side. If the horse still does not move, run the rowel of your spur up the side of the horse (only in lazy horses, not in a young horse that does not know what you want). Do not poke the horse with the spur. This will cause the horse to tighten up. We want to bring the life into the horse not cause them to become tight. Once you have the life then direct it, stop the forward motion and pivot around the inside front foot. Repeat this process: apply calf pressure, make light contact with spur, and run the rowel up the side of the horse. Eventually when you lightly bring your calf into the horse’s side, they will pivot around the inside front foot on a loose rein and no leg pressure. It is important that when the horse moves off your leg pressure you remove the pressure. In this way you teach the horse to move off the pressure of your leg instead of learning to wear the pressure of your leg, as they are moving. This is very important when going into Stages 3 and 4. Once you remove leg pressure the horse should take at least 2 to 3 steps on their own. This is willing submission, “after an initial cue the horse performs the task on a loose rein and no leg pressure – It’s the horse’s idea.” If it’s the horse’s idea, we shouldn’t have to drive him to do it.

“Doubling” (safety valve) – Submitting the hindquarters in a high self-preservation situation. Example to the left – Tip nose to the left pulling out (not back) at roughly a 90-degree angle from the jaw (rein should not be longer than a foot). Right rein should be long enough that the horse can bring his nose all the way to your left stirrup and still have a float in the right rein. Your inside shoulder should be higher, you should have more weight on your right butt cheek, and your head should be slightly tipped to the right side of the horse’s neck (put more weight in outside stirrup). Bring left leg into the horse’s left side to direct the hindquarters to the right.

Goal – When forward motion stops, the horse will stop driving with the hindquarters and pulling with the front end. The horse will “disengage” the hindquarters stopping the driving motion. The front left leg will change from a forward motion “leaning” to the left, to “pushing” the hindquarters around the left front leg using centrifugal force. When this happens the horse will put slack in the rein bringing their head and neck to the left, arching their ribs to the right, and pushing the hindquarters to the right around the left front foot. They should accomplish this in less than 3 steps from the time you take the slack out of the rein. If they cannot do it in less than 3 steps in a walk, do not try to do it in a trot and lope.

We may have to sacrifice the head to get the feet sometimes. Like flagging a horse tied to a post, they may hit the end of the rope and raise their head before they disengage their hindquarters. When the feet get right, the head will be right. After a horse hits the end of the firm lead rope a few times they then start preparing to move their feet before the slack is taken all the way out of the rein. Apply the same concept to your horse when getting them to pivot around the inside front foot. However, always come back and make sure they are soft in the face, “giving” their eye (direction). Always remember to keep the direction (head and neck) to life (feet) ratio balanced.
2) **Stage 2 – Pulling with the Hindquarters**  
- Hindquarters pulling the horse in a reverse motion.

Example – Do Stage 1 a few steps each direction and lightly pull back on both reins, as the hindquarters are moving. When the horse takes a step back, remove the pressure and let him rest. Eventually when you lightly take the slack out of one rein (example – left) and bring your left spur into the horse, they will pick up their left hind foot and bring it back. Then lightly bring in your right spur and bring the right hind foot back. If they go forward return to Stage 1 (stopping the forward motion and pivoting around the inside front foot). Eventually you will be backing your horse independently of your reins, using your feet to pick up the horse’s hind feet and set them back. It will also help your horse if you slightly lean forward taking the weight off the hindquarters when you are backing them.

You are asking the hindquarters to move, blocking them when they go forward, and are giving the horse relief when they choose to move their hindquarters back. Eventually the horse will begin to pull with the hindquarters when you bring life into them. If you want to speed your horse up in a reverse motion, speed up Stage 1 back and forth and then bring the speed into the back. Pulling harder on the reins only causes the horse to elevate their head and back crookedly. By bringing the life into the hindquarters, the horse is then able to pull with the hindquarters allowing the horse to back fast and straight. If team ropers would work on Stage 2 in the box, it would eliminate most of their problems like backing crookedly, swinging their hindquarters out of the corner, rearing, and not wanting to stand still.

This stage is extremely important for teaching the horse to back up and stop. It is important when backing our horses that they are pulling with their hindquarters and not pushing with the front feet. The first step in backing should always be with the hindquarters pulling, not the front feet pushing. If the horse is pushing with the front feet, possible problems may include dead feet, laziness, raising their head, over-flexion, and backing crookedly. Pulling with the hindquarters eliminates all these problems and will help a lot with your stops. When stopping a horse, I pull on both reins and let them come to a slow stop. Then I immediately go into Stage 1, making quarter turns back and forth, and then go into Stage 2. The horse eventually learns that when I take the slack out of both reins and sit down, their hindquarters need to stop and run backwards. This teaches them to really bury their butt when they stop, without elevating their head and getting resentful to the reins.

3) **Stage 3 – Hindquarters and Shoulders**  
- Lateral movement of both the shoulders and hindquarters together.

Example – Lateral movement to the right – When a horse becomes solid in Stage 1, if we put our left foot into them and lightly tip their nose to the left, they should immediately swing their hindquarters to the right. Then all we have to do is draw on the outside rein (right) and get forward motion. As long as the horse’s hindquarters continue to move laterally and the horse has forward motion, they will cross over in front (laterally with shoulders). One way to achieve this is to ride parallel with the fence, then swing the hindquarters out so that the horse is at a 45-degree angle with the fence. If the horse stays at a 45-degree angle with forward motion, he will cross over in front. When the horse crosses its front feet, relieve the pressure. Be sure to block
the horse with your outside right rein when you kick the hindquarters out. If you do not, the horse will go past the 45-degree angle with the fence, to a 90-degree angle and then it is impossible to have forward motion and cross over in front.

This method is ok (45-degree angle with the fence) in the beginning to teach your horse to move laterally with the shoulders. However, make sure that the horse learns to move laterally with their shoulders and hindquarters together. If not, they will always move off your outside leg in a counter arc, which will cause major problems when going into Stage 4 (pivoting around the inside hind foot). The problem will appear when you bring your outside leg into the horse to spin them. They will always have their nose tipped to the outside of the circle instead of the inside. They will be arced the wrong way (outside of the circle, instead of inside) and this will lead to them dropping their shoulders and swinging their hindquarters out in your spins.

Goal – When we fan our left leg the horse should immediately step laterally to the right with the left front foot. If he does not, go back to Stage 1 and get his hindquarters moving off your leg again, and then come back to the shoulders. The end result should be walking, trotting, and loping in a straight line, and when we lightly fan our left leg the horse moves in a lateral motion, crossing the front feet to the right, with vertical direction (collection).

Preparation for Stage 4 – The final step of Stage 3 before entering into Stage 4 should be: from a standing position, when we fan our outside leg (example – left) our horse should pick up the inside front foot first (right). To achieve this, move your horse in Stage 1 (pivoting around the inside left front foot; example – hindquarters to the right) and lightly pull on your outside rein (right) keeping the hindquarters moving. When the horse takes a lateral step with his right front foot, remove the pressure and reward the horse. It is important to keep the hindquarters moving. Stage 1 goes into Stage 3. Eventually when you bring your left foot into the horse, they will step laterally with the right front foot. To help your horse achieve this, put more weight on your outside stirrup (left leg). The right leg will then have less resistance and it will be easier for the horse to pick up the right foot.

4) **Stage 4 – Shoulders**
   - **Lateral movement of shoulders.** Stopping the inside hind foot and **pivoting the shoulders around it.**

   Before moving to Stage 4, the horse should be solid in Stage 3 (lateral movement of shoulders), meaning that when we lightly bring our calf into them (our left leg) they step with their inside foot first (right). If they are stepping with the outside foot first, then they are often counter-arching away from our outside leg, which will cause them to be stiff through the poll and loin. This is not good because the goal is to use centrifugal force to pull through the turn. It is difficult for a horse that is tight through the poll and loin to pull themselves through the turn. Go back to Stage 1 and get your horse pivoting around the inside front foot on a loose rein (with the horse’s head straight). Then bring Stage 1 into Stage 3. If the horse cannot do Stage 1 with their head straight, when we attempt to do Stage 3, the horse will go into a counter arc.

   Example – Stage 4 – Once the horse has learned to move off the outside leg by stepping with the inside foot first, then the easiest method of progressing into Stage 3 is to walk the horse
forward and stop them when the inside hind foot is the last foot to hit the ground. The next step that the horse will take will then be the inside front foot. We then only have to pick the foot up and move it out and back. Put your weight in the outside stirrup, fan your outside leg, and if you have direction (suppleness through the poll and loin) the horse will step laterally and slightly back, around the inside hind foot. If the horse swings the hindquarters out and does not pivot around the inside hind foot, it is because the horse has lost direction (became tight and stiff through the poll and loin). If we direct the head and the horse is stiff in the loin, the hindquarters have to go the opposite direction. It is only through a supple loin and poll that a horse can pull himself around his inside hind foot. This is why it is so important to not spur the horse with the outside leg. It will cause them to be stiff through the loin.

**Key Components in Stage 4:**

1) Stepping with the inside front foot first.
2) Direction (suppleness through the poll and loin) when the slack is taken out of the rein.
3) Picking up the inside front foot and setting it back around the inside hind foot.
4) Hindquarters pulling the front feet around the inside hind foot.

If any of these steps are missing, the horse cannot use **centrifugal force** to pull himself through the turn. To speed the horse up in the turn, the horse must be able to freely move their front feet in a lateral motion and pull with the hindquarters.

It is important that the horse does not learn to kick their hindquarters out during the turn. To prevent this remember these tips:

1) Do not pull the horse through the turn.
   - Wait for the horse’s feet. The reins should be tied to the feet.
2) Do not pull the head too far. Slightly tip their nose.
   - The more we pull their head around, the more they will think we want Stage 1 and will kick their hindquarters out.
3) Do not kick the horse through the turn with the outside leg.
   - This will cause them to be stiff through the poll and loin.
4) Keep your weight to the outside.
   - Our weight will either help the horse in the turn, or hurt the horse in the turn. There is not much middle ground. If our weight is on the inside, the horse has to become tight through the poll and loin to counter balance our weight.
5) Do not demand too much too soon. Slowly build their confidence.
   - Do not try to make a full turn right away. Try to make an octagon, then a square, and then a triangle.
   - Make eighth and quarter turns, and then ride them forward so that the horse does not learn to kick the hindquarters out. Instead they learn to pull with their hindquarters through the turn, and then push with their hindquarters out of the turn.
   - After they are solid in pulling themselves through quarter turns, then try to make a half turn, then a three-quarter turn, then finally a full turn.

**Gaining Speed in the Turn – Using Both Legs.**
- One of the best ways to gain speed in the turn is to do rollbacks. If a horse can do a rollback with willing submission, without getting tight and stiff through the poll and loin, they are in good shape to start using the hindquarters to pull the horse in Stage 4.

- Using both legs to speed them up in the turn will prevent them from becoming stiff through the poll and loin by only using the outside leg.

- Push the horse forward, then lightly pull them back around the inside hind leg.
  - If you have followed all the steps up to this point, they will not kick their hindquarters out. If they do, go back to “key components.”

- Use both legs to move them forward (pushing with hindquarters). When the inside hind foot hits the ground, pull them around the inside hind foot and then use both legs to push them forward again.

- Have them take a step with the back right leg and when they step up with the left leg, pull them back again. Repeat this process and eventually when you ask to speed them up with both legs, they will know they cannot go forward and will use centrifugal force to pull themselves faster into a nice spin.

*Weight placement is very, very, important. If your weight is not on the outside, it is very hard to have direction in the turn (suppleness through the poll and loin).

Another good way to get them to smoothly walk around the inside hind foot is to get them very solid in Stage 3 (when we bring our outside leg into them, example – left, they step with the inside front foot first, example – right). Then get horizontal direction with forward motion (suppleness through the poll and loin). Once the horse can complete a full circle on a loose rein and no leg pressure (direction), lightly bring your outside leg into them and they will go into a nice slow spin. If you cannot complete a full circle with a loose rein and no leg pressure, do not bring your outside leg in until you can. If they become stiff through the poll and loin once you have started in your spin and kick the hindquarters out, bring your inside leg in and get direction again. If you have direction and a solid Stage 3, you will have no problem in Stage 4. The problems in Stage 4 come from losing direction (stiff poll and loin) and not having the shoulders freely move off your outside leg, stepping with the inside foot first.

*It is very important that when you feel the horse start to pivot around the inside hind foot you remove all pressure, rein and leg. The horse will then hunt the spin to get relief.

*The most important thing in all 4 stages of a “mechanical foundation of maneuvers” is the first step. Slow down and take plenty of time to make sure that the first step the horse is taking is correct. SLOW DOWN, AND MAKE SURE THE FIRST STEP IS CORRECT!

D) Solid Foundation of Maneuvers
Two types:
  a) Mechanical
b) Mental

**Definition of Mental** – *Horse* and *rider* begin to receive insight, into how they can move together in perfect unity to accomplish a job. The horse experiences willing submission, good communication, a balanced life to direction ratio, and a mechanical foundation of maneuvers all at the same time.

It’s like you are riding in the dark and somebody switches on a light. All resistance leaves and it makes perfect sense to you and the horse. The horse becomes as light as a feather, moving in perfect unity with the person. There is no resistance in doing the job. We are able to pick up the feet and move them wherever we want. These are the “ah-ha” moments when riding a horse. It is by multiplying these moments that we are able to build and keep a “foundation for perfection.” The goal is to multiply these moments from brief seconds, to minutes, and to hours, until we are left with no more resistance and find ourselves riding in absolute perfection.

**Three Stages of Mental Foundation:**
- **Stage 1** – Brief seconds during the ride
- **Stage 2** – Minutes during the ride
- **Stage 3** – Consistency during the ride

These are the necessary stages of having a solid foundation “with no resistance” to do any job.

**Direction to Perfection (Making Circles)**

The rate at which a horse is able to progress is determined by the horse’s ability to stay on a set line and speed, whether it is straight or curved, walking or running. When a horse travels off that line, we need to be able to direct and move them back on line. When the nose is tipped the feet should follow. After the nose is tipped, if the feet continue to push in the same direction, the method of realignment is determined by what stage the horse can perform. The method of realigning the horse is either by moving the hindquarters (Stage 1), or the shoulders (Stage 4). If the horse has not become solid in Stage 3, do not try to jump to Stage 4 to realign the horse.

**Common Mistake**

When a horse in Stage 1 or Stage 3 gets off line (loping circles), the person may try to push the shoulders over to get them back on line. Once the horse begins to push to the outside of the circle, the person looks at the horse’s head, and shifts their weight to the inside to be able to kick the horse better with the outside leg. This causes the horse to push out even harder to the outside of the circle. The person then kicks and pulls harder to keep the horse loping, trying to pull them back on line. As the pressure increases from the rider, the horse’s resistance level rises due to self-preservation and lack of communication. If pushed far enough, the horse eventually pulls their head straight and runs off.

**Proper Solution**

As a horse in Stage 1 or Stage 3 starts to push to the outside of the circle, shorten the inside rein, shift weight to the outside, use inside leg, and look behind you to the outside of the
circle (this will shift your weight, help block the shoulder, and lets the horse know where you are going). Horses can feel where a person is looking. Ride where you want to go.

**Preventative Maintenance**

Don’t set negative patterns in your horse. If he leans the first time around in your circle, head it off the next time. Shorten your rein and lean to the outside before he starts to lean out in your circle. Do not continually try to lope to complete the circle once the horse has become stiff and starts to push to the outside. This will set a negative pattern. **Slow down to a trot if you need to and take the lean out by:** 1) Kicking the hindquarters out, 2) Moving the shoulders over (if they are at the proper stage), 3) Cutting the circle in half. By cutting the circle in half, it will over-compensate for the horse pushing. In the spot where the horse was previously leaning, he will then be thinking about getting to the other side of the circle and will not lean. Once the horse has begun to think about getting to the other side of the circle, instead of pushing out, try to complete a full circle. 4) **Circling to the inside or riding them higher.** If the horse cuts in at the top of the circle going to the left, take the horse in a little circle to the left. (He will more than likely be leaning to the right at the bottom of your circle.) Give the horse his head and kick him with both feet, shooting him out of the circle, “riding higher” right at the point when he will no longer lean to the right and before he cuts into the left. Kicking him with both legs will bring his head straight and will shoot him higher on your circle. A person might have to take a few circles, but the horse will learn it is more work on the inside of the circle, than on the outside and will quit leaning in. 5) **Loping circles in a field.** This is a very effective way of getting a horse to lope nice circles. A plowed field with deep ground works the best. Try to lope a circle and whenever your horse cuts in, ride him straight until the lean comes out. Whenever he leans out, double him. Disengage the hindquarters, stopping the front end, and then push your horse across through the other side of the circle and lope straight for a ways. Then try to make another circle.

**Finding the Solution – Power of Direction**

All the methods I have just explained are only treating the symptoms instead of getting to the cure. If you have to get a horse ready for a sale in a short time period, these methods can help get your horse willingly loping circles. However, if you want to get to the cause of the problem or you are starting a horse from scratch and want to eliminate the problems, learn the power of direction.

When a horse has horizontal direction (suppleness through the poll and loin) with forward motion, the horse’s spinal column will make a perfect “C” around our leg. If the horse continues in this horizontal direction they will make a perfect “O,” which is a perfect circle. Any problems that we may encounter loping circles (dropping the shoulder, leaning out in the turn) happen as a result of losing horizontal direction (not making a “C” around our leg). Instead of the spinal column making a perfect “C,” enabling a perfect circle, they become tight and stiff through the poll and loin resulting in the “I” shape of the spinal column. This results in a dropped shoulder or leaning out in the circle. If we want to prevent resistance, the focus should not be loping circles. The focus should be keeping horizontal direction with forward motion and we will lope perfect circles.
Our goal should be perfect circles. If I asked someone to draw a perfect circle on a large piece of paper, they would draw a small circle. There is less room for error the smaller we make the circle. Apply the same concept when loping circles. Get horizontal direction at a walk. Any time the horse becomes tight through the poll and loin, bring your leg into them until they make a “C” around your leg. Pretty soon the horse will not want to stiffen his loin and will keep a perfect “C” with forward motion, making a perfect circle. Then try a slow trot, and an extended trot. Any time the loin stiffens bring your leg back in. Pretty soon you will be trotting a perfect circle. When you achieve the same thing at a lope, you will be loping perfect circles. A horse does not fail to lope a perfect circle when they drop their shoulder or lean to the outside of the circle. These are only the symptoms of losing horizontal direction.

3 Stages of Breaking a Horse
I. Setting foundation
II. Using jobs to build foundation
III. Using foundation to do a job

- Neglecting the foundation to get a job done is the cause of many problems.
- The job becomes more important (sorting cows, loping circles, opening a gate) than building the foundation. The job is completed, but at the expense of weakening the foundation.
- By thinking only about the job, negative patterns are set, and the horse learns to operate through unwilling submission.
- An ounce of prevention is worth a pound of cure. Do not let negative patterns form.

If good communication, willing submission, a balanced life to direction ratio, and a solid foundation of maneuvers have been established, the person is on the right path for perfection. Most of the problems we have with our horse result from a lack of confidence in one of these areas. All hope of perfection leaves when willing submission is lost. Once the person tries to force the horse into operating through unwilling submission, the perfection that was previously established slowly starts to diminish.

I have never achieved total perfection in any of my horses. However, there have been times when I have felt perfection while I was riding. It is by “feeling” these times of perfection and multiplying them, that I believe perfection is attainable. I don’t know if I will ever attain total perfection with my horses, but I know that it is attainable. I think the amount of perfection that can be experienced is entirely up to the person and how much time they are willing to work on it. Perfection certainly does not need to be attained to enjoy riding a horse. However, for me the more times of perfection I have when I am riding, the more enjoyment I receive. My livelihood revolves around horses, if I am not improving I get bored and riding colts becomes work. The times I have improved the most with my horses have been when I have been aware of the times of perfection during a ride and tried to multiply them.

46
Two Thought Processes

Traditional Thought Process (will be referred to as Traditional)

Primary Objective: Get horse to do a job
Primary Obstacle: Horse will not do the job
How do I get my horse to do the job?

*To eliminate all problems you will ever have with your horse, change your objective.*

Alternative Thought Process (Will be referred to as Alternative)

Primary Objective: Horse and person becoming one, “perfect unity.”
- The will of the horse becoming the will of the person. Instead of two forces moving against each other, two forces move together as one. “His legs are my legs, we are one body” (Ray Hunt). Ray Hunt says, “It’s like a dance. You are leading and the horse following, but you are both moving as one.”

With the Alternative you will not have obstacles, because the objective is to eliminate the cause of all obstacles. You are finding a cure instead of treating symptoms. The Traditional measures outward status to determine progress. In this mind set, perfection is unattainable, and has the potential of creating problems. The Alternative deals with inward status to measure progress. This will not cause problems and has the potential of experiencing perfection.

The primary difference between the two thought processes is perfection. The goal of one is perfection, and the goal of the other is job completion. Here is the question. Is perfection attainable? Can it be experienced with our horse? Can it be experienced in our life? Or are we striving for something that is unattainable? The rest of this book hinges around this question. Tom believed in perfection and he strived to achieve it with every horse. Tom tried to get others to “feel” this perfection and to help them reach it. Although not many did, this was the goal.

The Greek word for perfect is teleios and means; Complete (in various applications of labor, growth, mental, and moral character) completeness. Just like Adam was in the beginning; through Jesus washing us of all our sin, we can enter back into the completeness Adam experienced before the fall of mankind. We can return to total completeness in mental and moral character. “Till we all come in the unity of the faith, and of the knowledge of the Son of God, unto a perfect man, unto the measure of the stature of the fullness of Christ.” (Ephesians 4:13)

God believes in perfection, and that is why He sent His Son to live inside us, to complete us. The Spirit of Christ lives within us, “Don’t you know that you yourselves are God’s temple and that God’s Spirit lives in you?” (1 Corinthians 3:16), and it is through Him (not us) that we can be totally complete. There is nothing we can do within ourselves to experience this perfection, perfection comes only from us getting out of the way and letting Jesus live through us. Just like Ray Hunt says, he is a part of the horse and they are moving together as one. The same completeness is available, as we decrease and Christ is formed within us. “I in them, and thou in me, that they may be made perfect in one; and that the world may know that thou hast sent me, and hast loved them, as thou hast loved me” (John 17:23). As we begin to get
out of the way (our fleshly nature/ self-preservation) we begin to look like Christ and act like Christ, until we no longer find ourselves falling into sin. This is the goal in our spiritual walk. In Philippians 3:12-15 Paul says, “Not that I have already attained this, or have already been made perfect, but I press on to take hold of that for which Christ Jesus took hold of me. Brothers I do not consider myself to have taken hold of it. But one thing I do: Forgetting what is behind and straining on what is ahead, I press on toward the goal to win the prize for which God has called me heavenward in Christ Jesus. (NIV) Let us therefore as many as be perfect be thus minded: and if in anything you be otherwise minded God shall reveal even this unto you. (KJV)”

The level of perfection that can be experienced, with a horse and with God, is entirely up to each individual and how much we are willing to die to ourselves “I die daily” (1 Corinthians 15:31). It is a matter of getting out of our self-preservation (thoughts involving I, me, we, us), so the completeness of Christ can live in and through us. Just like with the horse it takes lots of time and lots of patience. “But let patience have her perfect work, that ye may be perfect and entire, wanting nothing” (James 1:4-5). I believe that perfection in Christ is attainable and we can live in the perfect will of God. “And be not conformed to this world: but be ye transformed by the renewing of your mind, that ye may prove what is good, and acceptable, and perfect, will of God” (Romans 12:2). I believe in the Bible and the Bible tells me there is perfection “in” Christ Jesus “Whom we preach, warning every man, and teaching every man in all wisdom; that we may present every man perfect in Christ Jesus” (Colossians 1:28).

George Fox (1624-1691), the founder of the Quaker church and an amazing man of God, said in his journal, “In all the sects of Christendom (so called) I found none to be told that they should ever come into the state of Adam’s perfection. The state in which Adam was in before he fell.” Fox suffered many beatings at the hands of Christians and was not accepted by the church. What was it that he said that enraged the early church? He said they could return to the state they were in before the fall, return to perfection, enter back into a close, intimate relationship with God here on earth.

“Moreover the Lord God let me see, when I was brought up onto this image in righteousness and holiness, and into the paradise of God, the state how Adam was made a living soul, and also the stature of Christ, the mystery, that had been hid from ages and generations, which things are hard to be uttered and cannot be borne by many. For, of all the sects in Christendom (so called) that I discoursed withal, I found none that could bear to be told that any should come to Adam’s perfection, into that image of God and righteousness and holiness that Adam was in before he fell, to be so clear and pure without sin, as he was. Therefore how should they be able to bear being told that nay should grow up to the measure of the stature of the fullness of Christ, when they cannot bear to hear that any should come, whilst upon earth, into the same power and Spirit that the prophets and apostles were in? Though it be a certain truth, that none can understand their writings aright without the same Spirit by which they were written” (Fox, 1997).

I do not understand how Christian churches do not believe in perfection that is through Christ. This is what Christ died for, “Knowing this, that our old man (self-preservation/flesh) is crucified with him, that the body of sin might be destroyed, that henceforth we should
not serve sin. For he that is dead is freed from sin. Now if we be dead with Christ, we believe that we shall also live with him: Knowing that Christ being raised from the dead dieth no more; death hath no more dominion over him. For in that he died, he died unto sin once: but in that he liveth, he liveth unto God. Likewise reckon ye also yourselves to be dead indeed unto sin (self-preservation), but alive unto God through Jesus Christ our Lord” (Romans 6:6-11 KJV). Through Jesus Christ we no longer have to live in our “old man” (imperfection). We can live “in” Christ Jesus (perfection). “There is therefore now no condemnation to them which are in Christ Jesus, who walk not after the flesh (old man), but after the Spirit” (Romans 8:1 KJV). Jesus died to restore that which was taken. What was taken? Perfection with God. “Whom we preach, warning every man, and teaching every man in all wisdom; that we may present every man perfect in Christ Jesus” (Colossians 1:28).

Under the old covenant perfection was never attainable. “For the law having a shadow of good things to come and not the very image of the things can never with those sacrifices which they offered year by year continually make the comers thereunto perfect” (Hebrews 10:1). “For the law made nothing perfect, but the bringing in of a better hope did: by which we draw near to God.” (Hebrews 7:19). Under the new covenant we have free access to God in the Holy of Holies where we can experience the Glory of God and be transformed into the image of Jesus Christ. “But we all, with open face beholding as in a glass the glory of the Lord are changed (Greek-transformed) into the same image from glory to glory even as by the Spirit of the Lord (2 Corinthians 3:18). This is huge people!!! I will explain the old and new covenant in greater detail in a few chapters, but just know that under the old covenant perfection was unattainable, but thank you Jesus, under the new covenant it is! Think about that scripture in 2 Corinthians 3:18 that is one of my favorite scriptures in the entire bible.

Jesus is perfect, we are imperfect; however by spending time “in” His presence “in” the glory of the most High God, we can be transformed into His image. How great it that! We have free access to God where we can be transformed into His image; all we have to do is come to Him. Not that we ever become God, but that through submitting ourselves to Christ the Spirit of Christ can live through us. “But ye are come unto mount Zion and unto the heavenly Jerusalem, and to an innumerable company of angels. To the general assembly and church of the firstborn, which are written in heaven and to God the judge of all, and to the spirits of just men made perfect, and to Jesus the mediator of the New Covenant, and to the blood of sprinkling, that speaketh better things than that of Abel.” (Hebrews 12:22-24). All we have to do is come to Jesus and let Him transform or imperfections (mind, body and spirit) into the perfection that is found “in” and only “in” Him. Just like the women with the issue of blood that said, “If I may but touch His cloths, I shall be made whole” (Mark 5:28). All we have to do is press through the crowds of the world (religion, work, pride, money) and touch the robe of God.

If we are transformed into the image of Jesus from Glory to Glory (2 Corinthians 3:18); Jesus did not have any sickness or disease, Jesus didn’t have any imperfections in His mind, body, or spirit. Thank you Jesus, that we can be transformed into your image: mind “we have the mind of Christ” (Corinthians 2:16), body “now he himself bore our sin in his body...by his stripes we are healed” (1 Peter 2:24), (Romans 8:11), spirit “For ye have not received
the spirit of bondage again to fear, but ye have received the Spirit of adoption, whereby we cry, Abba, Father.‖ (Romans 8:15). He was perfect in everyway and this is what is available to anyone that would take up their cross and follow him. “And he that taketh not his cross, and followeth after me is not worthy of me” (Matthew 10:28).

Why can’t the church bear to be told they can reach the state Adam was in before the fall, the state of Christ Jesus? The reason is they are not being taught by God, but by man. Being made perfect in Christ is only attainable through Christ Jesus, not by religion and not by works. “Howbeit we speak wisdom among them that are perfect: yet not the wisdom of this world, nor the princes of this world, that come to nought: But we speak the wisdom of God in a mystery, even a hidden wisdom, which God ordained before the world unto our glory” (1 Corinthians 2:6). Perfection could NEVER come from man, but only from God; Father, Son and Holy Spirit, the Trinity. “Be ye therefore perfect even as your Father in heaven is perfect” (Matthew 5:48). Jesus was the example and He does want us to follow Him. “The disciple is not above his master: but everyone that is perfect shall be as his master” (Luke 6:40).

Fox told the people that God did not dwell in temples made with hands, that we were the temple of God and that Christ was within us. “Don't you know that you yourselves are God's temple and that God's Spirit lives in you?” (1 Corinthians 3:16). He tried to get the people to listen to the Holy Spirit and let them be taught by God. Fox tried to reach the church, but after suffering beatings, imprisonments, and many hardships, he was only able to reach a small number. Fox was not dealing with children that wanted to know their Father. He was dealing with adults who had been taught by man and felt they could gain maturity in Christ through the church and its theology.

George Fox wrote, “Now I was come up in spirit through the flaming sword into the paradise of God. All things were new, and all the creation gave another smell into me than before, beyond what words can utter. I knew nothing but pureness, and innocence, and righteousness, being renewed up into the image of God by Christ Jesus, so that I say I was come up to the state of Adam which he was in before he fell. The creation was opened to me, and it was showed me how all things had their names given them according to their nature and virtue. And I was at a stand in my mind whether I should practice physic for the good of mankind, seeing the nature and virtues of the creatures were so opened to me by the Lord. But I was immediately taken up in spirit, to see into another or more steadfast state than Adam’s in innocence, even into a state in Christ Jesus that should never fall. And the Lord showed me that such as were faithful to him in the power and light of Christ, should come up into that state in which Adam was before he fell, in which the admirable works of the creation, and the virtues thereof, may be known, through the opening of that divine Word of wisdom and power by which they were made.”

This is basically the pivot point of the two thought processes: those that believe there is perfection “in” Christ Jesus and are willing to die to themselves to experience it, and those that do not believe perfection can be experienced and are not willing to get out of their self-preservation (flesh) to experience it. Are ye so foolish? Having begun in the spirit are ye now made perfect in the flesh? (Galatians 3:3). Paul had not received total perfection in Philippians 3, but he was striving for it. Paul knew that he was imperfect within himself in
Romans 7 and could not follow God’s commands. That’s why in Romans 8 he tells us of a better way. He says there is no condemnation for those who are in Christ Jesus, “Therefore, there is now no condemnation for those who are in Christ Jesus, who walk not after the flesh but after the Spirit” (Romans 8:1). There is perfection in Christ Jesus, “Whom we preach warning every man, and teaching every man in all wisdom; that we may present every man perfect in Christ Jesus” (Colossians 1:28). Paul believed in perfection in Christ. He knew he was perfect in Christ. Tom also believed in perfection, and he worked to achieve this in his horses. The two thought processes determine what type of submission we will enter into: willing “seeking relief,” or unwilling “giving to pressure.” Our choice is whether we want to strive for perfection in Christ, or focus on job completion. The same is true with our horse.

Striving For Perfection – Evidence from Scripture

If anyone wants to know what I believe on any topic relating to doctrine and theology, or anything for that matter, let it be known that I believe God’s word. I believe the word of God and I believe His word can set us free from any and every problem in this life. “And you shall know the truth and the truth shall make you free.” (John 8:32). What saddens me is God’s word is not setting ALL of His children free. What saddens me terribly is that sometimes the bible actually divides His children. This should not be! However, with the 100’s of different translations I think God’s word has gotten watered down in some of the translations. Just be careful, “For I testify unto every man that hears the words of the prophecy of this book. If any man shall add unto these things, God shall add unto him plagues that are written in this book: And if any man shall take away from the words of the book of this prophecy, God shall take away his part out of the book of life, and out the holy city, and from the things which are written in this book (Revelations 22:18, 19).

Make sure you are truly reading God’s word and not someone else’s translation of what they think God’s word was trying to say. God’s word should not divide His children, but unite His children. Show me division somewhere among God’s children and I will show you a group of people that are not hearing God’s word. “In them is fulfilled the prophecy of Isaiah: You will be ever hearing but never understanding. You will be ever seeing but never perceiving. For this people’s heart has become calloused they hardly hear with their ears, and they have closed their eyes. Otherwise they might see with their eyes, hear with their ears, understand with their hearts and turn, and I would heal them. (Matthew 13:14, 15).

When relating to controversial issues in the bible I read the King James Version and look the words up in the Strong Concordance to see what the words truly mean. We need to remember the words in the bible were originally spoken in Hebrew and Greek. I am not saying that we need to learn Hebrew and Greek to read the bible. However, on average it takes five words in English to describe one word in the Greek. I would highly suggest if you are trying to solve disputes, researching or digging, to look up what the words truly mean and let the Holy Spirit reveal the truth to you. "But the anointing which ye have received of him abideth in you, and ye need not that any man teach you: but as the same anointing teacheth you of all things, and is truth, and is no lie, and even as it hath taught you, ye shall abide in him” (1 John 2:27).
E-Sword is a great computer program that is a quick and easy way to see what the words actually meant in the Greek and Hebrew. E-sword has been a tremendous tool in my spiritual walk, helping me mature from only drinking milk to eating some very tasty meat. “And I brethren, could not speak unto you as unto spiritual, but as unto carnal (worldly), even as unto babes in Christ. I have fed you with milk and not with meat: for hitherto you were not able to bear it, neither, yet now are ye able (1 Corinthians 3:1, 2). We have much to say about this, but it is hard to explain because you are slow to learn. In fact, though by this time you ought to be teachers, you need someone to teach you the elementary truths of God’s word all over again. You need milk, not solid food! Anyone who lives on milk, being still a infant, is not acquainted with the teachings about righteousness. But solid food is for the mature, who by constant use have trained themselves to distinguish good from evil.” (Hebrews 5:11-14). I am not saying that the King James Version is the only translation to read. However, it is the only translation we can look up the words in the Greek and Hebrew and this has been the difference in my life from drinking milk and eating meat; from reading someone interpretation of God’s word, to truly reading God’s word in the fullest. I think if all God’s children were reading the same book, there would be a lot less division between us.

There are people that believe different things about perfection; within the next few pages is what I believe. I believe the bible, I believe God’s word.

Perfect

Matthew 5:48 – Be ye therefore perfect even as your father in heaven in perfect.

Matthew 19:21 – If though wilt be perfect, go and sell that thou hast, and give to the poor, and though shalt have treasure in heaven: and come and follow me.

Luke 6:40 – The disciple is not above his master: but everyone that is perfect shall be as his master.

John 17:23 – I in them, and thou in me, that they may be made perfect in one; and that the world may know that thou hast sent me, and hast loved them, as thou hast loved me.

Romans 12:2 – And be not conformed to this world: but be ye transformed by the renewing of your mind, that ye may prove what is good, and acceptable, and perfect, will of God.

1 Corinthians 2:6 – Howbeit we speak wisdom among them that are perfect: yet not the wisdom of this world, nor the princess of this world, that come to nought: But we speak the wisdom of God in a mystery, even a hidden wisdom, which God ordained before the world unto our glory.

1 Corinthians 13:9-11 – For we know in part and we prophesy in part. But when that which is perfect is come, then that which is in part shall be done away. When I was a child, I spake like a child, I understood like a child, I thought like a child: but when I became a man, I put away childish things.
2 Corinthians 13:11 – Finally brethren, farewell. Be perfect, be of good comfort, be of one mind, live in peace; and the God of love and peace shall be with you.

Galatians 3:3 – Are ye so foolish? Having begun in the spirit are ye now made perfect in the flesh?

Ephesians 4:13 – Till we all come in the unity of the faith, and of the knowledge of the Son of God, unto a perfect man, unto the measure of the stature of the fullness of Christ.

Philippians 3:12-15 – Not as though I had already attained, either were already perfect: but I follow after, if that I may apprehend that for which also I am apprehended. Brethren, I count not myself to have apprehended: but this one thing I do, forgetting those things which are behind and reaching forth unto those things which are before. I press toward the mark of the prize of the high calling of God in Christ Jesus. Let us therefore, as many as be perfect, be thus minded: and if in any thing ye be otherwise minded, God shall reveal even this unto you.

Colossians 1:28 – Whom we preach, warning every man and teaching every man in all wisdom; that we may present every man perfect in Christ Jesus.

Colossians 4:12 – Epaphras, who is one of you, as servant of Christ, saluteth you, always laboring fervently for you in prayers, that ye may stand perfect and complete in all the will of God.

1 Thessalonians 3:10 – Night and day praying exceedingly that we might see your face and might perfect that which is lacking in our faith.

2 Timothy 3:17 – That the man of God may be perfect thoroughly furnished unto all good works.

Hebrews 2:10 – For it became him, for whom are all things and by whom are all things, in bringing many sons unto glory, to make the captain of their salvation perfect through sufferings.

Hebrews 7:19 – For the law made nothing perfect, but the bringing in of a better hope did: by which we draw near to God.

Hebrews 10:1 – For the law having a shadow of good things to come and not the very image of the things can never with those sacrifices which they offered year by year continually make the comers thereunto perfect.

Hebrews 12:22-24 – But ye are come unto mount Zion and unto the heavenly Jerusalem, and to an innumerable company of angels. To the general assembly and church of the firstborn, which are written in heaven and to God the judge of all, and to the spirits of just men made perfect, and to Jesus the mediator of the New Covenant, and to the blood of sprinkling, that speaketh better things than that of Abel.
Hebrews 13:21 – Make you perfect in every good work to do his will, working in you that which is well pleasing in his sight, through Jesus Christ; to whom be glory for ever and ever. Amen.

James 1:4-5 – But let patience have her perfect work, that ye may be perfect and entire, wanting nothing.

James 3:2 – For in many things we offend all, if any man offend not in word, the same man is a perfect man, and able also to bridle the whole body.

1 Peter 5:10 – But the God of all grace, who hath called us unto his eternal glory by Christ Jesus, after that ye have suffered a while, make you perfect, stablish, strengthen, settle you.

1 John 4:17-18 – Herein is our love made perfect, that we may have boldness in the Day of Judgment: because as he is, so are we in this world. There is no fear in love; but perfect love casteth out fear: because fear hath torment. He that feareth is not made perfect.

Perfected, Perfecting, Perfection, Perfectly, Perfectness

1 John 4:12 – No man hath seen God at any time. If we love one another, God dwelleth in us and His love is perfected in us.

Colossians 3:14 – And above all these things put on charity (agape = love), which is the bond of perfectness.

Ephesians 4:12 – For the perfecting of the saints, for the work of the ministry, for the edifying of the body of Christ.

2 Corinthians 13:9 – For we are glad, when we are weak, and ye are strong: and this also we wish, even your perfection.

Hebrews 5:14, 6:1 – But strong meat belongeth to them that are full age, even those who by reason of use have their senses exercised to discern both good and evil. Therefore leaving the principles of the doctrine of Christ, let us go on unto perfection; not laying again the foundation of repentance from dead works and of faith toward God.

1 Corinthians 1:10 – Now I beseech you breatheren by the name of our Lord Jesus Christ, that ye all speak the same thing and that there be no divisions among you; but that ye be perfectly joined together in the same mind and in the same judgment.
To better explain the two thought processes, I will use some of my own experiences in riding saddle bronc horses. The Lord has taught me a lot about operating through job completion vs. true unity in my bronc riding throughout the years. I will start by giving a brief history before I get into what I have learned up to date.

I started riding saddle broncs my freshman year in high school. I got on 3 horses at the district rodeos and qualified for state. After my freshman year, I knew I was going to be a saddle bronc rider. By my sophomore year, riding broncs was beginning to click and become lots of fun. I won state and ended up sixth at nationals. Riding broncs came very easily for me and I could see myself making a career out of it.

However, my junior year I began to get sick and my bronc riding skills began to go down hill. Whenever my body would receive a little adrenalin instead of getting excited I would become tired and weak. The mitochondria in my muscles which usually supply strength became shrunken up, causing my muscles to ache like when a person has the flu. Just the thought of riding broncs would make me tired and weak. I would usually sleep right up until the time I had to get on a bucking horse. In high school, not many kids actually rode their horses, so if a person rode a horse, they usually would place pretty high and receive points for the year-end awards. At the state finals it was the same thing. If a person rode all 3 horses at state they were usually guaranteed a trip to the National High School Finals.

Before I would get on a bronc, I would always be tired and weak, and often dizzy. When I would try to kick loose and spur the horse so I could receive more points, I had trouble keeping my balance. Due to the sickness, I hardly ever practiced and except for a hometown rodeo, I never went to any other rodeos besides high school rodeos. I got in a habit of just getting the horses covered my junior and senior year instead of trying to better my spur ride and become a better rider. I would get my horses covered, but picked up many bad habits in the process. I made it to nationals my junior and senior years, and received a scholarship to Walla Walla Community College to ride saddle bronc horses. At nationals my senior year, I tried to loosen up to spur the horses I had drawn, but got bucked off both my horses.

I didn’t figure it was safe for me to ride anymore due to the fact that I would get dizzy and didn’t have any strength before getting on bucking horses. I told the coach at Walla Walla I could no longer rodeo and decided to hang up riding saddle bronc horses for a while. For the next 2 years I did not get on any bucking horses and the Lord began to speak to me telling me His plans for my future.

One time at a Bible study, I was praying during our time of praise and worship, and the Lord gave me a vision in which I was making a perfect saddle bronc ride, with Jesus riding behind me. I then saw myself back behind the chutes talking to people about the Lord with a Bible in my hand. I asked the Lord if He wanted me to start riding broncs again and He said He did and gave me a scripture.

He gave me Ezekiel 2:3-5, “He said: "Son of man, I am sending you to the Israelites, to a
rebellious nation that has rebelled against me; they and their fathers have been in revolt against me to this very day. The people to whom I am sending you are obstinate and stubborn. Say to them, 'This is what the Sovereign LORD says.' And whether they listen or fail to listen—for they are a rebellious house—they will know that a prophet has been among them.”

When the Lord had given me the vision and the scripture, I questioned Him wondering what I would say and if I was the right man for the job. The Lord immediately gave me Exodus 4:11-12, “The LORD said to him, "Who gave man his mouth? Who makes him deaf or mute? Who gives him sight or makes him blind? Is it not I, the LORD? Now go; I will help you speak and will teach you what to say.”

After the Lord gave me the second scripture, I figured the first one was not a mistake and the Lord must have known what He was doing. It sounded good to me and I was excited to be an instrument of God. A few months went by and I had an opportunity to go to Kentucky to work on some race horse farms. I decided to pray about it, and as I was praying I saw Jesus and myself walking down a paved walkway in the middle of a paddock in Kentucky. As we were walking, the Lord was pointing out into the pasture at what I thought were clumps of grass. However, as we walked further the clumps of grass became people that the Lord wanted me to talk to. I took this as a sign that the Lord wanted me to go to Kentucky.

While I was in Kentucky, the Lord continued to minister to me and I had the opportunity to visit with some people about the Lord. It was a very good time. One time as I was praying in Kentucky, I saw Amaia (my wife) and myself walking to Montana with Jesus in between us. We were both holding onto Jesus’ hand, and walked from Idaho to Montana and opened a book. Once we opened the book, flames started coming out of the book and people started gathering around the flames dancing. The place on the map we walked to in Montana looked like it could have been Bozeman, Montana. I had applied to Montana State University in high school, and the rodeo coach agreed to pay for my books and tuition to ride saddle bronc horses for them. Even though this was a better offer and a university, I turned it down to go to Walla Walla Community College because all my drinking buddies were going there. I called the MSU rodeo coach, after not being on a saddle bronc horse for 2 years, and the coach offered me the same deal; books and tuition.

I finished 4 years of riding saddle bronc horses for MSU. Riding saddle broncs paid for my Bachelor of Science degree and most of my Masters degree at MSU. The Lord has taught me an awful lot about life and starting colts through riding saddle broncs the past several years.

It all boils down to what our focus is: job completion or true unity. When I started riding broncs again after being sick, I had a lot to work through. I had not ridden for 2 years, and the previous 2 years I had ridden sick, developing many bad habits. It took me 4 years to get back on the same track I felt like I was starting on my sophomore year in high school. I would have to say riding broncs is one of my favorite things to do. However, I have had to try to overcome many of Satan’s strongholds. It doesn’t matter what it is, once we have failed in any area of our life, Satan will be right there to remind us of our failures.
Every time I would get on a bronc, I would think about all of the horses that I had ridden tired and weak, and I had an imperfect ride pictured in my mind, consciously or subconsciously. This in turn caused me to not make a good ride. When I started riding again at MSU, it took me another couple of years to try to break all the bad habits and get my head straight again. The Lord showed me one time when I was praying, that I was like Mel Gibson in the movie “Maverick.” He wakes up on the back of a horse in the middle of a desert with a noose tied around his neck and snakes all around the horse’s feet. This was me in my bronc riding. The snakes were all of the negative things I would be thinking about before getting on a horse. I pictured all of the bad rides in my mind, instead of thinking about Christ and making a perfect bronc ride. I was doomed for failure before I even opened the chute gate. As much as I tried, I could not get all the rides of imperfection out of my mind. They continued to haunt me.

As I was praying, I saw a big wave come through and wash away all the snakes and the noose around my neck. I then saw myself riding in a lush green garden making a perfect bronc ride. This symbolized riding in the flesh and riding in the Spirit. When I am riding in the flesh Satan can get to me and keep my focus on the past and all my failures. However, through the power of the Holy Spirit, God can wash away all of our imperfections of the past and we can start over in perfection. When we are focused on job completion (riding broncs) Satan can have a stronghold on us. However, if we become filled with the Holy Spirit and the power of Christ is living through us (true unity) Satan cannot tell us lies.

The Lord brought these visions to life the summer between receiving my BS degree and starting my Masters degree. I entered up and went to 7 pro rodeos. The Lord showed me the power of riding in true unity versus focusing on job completion. The focus of the summer was to be a light for Christ. I did not worry about riding horses, but to love on God and anybody I came in contact with. I won $3,500 in 7 rodeos, but the most amazing thing of that summer by far was the power of riding in true unity/perfection in Christ vs. worrying about job completion.

I rodeoed with a couple of kids from Nevada that had a camper, and before I got on every bronc, I would get in the camper, read my Bible and become filled with the Holy Spirit. One time as I was praying, the Lord told me, “Satan has asked to sift you as wheat” (Luke 22:31). This kind of scared me a little bit, so I asked, “Will you be there Lord?” The Lord replied, “I will never leave you nor forsake you” (Joshua 1:5). I then asked, “Will he hurt me Lord?” and the Lord replied, “The LORD is my strength and my shield; my heart trusts in him, and I am helped” (Psalm 28:7). After hearing this, I thought good enough for me, let’s get it on.

I went to the rodeo in Logan, UT and remained filled with the Holy Spirit, talking to people and trying to show the love of Christ. When I got on my bronc, he stalled in the chute, and they hotshotted him to get him to leave. When they buzzed him out, he reared up and came over on top of me, hitting my head on the back of the chute. I did not end up under the horse and was only a little dazed from hitting my head. I received a re-ride and the next horse I got on was awesome. He came out bucking, just like a bronc rider wants a horse to buck. He bogged his old head to the ground and was kicking at the roof. I was trying to set my feet really hard and spur the horse in the neck to ensure I had a high point spur ride. However, I spurred over my bronc rein and got bucked off.
Getting bucked off is something that really eats on me. Even when I was sick, I hardly ever got bucked off. I grew up riding colts and working on ranches, and whenever a person gets bucked off, they can expect to be made fun of. Getting bucked off is something a cowboy does not like to do. It’s kind of a “Catch-22.” If there is somebody around to catch your horse that is good, but you know you will be made fun of. If there isn’t anyone around, you will not be made fun of, but you may have to walk a long way to get your horse. Cowboys do not like getting bucked off, and this has been a problem in my bronc riding.

When I was sick I would often “safety-up” to get the horse ridden instead of making an 80-point spur ride or get bucked off trying. I hate getting bucked off, and this is an area where Satan is able to get into my head and do some damage. Whenever I get bucked off, Satan immediately starts telling me stuff like: “You suck,” “You must not be a very good bronc rider, to get bucked off,” “Look at all these people that just watched you get bucked off, they think you suck too.” For a long time after I was sick I was scared to get on broncs. Not from getting hurt, but from failure. Whenever I would get bucked off, it would immediately confirm my biggest fear, that I was a failure, that I was not a very good bronc rider. I was worried about what everyone else thought, and as soon as I would get bucked off, I was sure that everyone thought I was a lousy bronc rider. I would tell myself that and eventually I would have myself convinced.

It took me a long time to realize that sometimes even good bronc riders get bucked off. It doesn’t mean that you are a bad bronc rider, you just had a bad day. So when I spurred over my rein at the rodeo and got bucked off, this was a place that Satan could do some real damage. However, the Lord had already warned me, so it had no effect on me. I went back behind the chutes and did not let Satan’s lies have any effect on me.

During the bull riding they set off some fireworks, and I remember watching a particular firework go off not far from the chutes. There was one spark that came away from the rest, shot clear up in the air and veered off straight behind the chutes. I continued to watch it, and it fell down to the stripping chutes, not 10 to 15 feet from where I was standing and exploded. It did not hurt anyone, only startled everyone, and got everyone’s attention. The Lord then told me, “Works of fire.” The Holy Spirit is a consuming fire, “For the LORD your God is a consuming fire” (Deuteronomy 4:24), and the Lord was showing me that He wanted to unleash His Holy Spirit behind the bucking chutes. I finished off the summer and the Lord continued to speak to me. I had a blast.

My focus had shifted from job completion to becoming one with Christ (perfect unity). Once a person has found this place, he no longer has to fear the lies of Satan, because the Lord can speak truth to you and warn you of the future, just as the Lord did with me in Logan, UT.

I started back in college in the fall of 2006, and for some reason it did not take long to forget what I had learned during the summer. For the third year in a row I started the spring season winning the saddle bronc riding in one of the toughest regions in the NIRA, the Big Sky region. My focus shifted to job completion, trying to stay in the lead, instead of true unity with Christ. For the third year in a row, it all fell apart at the last rodeo of the season and I barely ended up qualifying for Nationals.
My sophomore year I missed going to Nationals by 6 points. If I would have placed one place higher at any rodeo throughout the year, I would have qualified. My junior year I did almost the same thing, finishing in the fourth spot. I had a horrible last rodeo, and if I would have placed one place higher on my last horse I would have qualified. The team however, qualified in the top two for the region, and because I had been on the team the entire year, I got to go to Nationals. I had pretty good luck at Nationals making it to the short go, but got bucked off a trashy horse in the short go.

So my senior year you would think I would have learned to focus on true unity vs. job completion. Nope, I enjoy banging my head against a wall doing the same thing over and over. Missoula is always the last rodeo and is a double header. I went into the last rodeo winning the region and was focused on winning the region and the saddle that went along with it. I figured after the first 2 years I pretty well had it coming. I thought it was my last year and it was time for the Lord to do a little blessing. After all, I kept a pretty good attitude the last 2 years. This was my time to shine. (I wasn’t quite that arrogant about it. However, I did believe that my senior year would be my year.)

The arena was a standing lake and was a good foot under mud and water. I drew a tiny little colt for my first horse of the last rodeo of the year, and he did come out bucking. He came out and blew in two, jumping and kicking, sucking back. I am not trying to embellish the story, but he did even do a little sun fishing (I have the picture to prove it). The horse set up, leaped into the air, and kicked off to the side. While the horse was hanging in the air, I reached up and stuck the horse as hard as I could with my spurs in the neck, listening to the people whooping and hollering behind the chutes.

I just remember thinking “Victory, here we come!” The next jump the horse set back on his hindquarters, leaped forward, and drove his head between his legs, launching me over the horse’s head and into the lake of mud and water. It was bad enough that I had been winning the region for the third year in a row and came up short. It was bad enough that for the past 2 years it came down to this particular rodeo. It was also bad enough to be making a good ride and then get “sucker punched” by a wiry little colt, which looked like he had just been pulled off his mother. I also hate getting bucked off, and got bucked off the last horse of the season. But to top it all off, when I did get bucked off, my head was driven into a lake of mud and water and I was covered from head to toe with mud.

As soon as I hit the mud, I bounced up and started to lose control. I wanted to go back behind the chutes and hit something really hard. When I became sick in high school, I developed a temper that kind of scared me. I didn’t just get mad, I would lose control. One of the side effects of the Epstein Bar Virus is a bad temper, and boy, did I have one. I would go from being tired and sluggish, to an out of control maniac. I would feel something come over me, and I would honestly lose total control of my thought processes. I just wanted to tear something to pieces. Looking back, I know this came from Satan, and I can see how he could drive people to do something they never thought they could do.

My temper was often out of control in football my junior year. I wanted to play linebacker, but I had to play corner, a position I hated. Corner takes a little finesse. You have to wait for the
person to catch the ball before you can hit them. I had a problem with that concept. I led the league in tackles, sacks and had double the next guy in pass interferences. I liked to hit. As soon as I would get called for pass interference, I would honestly lose control. No one would really get mad at me; they would just try to calm me down and try to keep me from losing control.

I felt like The Hulk. I would try to keep control, but something would take over in my body and I would transform into a mad man. Most of the time when I would get called for pass interference, the following play would be a corner blitz. I do not know where I went during these times, but a mad man would take over. I never snapped on a person outside of football, but would often lose control while working. An example would be the simple task of setting a brace post. I would be working and if something wouldn’t go right, I would lose control and start beating the post until I had nothing left. I would fall to the ground exhausted and sometimes it would take 15 minutes until I had enough strength to get back up (Yeah, pretty stupid).

I had a bad and stupid temper that the Lord has had to help me overcome. I notice that the less time I spend with the Lord, the more tired I become, and the quicker I lose my temper. The more time I spend with the Lord, the more strength and patience I receive.

After getting bucked off, I felt one of these temper tantrums start to billow up. I had the urge to throw and kick anything I came in contact with. However, I kept my composure. I took a deep breath and had the Lord give me some perspective. I then sucked it up and helped the competition that would end up beating me. Helping the competition felt good. This is what being a light for Christ is all about. Besides, maybe if enough light shined through, it would help dry out some of the mud I was caked with.

Once the rodeo was over, I had officially come in third place, again. I could only laugh and think, “Well, I guess I am just going to have to win Nationals.” Before I could leave I had to go to the awards ceremony to receive my third place award, and of course, be a good sport and let my light shine; blah, blah, blah. Well, when they announced the bronc riding champion, who do you think they announced? None other than yours truly. I was the 2007 Big Sky Region Saddle Bronc Riding Champion. I went up and got my picture taken holding my newly engraved champion trophy saddle. I thought surely they had made a mistake, but who knows, we serve a mighty God. Maybe even through all this the Lord had found a way to bless me.

Nope, they had made a mistake. I was still in third place. However, it felt good to be humiliated and humbled a little further. I guess I had not quite had enough mud thrown in my face for the day. Oh well, I figured I was just being tested and that I would get them at Nationals. I mean who cares about being the Regional Champion when you could be the National Champion. So I had it in my mind that I would just stand on faith that I was going to win Nationals.

So did I end up winning Nationals? Well, let me tell you the story. The first horse I got on was supposed to have some ducks and dives, but ended up being straight down the pen, a nice horse. I got tapped off and was thinking, “This is fun. This will be a good horse to start off on.” I was looking under my rein, watching my feet reach up and spur him in the neck, just as relaxed as could be, another day at the office. The horse was following the pickup man and for some
reason I looked to see how close the fence was. Right then the horse threw his head up, sucked back underneath me and threw me to the ground. I made a great 7-second spur ride.

Needless to say, this did not quite line up with my plans of winning the National Finals. I tried to keep a good attitude, but was kind of discouraged and was a brat to Amaia. Before getting on my second horse, I thought, “I need to spend some time with the Lord.” I needed to get filled with the Holy Spirit like I did last summer. I laid down behind the chutes on my bronc bag and began to pray. The Holy Spirit began to come and the Lord began to speak to me. I remembered what He had told me about having the noose around my neck and worrying about stuff, instead of focusing on being one with Him. He told me I need to be filled with love. “Love is patient, love is kind. It does not envy, it does not boast, it is not proud. It is not rude, it is not self-seeking, it is not easily angered, it keeps no record of wrongs” (1 Corinthians 13:4-5). As I went through the list, I started to see where I had fallen short in so many ways.

I asked the Lord for forgiveness, and as I got up and prepared to get on my bronc, the Lord showed me that I was like Peter when he stepped out of the boat and tried to walk to Jesus. “‘Lord, if it's you,’ Peter replied, ‘tell me to come to you on the water.’ ‘Come,’ he said. Then Peter got down out of the boat, walked on the water and came toward Jesus. But when he saw the wind, he was afraid and, beginning to sink, cried out, ‘Lord, save me!’ Immediately Jesus reached out his hand and caught him. ‘You of little faith,’ he said, ‘why did you doubt?’” (Matthew 14:28-31). Peter steps out onto the lake on faith and begins to walk on the water. However, when he sees the wind and the waves crashing down, he begins to lose faith and starts to sink. The Lord showed me that’s how I am with my bronc riding. I try to step out on faith that I am healed and that I no longer have anything holding me back. I start out ok looking only to Christ, but as I get out in the water my focus shifts to the mighty waves and I start to sink. I begin to think about imperfect rides I made in the past and trying to prevent them from happening again. I begin to shift from being united with Christ to worrying about job completion, and I begin to sink.

I felt awesome before getting on my second bronc. I was no longer thinking about the poor rides I had made in the past, and was focusing on glorifying God and spurring this horse harder than I had ever spurred a horse before. All I thought about was setting my feet and making a perfect spur ride. I got on my horse, called for the gate, and spurred the horse for all I was worth. The horse bucked in a tight circle to the right. I was trying to set my feet as hard as I could and was making a good ride. At 7 seconds I hung my right spur for a split second and the horse sucked back to the left sending me flying right on my head. I had gotten bucked off another horse! As soon as I pulled my head out of the dirt, I imagined Peter and I said, “Lord, you make it hard to step out on faith, because when I do I get pounded by the waves.” I was a little frustrated, but bounced back knowing that the Lord had a plan and through all this He was teaching me. The last horse did not go well either. I was thinking too much about the previous 2 horses and got bucked off right out of the chute.

Once I got home from the Nationals the Lord began to speak to me. He showed me many things and why things had to happen the way they did at Nationals. When I returned home, the Lord showed me in a vision a cow that had been drinking from a dirty watering hole in the
middle of the dessert that was full of mud and manure. The cow was very skinny and sickly looking. He then showed me another cow drinking from a spring shooting out of the side of the mountain that ran off the rocks. The water was crystal clear and watered a lush green valley. He showed me that the 2 cows were me. I had not been spending enough time drinking of the Holy Spirit (spring) and had been spending too much time in the world (muddy watering hole).

He began to show me the importance of true unity instead of job completion. All spring I had been focused on job completion, winning the region, winning the nation. My focus had been riding broncs instead of solely loving God and trying to be a light for Christ.

The summer I did so well in the PRCA I was not focused on what other people thought, but only on serving the Lord. The Lord showed me that riding broncs was my ministry and that was my focus. I went to the rodeos and was not concerned about winning money and selfish ambitions, but being a light for Christ. The Lord in turn took care of me tremendously blessing me with $3,500 in 3 weeks. He was supporting my ministry. During the week I would try to prepare for the weekend like a pastor would for church. I was starting colts and thought about God all day and read my Bible whenever I got a chance. I listened to Christian tapes when I was in the car and my whole life was consumed with God.

However, when I started going to the college rodeos my focus began to change. I became busy, and I did not make time daily to spend with the Lord. Riding broncs went from being my ministry to being my job. I had the expectations of the team and team supporters and I did not want to let them down. I went from being totally consumed with God to drifting back into the world. I went from having no weight on my shoulders in the PRCA to carrying the weight of everyone’s expectations. I went from true unity to job completion.

I needed to get bucked off all my horses at the National Finals. The Lord needed to teach me something: riding broncs was going to be part of my ministry. When the Lord had told me to start riding broncs again, the only broncs I had gotten on were at college rodeos. Every summer I would say I was going to ride broncs, but would get too busy working and not go to any rodeos. By the time I was 24, the most rodeos I had ever been to during the summer was 8, followed by 5 rodeos and then maybe 1 or 2.

However, after the College Finals, I had to ask myself some questions. I had been bucked off 3 horses and was finished with college rodeos. Do I hang it up and let Satan convince me that I am bad bronc rider and there is no point of going? Or do I stand on the promises from God and get serious about riding broncs? I have decided to stand on God’s promises. I am going to get serious about riding broncs and try to enter as many rodeos as God allows me. God always has a plan and He always has your best interests in mind. If I had not gotten bucked off all my horses at Nationals, I might not have been motivated to start rodeoing hard. I am having a lot more fun rodeoing at the professional level than I ever did at the college or amateur level, and this is where my ministry is, which makes it all the more fun.

Through all this the Lord has taught me the importance of true unity instead of job completion. Any time we take our focus off of God and start thinking about completing a job, Satan can come in telling us lies and deceiving us. It doesn’t matter whether it is in sports or in
any area of our life. 2 Kings gives us a great example of true unity vs. job completion, “When the servant of the man of God got up and went out early the next morning, an army with horses and chariots had surrounded the city. ‘Oh, my lord, what shall we do?’ the servant asked. ‘Don't be afraid,’ the prophet answered. ‘Those who are with us are more than those who are with them.’ And Elisha prayed, ‘O LORD, open his eyes so he may see.’ Then the LORD opened the servant's eyes, and he looked and saw the hills full of horses and chariots of fire all around Elisha” (2 Kings 6:15-17).

The servant was focused on job completion. They were terribly out-numbered and were certain to be slaughtered. However, Elisha the prophet had true unity with Christ. He had a different perspective on the same situation. Because God had opened his eyes to see into the heavenly realms, he could see that God was in total control and had a massive army behind Elisha.

Through true unity comes communication. When I would take time to get filled with the Holy Spirit and wash away all the worries and cares of the world before getting on a bronc, this is when the Lord would speak to me. He told me to start riding broncs again and told me what college to go to. After I had started riding, He showed me that I need to become filled with the Holy Spirit and He will wash away all the lies that Satan tells me. He warned me in Logan, UT that Satan was going to try to deceive me. God helped me to see into the future, so I was not surprised at what the future would bring. He also showed me that I need to love and not get caught up in worldly things, otherwise like Peter, Satan can deceive me when I step out into the water.

Through all these things, God took off the covering of what I could not see with my natural eyes and helped me to see what the Lord was supernaturally working in my life in the past, present, and future. Through true unity and being perfectly united with Christ, He is able to communicate with us and direct us into perfection, traveling on the perfect path that He has set before us. The same thing happens with our horses.
**God’s Will: Driving Factors**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Horse’s Will</th>
<th>Man’s Will</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- 3 primary driving Factors</td>
<td>To do a Job</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1) Survival/ Self-Preservation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2) Companionship</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3) Comfort</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- 1 Variable Factor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1) Hormones</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We basically have the same driving factors as our horse does, self-preservation, companionship, and comfort. *Self-preservation* has become the American way, “Look out for number one.” From the time we are born, we are selfish and very good at looking after our own needs. It is this self-preservation that keeps our horse from submitting and falling perfectly in our will and it is the same self-preservation (flesh) in us, which keeps us from submitting to God and falling perfectly in His will.

We all seek companionship and want to be with someone or something we feel comfortable with. The computer guy that hates people and never leaves his house finds companionship with the computer, and the quiet bachelor cowboy finds companionship with his cows, horse, and dog. Just like riding a colt that has never been weaned from its mother or friends, the companionship we have with our family, friends and even our spouse, can keep us from falling perfectly in God’s will. Instead of turning to God for comfort and companionship, we turn to our earthly companions to meet all our needs, keeping us from coming into the fullness of Christ. Like the song says, “What a friend we have in Jesus,” however we need to be willing to go to Him. I think there are many of us who need to be weaned from our earthly companions, so we can be drawn to our heavenly companion. For our only companion who will never let us down and always give us comfort, meeting all our needs, is Jesus Christ.

We all want to be comfortable, even the people that like to be physically uncomfortable find comfort in that (extreme sports). The people that work themselves to death receive comfort from the work. If they were not trying to kill themselves they would not be comfortable. We are all filled with a void from the time we are born and try to fill this void to satisfy ourselves and make us comfortable. Some people try to fill this void with work, trying to give their life purpose. Others look for comfort in all the wrong places, sleeping around, or looking to drugs. However, ultimately the only place that this void will be truly filled and enable us to find true comfort, is through Jesus Christ.

Men and women are obviously driven by hormones. Some might argue that is the only driving factor for some men. I think everything we do can be linked back to the same 3 driving factors.
Major underlying factors:
1) Confidence
2) Energy

Confidence
Increase in Confidence = Decrease in Self-Preservation (vice versa)
Comfot and Companionship Increase = Confidence Increase (vice versa)

Measures of Confidence level
1) Head height (best measure of confidence level)
   a. High = Bothered/Unconfident
   b. Low = Relaxed/Confident

Energy
Energy level decreases = Self-Preservation decreases = Increase in Comfort and
Companionship = Increase in Confidence (when presented in the correct manner)

The more I work with horses, the more evident the importance of the horse’s confidence level becomes to me. I have started lots of horses and have even taken horses through the bridle that did not have a high level of confidence in me. I am not saying that they didn’t have any confidence in me. However, there were many times during a ride, or on the ground that these horses’ head level would be elevated and bothered. Also, when I would walk out into the pasture to catch the horse, if I could not get the horse cornered where they knew they had no hope of escaping, they would try to run by me. These horses were broke by most people’s definition. I could use these horses to brand calves, work cows, and do a reining pattern. However, if someone else was to ride the horse I would have to warn him or her that the horse was a little spooky or touchy, and if you put them in a tight spot, some of them might buck.

These horses were broke, as far as handling goes. However, they did not have a high confidence level. A horse that is confident in us will not have a high level of self-preservation and will experience comfort and companionship with us. I have started many horses overlooking this simple concept. I can be on a colt in a few rides and accomplishing a job. If they get tight or bothered I can ride them through it and go on with the job. However, if we overlook the confidence level in order to accomplish a job, often we run the risk of shattering their confidence. The better the cowboy (riding a horse with a shattered confidence, running, bucking) the more they can ride a horse with a low confidence level.

However, we can only shatter that confidence so many times until the horse learns that we are untrustworthy. The cowboy may be able to get along with the horse fine, but if they turn the horse over to someone else, the horse will easily fall apart. The more times we shatter the confidence, the easier it is to shatter it the next time. Just like a young kid losing confidence by getting bucked off, it will take a while to rebuild the kid’s confidence back and his confidence can only be shattered so many times. If shattered enough, eventually the kid will want nothing to do with horses. The same is true with a horse.
We can learn a lot from a little kid’s horse that enjoys being with the kid. Some of the most amazing things that I have seen performed out of free will by a horse, have been by kids’ horses. I have seen kids’ horses take care of kids in ways that are truly amazing. They would do things that would be totally uncharacteristic of a horse to ensure the kid’s safety. The same horse, when ridden by a big fat man who went to jerking and pulling them around, would buck the rider off. However, the horse would never dream of bucking with the little kid. They would never dream of doing anything to displease the little kid.

What changes these horses? The horse experiences comfort and companionship with the kid, but the man brings out the horse’s self-preservation through unwilling submission. Surprisingly enough, we can do quite a bit with a horse using their self-preservation, driving them to do a job. However, it is amazing what a horse will do for you when they enjoy being with you. We can train a horse to do a reining pattern, work a cow, or team rope. However, it is so fun to ride a horse that is not only trained to do a job, but thoroughly enjoys doing the job with us.

Learning the Importance of Confidence

One summer when I was around a freshman in high school, Dad had a pile of outside horses. We would ride colts what seemed like all day, everyday, all summer. One day my dad was gone and it was just me riding the colts. I would get so bored riding the colts that I thought I would spice it up a little bit. At the end of the day I had ridden 12 colts and proudly walked up to my mom and said, “Well, I got every one of them to buck with me.” There were a few of them that were a little lazy, so I thought I had really accomplished something. I would catch them, saddle them, and cinch them up as tight as I could. Then I’d jump on them and drive my spurs in the belly and go for a little bronc ride. It did spice the day up a little bit. However, my mom told Dad, and Dad pretty well put a stop to that. He told me if I wanted to try to get them to buck, then he would find some fence for me to build. After that I didn’t try to get them to buck with me anymore.

This was pretty well my mentality growing up starting colts. I was not too concerned with riding in perfection, but more or less just getting the job done. I got them riding quiet, soft in the mouth, and able to do a job. However, when I left home and had to start colts by myself, where my dad was not around to help me, I noticed that I started getting into a lot more wrecks with my horses. When we would start large bunches of horses at home, Dad would work them on horseback then hold on to them while we got on, then lead us around and turn us loose. We usually did not get into many horrible wrecks that couldn’t be salvaged. Dad was always there to head them off. Starting colts growing up was pretty easy. However, when I left home the colts got a little tougher.

I thought either I had been running into a lot tougher horses than Dad ever had, or he was doing something a little different than I was. Well, what I came to realize is that besides doing a much better job of setting a foundation early (giving the nose/eye and breaking the hindquarters), Dad was able to read the horse’s confidence level and communicate with the horse much better than I was.

Growing up I would often be working with a horse and be having so much trouble trying to
follow the “correct way” of working with horses. I would be trying to “make the wrong thing difficult and the right thing easy,” looking “for the smallest change and the slightest try” (Ray Hunt). I would be trying so hard to help it make sense to the horse, and the more I worked with the horse, the more bothered they would get. I was always amazed how I could try so hard, for so long and the more I tried the more bothered the horse would get, losing confidence. Then my dad could get on them, and in a few minutes the horse’s head would drop, and they would start doing what I was trying to get them to do and do it riding calmly and relaxed with confidence.

What was it that my dad, my grandpa, and all great horsemen possess that enabled them to control the horse’s confidence level? They follow the basic principles of this book: willing submission, good communication, a solid foundation of maneuvers, and a balanced life to direction ratio. Willing submission – They do not force the horse into unwilling submission, running the risk of the horse rebelling. They wait for it to be the horse’s idea instead of their idea. Good communication – They can communicate with the horse, not only telling the horse what to do, but also feeling where the horse is lost and knowing how to help them understand. Solid foundation of maneuvers – They greatly understand how the head and neck, shoulders and hindquarters work to accomplish a job and know how to control, and move them with feel, timing, and balance. Balanced life to direction ratio – They know the importance of bringing the life to the direction so that the horse does not become resentful to the direction and they do not ride with a high level of life, which they cannot direct in a positive manner.

When trying to work with the colts before my dad would get on them, I would be trying to not force the horse, trying to wait for willing submission. However, as stressed by the theme of this book, it is so important to have a good level of communication. I was trying to do everything right to help my horse. However, my lack of communication was causing the horse to lose confidence in me. The same thing is true with the Lord. We can try to be doing everything right, reading Scripture, and going to church. However, if we have no communication with God, it is hard for Him to direct us and easy to lose faith. If we are not communicating with God and only putting our faith in our religious teacher and religion, we run the risk of being let down.

**Faith**

The confidence level between our horses and ourselves can be compared with our faith between God and ourselves. In order to build on our faith, we must focus on the same principles that we would with our horse, willing submission (give God our entire life), good communication (listening to the Holy Spirit), a solid foundation of maneuvers (revelations from God), and balance the life to direction ratio (the letter kills, but the Spirit brings life). “**But without faith it is impossible to please him; for he that cometh to God must believe that he is, and that he is a rewarder of them that diligently seek Him**” (Hebrews 11:6 KJV). I would definitely say that without confidence it is impossible for our horse to please us as well. If the horse had no confidence in us, his self-preservation would be in full operation, causing him to fight or run for his life.

In order for us to have faith in God we must believe that He is. If we do not believe in God, then we would obviously not have faith in Him. We would also not have faith in God, if we did
not believe that He was good and wanted the best for us. If we believed that He was bad and out to destroy us, we would be hesitant to come to Him, and we would not be diligently seeking Him to give us a reward. In order for our horses to have confidence in us, they must also believe that we are not out to destroy them, and must believe that we offer them something good. What do we have to offer our horses? We must offer them comfort, and companionship. If we offer them anything else, this will set off their self-preservation and they will try to rebel and save their life.

The second part of this scripture is something that I have really spent a lot of time observing in my horses lately, “rewarder of those who diligently seek Him.” We reward our horses with relief. I will put a horse in a situation where they start to lose confidence, then back off and offer them comfort and relief. It is like my dad says, “It takes pressure for relief to be effective, and relief for pressure to be effective.” If we follow this mentality our horse will start to look for this comfort any time we place them in a situation where they start to lose confidence. However, if we put them in a situation where they are unconfident, and then keep pushing them until they lose confidence, they will find us untrustworthy and will not place any confidence in us.

It is easy to observe your horse’s confidence level, just look at his head. If his head is elevated, he is bothered, unsure, and unconfident. If his head is low, he is relaxed and confident. Our horses must have confidence in us. This confidence starts on the ground and then carries over to their back. The best way I have found to gain this confidence through comfort and companionship while starting colts, is to pet them on their forehead, the space between their eyes and their forelock. Just like us, a horse that is relaxed is easier to teach. A horse that is tight and bothered will not learn as easily. Colts with a high level of self-preservation will have a high head set when we are close to them. However, by petting them on the forehead they start to relax and lower their head. This is a very key concept that I missed with a lot of horses I started in the past. I was able to get them broke, but they did not experience a lot of comfort and companionship with me.

Horses are so funny. They can be so scared and bothered, but if we take our time and slowly get to where we can pet them between their eyes, they will melt and lower their head. I do this a lot when starting a colt that is scared and bothered. When halter breaking a colt, I will take a lot of time breaking their hindquarters and getting them to face me. Once I have decreased the self-preservation level through decreasing the energy level, then I work to pet them between the eyes.

I will then work to their sides and on other areas where they are not as confident. Their head will start to come up and they will start to get a little bothered. I will keep their nose tipped, breaking their hindquarters, and building the foundation. Then I will come back and pet them between the eyes and wait for them to melt. Pretty soon any situation I put them in where they lose confidence, they will be waiting for me to come back and offer them comfort and companionship. As they start to gain confidence in me more, they are not bothered by me moving around to other areas of their body. As the energy level decreases, self-preservation decreases and I am able to gain comfort and companionship with them while building the foundation.

I watch for the same thing when I get on the horse’s back. As his head starts to come up and he starts losing confidence, I rebuild the confidence by tipping his nose and breaking his
hindquarters. I wait for them to put slack in the rein when I put pressure on the rein, and wait for the feet to pivot around the inside front foot, stopping the forward motion. This causes them to become supple through the loin and poll, helping them to relax. It helps them to relax and helps me to gain control by directing their life. Once they are calm and relaxed, then I try to go further. Whenever they start to get scared or bothered, I bring them back and let them regain confidence. If I don’t ever shatter their confidence in the first few rides, they learn that I am trustworthy and if they get in a tight spot, they know that I am there to offer them comfort and relief. Then whenever they start to lose confidence, they start looking for me to comfort them, instead of relying on their self-preservation to save them.

God wants so badly to offer the same thing to us. He does not want us scared and confused, relying on our self-preservation to save us. He wants to offer us comfort and companionship, and take away all of our fears and doubts. “Come to me, all you who are weary and burdened, and I will give you rest” (Matthew 11:28). However, much like our horse, it has to start on the ground, carry over to the back, and continue through jobs.

When we accept the Lord into our heart, we will feel comfort and companionship like we have never felt before. Like petting a scared colt on the forehead and having him melt in our hands, we melt in the Lord’s hands when we submit our life to Him. The power of the Holy Spirit comes over our body and gives us comfort and companionship, taking away all of our self-preservation. We receive confidence in the Lord and have faith in Him, that He will lead our lives and protect and guide us.

Once a horse does this, we have a strong foundation of trust to work from, but we are a long way from having a broke horse. The same thing is true with us. We have a strong foundation of faith and know that we are going to heaven when we die, but we are a long way from true unity and perfection in Christ. We all seem to forget this. Salvation is only the beginning. However, we need to continually turn to God and let Him take away all of our self-preservation. Just like a colt, that self-preservation is going to keep rising until we have killed off all the doubts and cares that ever arise and they line up perfectly in our will. Our self-preservation (flesh) is going to keep rising until we too, kill it off and come into the fullness of Christ, “Till we all come in the unity of the faith, and of the knowledge of the son of God, unto a perfect man, unto the measure of the stature of the fullness of Christ” (Ephesians 4:13).

The colt does not start by obeying commands. The colt starts by feeling comfort and companionship, gaining confidence. We did not start by going to church and following the commandments, we started by turning to God and melting in the power of the Holy Spirit. Paul speaks to the Galatians and says, “O foolish Galatians, who hath bewitched you, that ye should not obey the truth, . . . This only would I learn of you, received ye the spirit by the works of the law, or by the hearing of faith? Are ye so foolish? Having begun in the Spirit, are ye now made perfect by the flesh?” (Galatians 3:1-3).

We must not lose faith. If we lose our horse’s confidence, then self-preservation will take over and we will have a wreck. The same thing is true with us. When we lose our faith, our flesh will take over and we will fall into sin. However, it is just like our horses. When we feel a little uncertain, scared, frustrated, full of doubt, we need to turn back to God and let Him pet us
on the forehead. Let the Holy Spirit come on us and melt away all of our doubts and concerns (flesh). Return to Eden and let the Lord communicate with you. He will speak life to you and take away all death (sin). “It is the spirit that quickeneth; the flesh profiteth nothing: the words that I speak unto you, they are spirit, and they are life” (John 6:63 KJV). Then just like our horses, once we have regained confidence in the Lord and trust that He has everything under control, then we can go further in trying to accomplish our job.

When our horse loses confidence, if we try to direct them by putting more pressure on them, they will fall apart. The same is true with us. When we lose faith it does no good to fall under the law and try to obey through unwilling submission (flesh). We need to turn to God and let the power of the Holy Spirit wipe away our self-preservation (flesh) and return to the Spirit, operating through the fullness of Christ.

**Faith Through Communication**

Early on, when I worked with a horse only to make the horse more confused, and they lost confidence, then my dad would get on them and the horse would regain confidence and fall perfectly in line. What enabled my dad to do this was the ability to communicate with the horse. Through opening the lines of communication, my dad was able to take away all confusion and lack of confidence in the horse, and was able to accomplish the job with the horse, perfectly in his will. Our heavenly Father is able to do the same thing. He is able to take away all fears and doubt, and communicate with us, reassuring us, and building our confidence in Him. Then we can fall perfectly into His will and return to doing our job.

I am constantly reminded of the importance of good communication to ensure our horse does not lose confidence, and this has shown true in my walk with the Lord as well. One time I went out of my way to help a person and it came around to bite me in the butt. The person ended up insulting my integrity and calling me a liar. I had put so much into helping these people and it was like they slapped me in the face. I got mad and walked off to pick some pens, so I could be on my way and not have to deal with them any more. I had gotten along great with the lady, but her boyfriend was terribly unreasonable and was being a jerk. As I started to pick the pens, my blood started to boil and I wanted to walk around and punch the guy in the face. However, I had been spending time with the Lord, so I regained my composure and turned to the Lord. As soon as I did, I heard, “Whatever you do, work at it with all your heart, as working for the Lord, not for men, since you know that you will receive an inheritance from the Lord as a reward. It is the Lord Christ you are serving” (Colossians 3:23-24).

As soon as the Lord brought this scripture to my mind, I was like a colt that had been mad, ready to fall apart and had just been petted on the head, taking away all my self-preservation. I lowered my head and melted. I was no longer filled with anger and resentment, but filled with joy and excitement. I made a total 180 from anger to love. I thought, “Oh man, the Lord is using me, how exciting!” I was not working for the man who had been unreasonable; I was working for the Lord. Just like a colt, the Lord was pushing my confidence level until I almost fell apart, and then spoke to me, regaining my confidence. I finished picking the pens and then I heard, “If someone strikes you on the right cheek, turn to him the other also” (Matthew 5:39). Then I heard, “If someone forces you to go one mile, go with him two miles”
(Matthew 5:41). I became so excited I could not wait to show this man God’s love.

I took the wheelbarrow and went around to the back of the barn and loaded up a bunch of shavings to fill all the pens. I started to cart the wheelbarrow back into the pens and the man stopped me. He said, “Oh, don’t worry about that, we’ll just let them air out.” I told him it was no problem and I sure wouldn’t mind doing it. The man’s whole demeanor changed and he apologized for being so grouchy. I told him it was no problem and apologized for any miscommunications we might have had. We talked for a while, I asked him about his job and how things were going, and then we left on good terms.

If I had not turned to the Lord to let Him rebuild my confidence (faith) by speaking life into me, killing off all my self-preservation, I never would have had the opportunity to show a grouchy old cowboy-drunk, God’s love. How important it is that when we feel ourselves start to lose confidence in a situation, we turn to the Lord and let Him offer us comfort and companionship. Once He has taken away our self-preservation (flesh), then we can regain our confidence, and can fall back into His perfect will and accomplish the job that He has set before us.
In order to get a horse to do a job for us, they must first submit their will and accept our will. Then we must try to communicate our will, and finally they will need to obey our commands.

1st Obstacle – Horse submitting to man’s will.
2nd Obstacle – Communicating man’s will.
3rd Obstacle – Obeying commands.
4th Obstacle – Completing the job.

Many people try to overcome the 4th obstacle without paying any attention to the previous three.

In order for God to use us to do a job, we must overcome the same obstacles that our horse does. I will go into these obstacles in greater detail as the book progresses. I will only hit on the main points right now.

First, we must submit our life to Him. If we are trying to live our life, making all the decisions in our life, we limit God’s ability to use us. Second, we must learn how to communicate with God. This is the primary theme behind this entire book. After willing submission, the biggest limiting factor of true unity between us and our horse or with God is the level of communication that we possess with God or the horse. The third factor is obeying commands. Our horse must learn to obey our commands and we must learn how to obey God’s commands. Not obeying God’s commands has kept man away from God since the Garden of Eden.

The last obstacle that we must try to overcome is actually completing the job. What is the job? Our job is to be a light for Christ, “In the same way, let your light shine before men, that they may see your good deeds and praise your Father in heaven” (Matthew 5:16), and lead as many to the Lord as possible (the Great Commission). Just like with our horses, this is not very easy to do if we have not overcome the first 3 obstacles. We all seem to forget this. Not only do we forget the first 3 obstacles, but also we forget what “the job” is in the first place. Our job is to live for Christ. That is our only job on this earth. Everything else is secondary to the kingdom of God. Our focus should be on heavenly things and not on earthly things, “Do not store up for yourselves treasures on earth, where moth and rust destroy, and where thieves break in and steal. But store up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where moth and rust do not destroy, and where thieves do not break in and steal” (Matthew 6:19-20).

To help keep our perspective, we should remember we have roughly 80 years in this life if we are lucky and then eternity in either heaven or hell. Even if we are certain we are going to heaven, we should remember we will all stand before God one day and be asked what we did for the kingdom of God, “For in the same way you judge others, you will be judged, and with the measure you use, it will be measured to you” (Matthew 7:2). Our actions here on earth will be tried with fire, “It will be revealed with fire, and the fire will test the quality of each man's work” (1 Corinthians 3:13). The things we did for the Lord will remain and everything else will be burned, “The ax is already at the root of the trees, and every tree that does not produce good fruit will be cut down and thrown into the fire” (Matthew 3:10).
Our will for the horse is that we are able to use them to do a job. Even if that job is going down a trail on a pleasure ride, or only riding around the round pen, we are still using them to do a job. God wants the same thing for us, to do a job. Jesus wants to lead and wants us to follow. The Lord gave me a vision of this concept one day as I was praying.

After I had gotten sick and I started spending a great deal of time in the Holy Spirit, the Lord began to speak to me. The vision I am about to tell you is one of the first ones that the Lord gave to me.

One time as I was praying I saw myself back in Nevada. I spent my early childhood on a million and a quarter acre ranch in the northeast corner of Nevada. As I was praying, I saw myself riding out underneath the archway of one of the ranches I grew up on, the Wine Cup. Jesus was leading me and I couldn’t have been more than about 2 or 3 years old. I looked like I did when I was just starting to ride. I was riding a little kid’s saddle with stirrups that didn’t even clear the saddle pad, on a big, old, gentle horse. I was not big enough to direct my horse so Jesus was leading me to make sure that I didn’t get into any trouble.

As I rode out under the archway with Jesus leading me, I couldn’t have been any happier. I remembered being an excited little kid thinking it doesn’t get any better than this. Jesus led me out under the archway and onto a map of the United States and then across the map. While He was leading me, I was bursting with excitement to be with my Father. I couldn’t help but to point at the Lord and try to get everyone to look at Him, I was so proud to be with my Father. As He led me across the map, I began to get people to look at my Father and other little kids started falling in behind us. The further He led me, I began to grow and mature in size, and more kids started following. The further we went, the older I got, and the older the kids got behind me, and the more little kids started following the string of people led by Jesus. Jesus was telling me that He had a job for me, if I would only let Him lead me. If I would let Him lead me, I could live my life with the same excitement felt by that little kid in the vision, bursting with joy just to be riding with my Father.

When the Lord showed me this, I was excited to have the opportunity to be led by Christ. After this vision, I spent most of my time either reading my Bible, at Bible study, or listening to music praising the Lord. I was going to school at Treasure Valley Community College at the time. I would get up and go to class, then come home and spend the rest of the day with the Lord. During this time I was not very social about visiting with people about worldly things. I wanted to spend all my time with the Lord or talking to people about God. I started a Bible study with the same guy that had prayed over me when I had gotten sick and the Lord began to move. The focus of the Bible study was not so much a place to come and learn about God, but to come and hear from God himself. The Holy Spirit moved in amazing ways and lives were being changed.

I wanted to spend all my time with the Lord. Up until this point in my life I had always believed in God and tried to serve Him. However, He was not very real in my life. He was my God, but not my friend. After I became sick and God began to speak to me, He became as real
as any friend I had ever had. I could see Him, hear Him, and feel His presence. We could have conversations, “For we are the temple of the living God. As God has said: ‘I will live with them and walk among them, and I will be their God, and they will be my people’” (2 Corinthians 6:16). I read of people having relationships like this in the Bible, but I did not think it was possible to have this kind of relationship now.

However, the Bible tells us we are capable of even more than the men in the Old Testament, “And these all, having obtained a good report through faith, received not the promise: God having provided some better thing for us, that they without us should not be made perfect” (Hebrews 11:39-40). Hebrews 11:39 and 40 tells us that we are capable of having more than Abel, Enoch, Noah, Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, Sarah, Joseph, Moses, Sampson, David, Samuel, and all the prophets. We are capable of having even more than Moses. More than the man that talked to God and became so consumed in God’s mighty presence that His glory beamed off his face and the people could not look upon him. “And it came to pass, when Moses came down from mount Sinai with the two tables of testimony in Moses' hand, when he came down from the mount, that Moses wist not that the skin of his face shone while he talked with him” (Exodus 34:29). “But when Moses went in before the LORD to speak with him, he took the veil off, until he came out. And he came out, and spoke unto the children of Israel that which he was commanded. And the children of Israel saw the face of Moses that the skin of Moses' face shone: and Moses put the veil upon his face again, until he went in to speak with him” (Exodus 34:34-35). I know that this is hard to fathom. However, Paul tells us we are able to receive even more than Moses did. Moses never received the promise. Moses could never reach perfection in Christ Jesus. Not only are we able to be closer to God than Moses, but God can even use us more than He did His own Son. All we have to do is believe and ask. “Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that believeth on me, the works that I do shall he do also; and greater works than these shall he do; because I go unto my Father. And whatsoever ye shall ask in my name, that will I do, that the Father may be glorified in the Son” (John 14:12-13).

One day as I was praying, I was feeling a little hungry. I didn’t have a lot of money going to school, and I had been trying to tithe as much as I could and had just tithed the last little bit of cash I had on me. As I prayed, I thought it would sure be nice to have a “Bacon Ultimate Cheeseburger” at Jack in the Box, but I didn’t have any money. God told me to go look behind the seat in my pickup. I went outside and looked behind my seat, and found my checkbook that had been lost for 6 months with a hundred dollar bill stuck in it. God told me if I would let Him lead me, He would supply me with all my needs. “...and your heavenly Father knows that you need them. But seek first his kingdom and his righteousness, and all these things will be given to you as well” (Matthew 6:32-33).

During my last semester at Treasure Valley Community College I was taking 45 credits. I had been accepted to MSU and was trying to get a degree out of TVCC before I went to Bozeman the next fall. The teachers were great and were trying to work with me. I was going to about 35 credits worth of classes and the other 10 credits the teachers were working with me so I could write papers or test out of them.

One morning I woke up with a very sore back. I prayed to the Lord to ask why my back hurt
so badly. I knew I didn’t do anything to it, and the 2 air mattresses stacked up on top of each other that I spent the school year on, were surprisingly comfortable. The Lord told me that I was carrying too big of a load. Studying for the classes was taking up all my time and I wasn’t having very much time to spend with the Lord. I thought that if I was going to be an instrument for God, His ability would probably not be limited by me having a 2-year ranch management degree from TVCC. I needed some direction for the next step in my life.

I went over to Timothy St. George’s. He was the man who had been leading our Bible studies and I prayed to the Lord. The times with Timothy were amazing. It was amazing because he would usually talk for a while and then enter into a time of praise and worship when the Lord would speak to me. The amazing thing was that I learned more about God with Timothy than any other person I have ever been around. However, I did not learn it from Timothy. When Timothy would be talking I would be so filled with the Holy Spirit that I could not pay attention to much of anything He was talking about. When I would go home I would remember which part of the Bible he had been talking from and the Lord would speak to me through the Scripture.

While I was searching for direction at Timothy’s, whether I should go to school or not, I also had another thing I was struggling with. I wanted to give God my all, everything I had. However, I had a girlfriend at the time that I thought I wanted to marry and God wanted me to marry. However, I had just read a scripture which said it is better to not marry, “It is good for a man not to marry” (1 Corinthians 7:1). If we are single our life is devoted totally to God, but if we get married it is split between God and our wife, “An unmarried man is concerned about the Lord’s affairs—how he can please the Lord. But a married man is concerned about the affairs of this world—how he can please his wife—and his interests are divided” (1 Corinthians 7:32-34).

I had liked different girls from time to time and had prayed from the time I was 6 years old that the Lord would find me a good-looking Christian cowgirl (that was my exact prayer for 12 years). (Amaia told me later that she had been praying from the time she was in the third grade for the Lord to find her a good Christian man and for it to be Wade Black.) The girl I was dating was a great girl, a good Christian, good family, and was quite the looker to boot. She lacked a little on the cowgirl aspect, but was very interested in it and picked it up very quickly. My cousin told me that was better anyway. I could then help teach her everything she knew about horses and cows, and we would not have any disputes about what the right and wrong way to do something was. Because bless her poor little heart, right or wrong the only way she would know would be my way.

With the different girls I had liked in the past, my feelings for them would usually fade when I got around other good-looking girls. However, for Amaia it was different. I prayed for over 6 months that if Amaia was the one, I would have feelings for her and only her and if she was not the one, I would not have any feelings for her. She was a good girl and if she was not the one, I did not want to get too serious and end up hurting her in the end.

The more I prayed this prayer, the more my love for her grew and the more my interest in other girls started to fade. I finally decided that Amaia was the one when I went to the High
School National finals in Springfield, Illinois to ride saddle broncs. Before I left, she said she would fast for me the days I rode and would be praying for me. I thought that was a pretty neat and selfless thing to do. The praying was sweet, but the not eating? Wow, that must have been some kind of love. Wrestling season had just gotten over. I would have been more than willing to pray for someone, but just the thought of not eating for a day made me hungry.

The whole time I was at Nationals surrounded by good-looking girls, they could just as well have been 80-year-old women, because my heart was totally sold out to Amaia. I would compare the girls to Amaia and she had them all beat. The entire time I was at Nationals, I was not in the least bit interested in any of the girls, but just wanted to get back home to Amaia. I had never felt that before and it was at that moment that I knew Amaia was the one. God had answered my prayer, “If Amaia was the one, I would have feelings for her and only her.”

A year later I still loved Amaia and wanted to marry her. However, if God was trying to tell me not to marry her and love only Him, I wanted to be obedient to what the Lord wanted me to do. While I was praying, I thought of Abraham putting his son Isaac on the altar, “When they reached the place God had told him about, Abraham built an altar there and arranged the wood on it. He bound his son Isaac and laid him on the altar, on top of the wood” (Genesis 22:9). I was willing to give up Amaia to be close to God, but the thought of it filled me with sadness. When I told the Lord I was willing to give up everything to serve Him, He told me to “Eat and drink of Him for three days.”

I obeyed the Lord and decided to take a few days off from school to go to a cow camp in Jordan Valley, OR, to fast and pray to the Lord for three days. I went to find direction and answers to my questions. When I left Timothy’s I was overflowing with the Holy Spirit, and remember thinking, “Lord, I am busting at the seams, I need somebody to share your goodness with.” As I said this pulling on the freeway, I passed a hitchhiker on the side of the road. The Lord told me to pick him up, so I did.

I ended up driving an hour and half past my exit so I could continue to visit with him. When I picked him up he was rude and crude, and wanted to talk about the wild college life. I said a prayer, became filled with the Holy Spirit and I began to speak to him about the Lord. He was hesitant at first. He told me about the times he spent in prison and all the bad things he had done. Then he kind of braced up changing his whole demeanor and barked out “I worshiped Satan for a while.”

I wasn’t really sure how to respond to that, so I just said, “Oh yeah, how’d that treat ya?” He told me it wasn’t very good and explained some of the things that had happened that really freaked him out. I then told him more about God and the Bible, and how God could forgive anyone of their sins. I told him the story of Paul, and how he had killed Christians and God still forgave him.

The man then told me how he was dying with cancer and was hitchhiking to find his son and daughter whom he had not talked with for years. He wanted to tell them goodbye before he died. I drove as far as I felt like I was supposed to drive and gave the man my Bible. I would have prayed with the man, but for some reason I felt like that was all I was supposed to do, open the
door, show him the way and I guess Jesus was going to lead him in.

After that experience I couldn’t think of anything more I would like to do with my life, than to give dying men life. The whole experience baffled me, it was amazing and extremely fulfilling.

I decided to take some time off from school and head up to a cow camp in Jordan Valley, OR, to “eat and drink” of God “for 3 days.” The experience of telling my advisor was something else. When I began to speak to him, I could feel the Holy Spirit come on me and I could tell he knew there was something different about me. I asked him if he believed in God and if he had ever read the Bible. He told me that he did believe in God and had read the Bible. I then told him that I needed to go to the mountain like Moses did to find out what God wanted me to do with my life. Needless to say I left my advisor, who was an old cowman, a little speechless. All he could say was, “Wow, I had no idea.” He repeated that again and then said goodbye and that was all he was able to sputter out.

When I left school I went to the ranch of Ted and Dorothy Payne. Dorothy is an amazing woman of God and has had a tremendous impact on my life both directly and indirectly. I went to the mountain to see God. I read in the Bible how Moses had climbed the mountain and it was on top of the mountain that he had heard from God. I also remembered in Scripture where it had said we are to come boldly to the throne, “Let us therefore come boldly unto the throne of grace, that we may obtain mercy, and find grace to help in time of need” (Hebrews 4:16 KJV). In other scripture it said if our father on earth knows how to give good gifts how much more will our Father in heaven, “If you, then, though you are evil, know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father in heaven give good gifts to those who ask him! (Matthew 7:11), and that we are supposed to ask, seek and knock. “Ask and it will be given to you; seek and you will find; knock and the door will be opened to you. For everyone who asks receives; he who seeks finds; and to him who knocks, the door will be opened” (Matthew 7:7-8). All I wanted was to know God. I wanted to experience God as Moses did and know God’s will for my life. I was willing to leave everything behind if the Lord told me to. I was laying my entire life down at the Lord’s feet. If He told me to go to Mars to minister to the Martians, I would have had my bags packed the next day.

MOUNTAIN TOP EXPERIENCE

The Payne’s ranch is located on South Mountain about 30 miles southeast of Jordan Valley, OR. When I arrived at their ranch they needed help moving some cows, so I figured I would lend them a hand. I helped them for a couple of days, and then drove out to a remote cow camp to spend time with the Lord and begin fasting and praying. After the first day of not drinking anything, I quickly began to realize that I did not drink very much the couple of days I had helped them move cows and came into my fasting dehydrated. The not eating wasn’t bad. I was a wrestler and was used to not eating, but by the second night I was beginning to get pretty thirsty. My throat was dry and I was developing cottonmouth.

I laid there in my bed, trying to pray to the Lord. However, I couldn’t help thinking how nice it would be to get a glass of water. I had a thought come into my mind. I remembered someone
telling me that it was kind of odd that the Lord had told me to “eat and drink” of Him for 3 days. The person had spent many times praying and fasting to the Lord and the Lord had never told them to not drink. The person was not trying to lead me against the will of God; they were merely stating a fact. However, what they had said slowly began to pique my interest as I laid there dreaming about how good a nice cold glass of cool mountain water would feel sliding down my dry throat.

I began to tell myself, “What will one little glass of water hurt?” Maybe I did misinterpret what the Lord told me to do. Maybe I was supposed to just “eat” of Him for 3 days. I prayed to the Lord and asked Him if it would be ok if I got up and had one glass of water. I heard a “yes.” Believe it or not, that was the exact answer I had been hoping for. So with little hesitation, I got up and took a few long pulls from a gallon of water I had in the camp. The water felt great on my dry throat, and I could have easily drunk more, but I didn’t.

I laid down for a while and was temporarily satisfied. Within only a couple of minutes I began to feel sick, and within less than 5 minutes I had to go outside and puke. After puking up all the water I just drank and what little bit of food I had in my stomach, I began to realize, maybe the Lord really did mean “eat and drink” of Him for 3 days. I thought okay, point taken, no more drinking. I took a little drink of water to wash out the puke taste in my mouth and went back to bed. I no more than reached my bed than I had to go back outside to puke up a kidney. At this point I had nothing more in my stomach, leading to the dry heaves.

After I had finished “calling some dinosaurs,” I went back to bed thinking, “Good to know, when the Lord says something, He really means it.” When He had told me to eat and drink of Him for 3 days I was filled with the Holy Spirit, and I had heard from the Lord. When I had asked the Lord if it was ok to get a drink of water, I was consumed with my flesh thinking how great it would be to get a drink of water. It was not the Lord I had heard from, but an evil spirit. This is why Paul tells us to test the spirits, “Dear friends, do not believe every spirit, but test the spirits to see whether they are from God, because many false prophets have gone out into the world. This is how you can recognize the Spirit of God: Every spirit that acknowledges that Jesus Christ has come in the flesh is from God, but every spirit that does not acknowledge Jesus is not from God” (1 John 4:1-3). All we have to say is, “Did Jesus come in the flesh?” If what we heard was not from the Lord, the spirit will not confess that He did. We can tell the spirit to flee in Jesus’ name and it will leave us alone.

I was tricked by Satan’s oldest trick in the book. He made me question what the Lord had told me and began speaking to my flesh. He made me think that surely one little drink of water wouldn’t hurt anything. I was tricked, just like Eve was in the Garden of Eden. I didn’t mean to deliberately disobey what the Lord had told me. However, Satan was able to tempt me when my flesh was weak and he was able to deceive me. Satan tried to do the same thing to Jesus when He fasted and prayed in the wilderness, “Then Jesus was led by the Spirit into the desert to be tempted by the devil. After fasting forty days and forty nights, he was hungry. The tempter came to him and said, ‘If you are the Son of God, tell these stones to become bread’” (Matthew 4:1-3).

Whenever the Lord tells us something and we are obedient in following what He has told us,
it is almost inevitable that Satan will come and try to get us questioning what we have heard. Most of the time he will not try to lead us 180 degrees from what we have heard from the Lord, he merely tries to tweak it, slightly leading us off track. We can learn from Samuel, “Then Saul said to Samuel, ‘I have sinned. I violated the LORD’s command and your instructions. I was afraid of the people and so I gave in to them. Now I beg you, forgive my sin and come back with me, so that I may worship the LORD.’ But Samuel said to him, ‘I will not go back with you. You have rejected the word of the LORD, and the LORD has rejected you as king over Israel!’” (1 Samuel 15:24-26), that doing 99% of what the Lord has told us and only leaving out 1% will still have consequences. Do not be deceived by Satan when things get heated. Believe what God has told you and stand on faith. This is faith, believing what God has told you.

After I had gotten sick for the second time, I went back to bed and the remainder of the night wasn’t too bad. I was thirsty, but did not let Satan shift my focus to the thirst. I stayed focused on God. I worshiped the Lord for a while, became full of the Holy Spirit, and fell right to sleep. I spent the next morning reading my Bible and praying. I read the entire New Testament, except for Revelation, while I was on the mountain. The Lord had not really spoken to me too much the first 2 days. I thought about how Jesus rose the third day and thought I would probably hear from Him on the third day. I prayed to the Lord the morning of the third day asking Him to reveal Himself to me.

The afternoon of the third day, the Lord told me to go to the mountain and He would give me a gift. The cow camp where I had been staying was next to a mountain, so I began to hike. I was a little weak so it took me quite a while to hike up the mountain. I was tired from not eating and drinking, but I was also not in very good shape from having the Epstein Bar Virus for 4 years. On my way to the top, I had to stop many times to catch my air and regain strength. I would stop and pray, regroup and then continue climbing. When I reached the top of the mountain, the Lord told me I could have a bite of snow. It felt good to have a bite of snow and I took a little piece to suck on as I hiked down the mountain. I must admit however, the bite of snow was not exactly the gift I had in mind.

When I got down from the mountain and back to the cow camp it was late afternoon. I climbed in my pickup and turned on some worship music and began to worship the Lord. I probably worshiped the Lord for about 15 minutes. I felt the presence of the Lord get stronger and stronger until everything went black and then white. I was then left with total peace. I kept my eyes closed and saw a caterpillar crawling along a branch on a tree. The caterpillar turned into a butterfly and flew off the branch and I heard “Transformation.” Then I heard “Take your wife and preach the Gospel.” This caught me way off guard. I asked the Lord if He wanted me to marry Amaia and He said “Yes.” While He was talking to me, I thought I would ask when He wanted me to marry Amaia. I immediately heard July 14th, 2004.

God has the ability to speak life into His people. I was weak and tired when I laid down to pray to the Lord, but hearing His voice re-energized my body, “For, lo, as soon as the voice of thy salutation sounded in mine ears, the babe leaped in my womb for joy” (Luke 1:44). I could have flown off that mountain. It was on the third day that the Lord had spoken to me and as I drove off the mountain I heard “Go to the mountain and I will give you a gift.” The Lord did
give me a gift by going to the mountain. He gave me a lovely wife to preach the Gospel with.

**Coming off the Mountain**

I left the cow camp and drove back down to Ted and Dorothy’s house. I spoke to Dorothy a little bit and then drove back down to Homedale to talk to Amaia. Dorothy could tell that I had heard from God. I did not look like a man that had not eaten for 3 days (I drank after I left the cow camp, the fast was over). I looked like a little kid who had just seen Santa Claus flying over his house with reindeer. I am not trying to say that what I did was out of the ordinary and could have only been done by God. I know there are people, especially cowboys and wrestlers, who go without eating and drinking for days. However, when our body has not received nourishment it becomes weak and tired, not re-energized. After I had heard from God, a bolt of energy came in me like a bolt of electricity, which could have only come from God. People go without eating and drinking for days. However, at the end they do not look like people that have just drank 5 Red Bulls and had a big lunch.

I drove off the mountain and headed back to Homedale, as high as a kite. As soon as I got in cell phone service, I called Amaia and said I was picking her up and taking her to Jack in the Box. I couldn’t wait to tell Amaia the good news. However, I must admit, I was awfully excited about that “Bacon Ultimate Cheeseburger.” I picked up Amaia and told her what had happened up on the mountain. I was expecting a, “Wow, Wade! Sounds good, let’s get it done!” High five, yeah team! However, the response I got was not quite as enthusiastic.

I pretty well told Amaia how it was. I told her we were getting married and told her the date we were getting married on. It was in the spring of 2003 and Amaia was still a senior in high school. (Yeah, I know, I was a bit of a cradle robber.) Amaia’s reaction to what I told her was exactly what mine would have been, if the situation had been reversed. She didn’t say I was totally crazy and try to beat me off with a stick. However, she was not exactly sold on the whole idea of getting married one year out of high school, at age 19. It wasn’t like she hadn’t planned to marry me, just the time frame was a little soon and sudden.

She didn’t say, “No way in heck.” She just had to obviously pray about it. At the time I didn’t really see what the big deal was. God told me to “take my wife and preach the Gospel.” He gave me a date. I was going to take my girlfriend, make her my wife, and preach the Gospel. I didn’t see a problem. Needless to say, I had a lot to learn about the opposite sex and not making things happen by my will, but waiting for God to let them happen.

When I get my mind set on something, I go 100 miles an hour and run over anything in the way to get it. This is something I need to learn to work on, letting things happen instead of making things happen. My mother tells me I have always been like this. When I was younger I would be jumping around, not paying attention, breaking things, trying to get done what I thought needed done. My mother would finally have enough and say, “Sit down! You’re like a bull in a china closet!”

I didn’t have a clue what that meant. I remember sitting down one day after my mother had just told me that and looking into the china closet. The china closet had glass doors so I could
see inside. I looked at a bowl and thought, “What does me jumping around breaking stuff have to do with that bowl sitting in the china closet?” The whole concept baffled me and never really made sense until I was probably in junior high, yeah, not the brightest.

For the first time in my life I had gotten direction for my life. The Lord had told me what He wanted me to do with my life, told me who He wanted me to marry and even gave me a date for the wedding. I had the direction, but I would soon learn that direction sometimes needs life (Holy Spirit) and time, to make it come to pass. I will carry on with Amaia’s and my story later on in the book, in the “Direction and Life” chapter.
I. 1st Obstacle – Submitting to man’s will
- Two types of Submission
  A) Willing
  B) Unwilling

- Both are effective to get the job done. However, unwilling has negative consequences.

A) Unwilling Submission “Giving to Pressure”
- Attained by Force

B) Willing Submission “Seeking Relief”
- Attained by Free Choice

Just like our horses, there are 2 ways that we submit our will to God. There is willing and there is unwilling. Willing means that we gladly submit our will and would have it no other way. Unwilling means that we submit our will because we know it is the right thing to do, and we know that if we don’t, we will regret it. However, deep down the unwilling individuals would rather be somewhere else, doing something different. Martin Black says, “There is a difference between giving to pressure and seeking relief.” Although they are totally different, from a distance they may look the same. We may get by for a time, but a horse has trouble operating through unwilling submission. There is always a chance that they will rebel against our will, and follow their own will.

God has made 2 covenants with His people. One takes on the form of willing submission and the other takes on the form of unwilling submission. These 2 forms of submission are known as the “Old Covenant” and the “New Covenant” in the Bible. Abraham was the father of God’s children, and through his seed started a covenant between man and God. God told Abraham, “I will establish my covenant as an everlasting covenant between me and you and your descendants after you for the generations to come, to be your God and the God of your descendants after you” (Genesis 17:7). “My covenant in your flesh is to be an everlasting covenant. Any uncircumcised male, who has not been circumcised in the flesh, will be cut off from his people; he has broken my covenant” (Genesis 17:13-14). The first covenant dealt with the flesh. The covenant was marked by the flesh and upheld through the flesh. It was through this covenant that the law came.

The law consisted of Commandments from God and rules for holy living. This law was given to Moses, and his people were to follow it “religiously.” It was sin that kept God’s people from God, after the fall of man, the first covenant was an attempt to keep God’s children from sin through the law.

However, the first covenant could not be upheld through the flesh, through the will power of man. “For when we were in the flesh, the motions of sins, which were by the law, did work in our members to bring forth fruit unto death” (Romans 7:5 KJV). The law was an attempt to bring man into righteousness and into unity with God. However, it only brought more sin and
death. There needed to be another way to keep God’s children from sin, and allow fellowship with Him. This new way came through Jesus Christ, and His spirit living within us.

“Therefore, there is now no condemnation for those who are in Christ Jesus, because through Christ Jesus the law of the Spirit of life set me free from the law of sin and death. For what the law was powerless to do in that it was weakened by the sinful nature, God did by sending his own Son in the likeness of sinful man to be a sin offering. And so he condemned sin in sinful man, in order that the righteous requirements of the law might be fully met in us, who do not live according to the sinful nature (flesh) but according to the Spirit” (Romans 8:1-4).

This is the New Covenant: “This is the covenant I will make with the house of Israel after that time, declares the Lord. I will put my laws in their minds and write them on their hearts. I will be their God, and they will be my people. No longer will a man teach his neighbor, or a man his brother, saying, ‘Know the Lord,’ because they will all know me, from the least of them to the greatest. For I will forgive their wickedness and will remember their sins no more. By calling this covenant “new,” he has made the first one obsolete; and what is obsolete and aging will soon disappear” (Hebrews 8:10-13).

There are 3 parts to the New Covenant. 1) His laws will be in our mind and heart; 2) We will not need to be taught by man, for all shall know God; and 3) God will no longer remember our sin.

The “New Covenant” is life in the Spirit, the spirit of Jesus Christ living inside us. “But ye are not in the flesh, but in the Spirit, if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you. Now if any man has not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his” (Romans 8:9 KJV). By receiving the spirit of Christ we become sons of God. We become heirs to the promises of the Old Covenant, but we are not under the law of the Old Covenant.

“For it is written, that Abraham had two sons, the one by a bondmaid, the other by a free woman. But he who was of the bondwoman was born after the flesh; but he of the freewoman was by the promise” (Galatians 4:22-23 KJV). What is the promise? “For as many are led by the Spirit of God, they are the sons of God” (Romans 8:14 KJV). And if we are sons of God then we are joint heirs with Christ. “The Spirit itself beareth witness with our spirit, that we are the children of God: And if children, then heirs; heirs of God, and joint-heirs with Christ; if so be that we suffer with him, that we may be also glorified together” (Romans 8:16-17 KJV).

If we are the sons of God and joint heirs with Christ, then we are entitled to a birthright, our inheritance. “And you also were included in Christ when you heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation. Having believed, you were marked in him with a seal, the promised Holy Spirit, who is a deposit guaranteeing our inheritance until the redemption of those who are God's possession—to the praise of his glory” (Ephesians 1:13-14).

This is the New Covenant, life in the Spirit. We are no longer under the bondage of the law, the Old Covenant, “...(for the law made nothing perfect), and a better hope is introduced,
by which we draw near to God” (Hebrews 7:19). Through Christ living inside us, He has the ability to change our unwilling submission into willing submission. However, just like our horses we have to make a decision as to which law we will fall under. We are the sons of God and have the right to an inheritance, but we still have to make a choice to go and receive it. Unwilling submission in some ways appears easier. It is often easier to fall into our flesh. However, in the long run it requires much more work, and perfection is never attainable. Willing submission can take longer to learn, to learn to operate in the Spirit. However, in the long run we will live the life God intended, living in the perfect will of God.

Under the “Old Covenant” we are slaves to sin. However, under the “New Covenant” we have life through Christ. In Tom Dorrance’s book, Tom’s students tell what they have learned from Tom. One student quoted Tom saying, “You need to be the horse’s master, but he is not the slave, rather your willing partner.” It is a choice we make with our horse and it is a choice we make with God, whether we will be a slave or a partner. Slaves run the risk of rebellion into disobedience. But partners, although they may mess up, want nothing more than to please their companion. Through the New Covenant we are no longer a slave, but a willing partner. It is through the New Covenant that man and God may become one through Christ: True Unity, between man and God.
Two Levels of Submission

I. Ground Level: “Turning to Face”

II. On Their Back: “Two Becoming One”

Two Levels of Submission

There are two levels of submission; the ground level, “turning to face” and on their back, “two becoming one.” The same is true with the Lord. I do not know why, but the Lord will bring some people into the round pen at a young age, and He will leave some people out in the pasture for quite a while before He brings them in. Nonetheless, when we have been called, it is only a matter of time before we give into His will and turn to God. God knows His children and His soon to be children. He is the master of applying pressure and giving relief. Once we step into the round pen with God, He will apply pressure until we turn and face Him. With some people this happens quickly and with others it takes a little longer. I think God uses different methods. With some people He is patient, only standing in the middle of the pen waiting for us to turn and face.

Then with others, He ropes and chokes us a little bit until we cannot breathe any more, and have to come to Him to survive. I do not know why He uses the different methods with different people, but I see this to be true. God let a sickness fall upon me, and I had no other choice but to turn to Him. I wanted to give a half effort. I wanted to acknowledge Him, but still do my own thing. However, when God calls us, He wants to use us, and we cannot go further when we have our head over the fence worrying about things outside the pen. God did not sit and wait in the middle of the pen with me. He stuck a rope around my neck, and took all my air away, until I finally choked down. He did this several times, until finally I found it easier to come to the Lord, instead of doing things my own way. Not that I don’t still require a good choking from time to time, I definitely do. However, my desire is to be solely in His will.

Once we have turned to face the Lord and submitted our will acknowledging Him as our master, then He is able to use us. We are able to take our first step in “two becoming one,” and God is able to start using us. He usually does not try to accomplish many jobs the first few rides, but teaches us how to stay in His will. He works on direction, and life. He gives us direction (Scripture) teaching us how to move, and then He puts life (Holy Spirit) to our feet to help us move in the way He wants us to. God cannot use us when we have not submitted our will. So this is the primary area of God’s focus. We can have all the direction in the world, and tons of life, but if our will is not submitted to His will, we limit God’s ability to work in our life. For us to truly become as one, we must decrease and He must increase, “He must increase, but I must decrease” (John 3:30). We must learn to submit every area of our life to Him. Ground submission (salvation) is only the first step. Submission on the back, “two becoming one” continues until perfection is achieved.

Planting Seeds

I will explain the concept of ground submission “turning to face,” and on the back “two
becoming one” by using experiences in my life and using Jesus’ life, which is to be our example. I was raised like a colt that had been around people from the time it was born. Like the colt, I grew up trusting people (God) and felt confidence and security around Him. Just like a colt whose mother was not afraid of people, I grew up trusting in God like my parents did. I don’t ever remember not knowing about Jesus. My mother told me about Him from the time I was born and I grew up saying prayers and going to church. Some of my earliest memories are kneeling beside the bed and saying our nightly prayers with my father, mother and brother. I had seeds planted about the Lord from the time I was very young.

Jesus also started as a seed. This is where we see the first of Jesus in Scripture. Jesus did not appear a full-grown man. Through the Holy Spirit, He was conceived, “an angel of the Lord appeared to him in a dream and said, ‘Joseph son of David, do not be afraid to take Mary home as your wife, because what is conceived in her is from the Holy Spirit’” (Matthew 1:20), and He was carried to term by His mother Mary. After the seed was planted, Mary continued to provide the seed with nutrients and the seed began to form a baby. This is what happens to our colts, if we have planted seeds along the way that we are trustworthy. It is much easier to halter break a colt if they grow up trusting us. When we go to halter break them, they are much easier to work with if they have trust. We do not have to deal with as much self-preservation, fear, and doubt.

The same thing is true about leading people to the Lord. However, as I will explain later in the “Two Kinds of People, Two Kinds of Horses” chapter of the book, if we can get rid of self-preservation by building on comfort and companionship, that is fine. However, we must be careful that the people or horses do not become numb and dull. If this happens with our horses, they will try to walk over the top of us having no respect, and with people, they will have a form of godliness, but denying its power. “People will be lovers of themselves, lovers of money, boastful, proud, abusive, disobedient to their parents, ungrateful, unholy, without love, unforgiving, slanderous, without self-control, brutal, not lovers of the good, treacherous, rash, conceited, lovers of pleasure rather than lovers of God—having a form of godliness but denying its power” (2 Timothy 3:2-5).

New Birth (Salvation)/Halter Breaking

When Jesus was ready to be born, Mary gave birth to Jesus. The new creation brought into the world was celebrated. He was the son of God. We are also sons of God, and I will tell the story of when I became born again and received the spirit of Christ.

When I was around the fourth grade, I remember walking with my mom in Bruneau, Idaho, and accepting the Lord into my heart. The seeds that had been planted in my heart from the time I was very young took root and there was the start of a new creation. I thought that I had accepted the Lord into my heart at a younger age, but there was something different about the time I took a walk with my mom. It was like I had a pulling on my heart that I needed to say the prayer again. Through the Holy Spirit and my mom, the little seed started to get watered and a new creation was born. This is when I believe I received salvation. I said the prayer and when I had finished, I knew without a doubt that I had salvation. I had accepted Jesus Christ into my heart and I had the spirit of God living inside me. “You, however, are controlled not by the
sinful nature but by the Spirit, if the Spirit of God lives in you” (Romans 8:9).

I think if we question whether or not we are a Christian and are going to heaven, then that may be a good sign that we have not received salvation. Something changes inside a person when Christ comes inside them and it is an unmistakable feeling. From that moment on I started to mature slowly in my walk with the Lord. Like Jesus, when He was first born, I had to feed the Spirit inside me milk in order to grow. I continued to be taught by my mom and learned more about God from church.

The first step of training a colt is to get them halter broken. We need to be able to handle them. They need to submit their will and accept our will. If they get scared and tight we need to be able to keep hold of them and prevent them from running off. We need to be able to tip their nose (direction/Scripture) and break loose the hindquarters (life/Holy Spirit). Once we have received salvation, this is like submitting our will to God and letting Him halter us. We give our life to Him and say that we will follow Him wherever He chooses to lead us.

Like a colt that has been raised trusting people, halter breaking me was not too difficult. I did not have a lot of bad experiences with God. I grew up trusting Him. I also did not have a lot of self-preservation (fear, doubt) to try to work through. Like a young colt, I might have run against the halter from time to time, but when the slack came tight on the lead rope, I would turn and face the Lord. I knew that Jesus was the only way to heaven, and I knew that He loved me and wanted the best for me.

Like a colt that has been halter broken, the Lord would lead me to do things. Different times in church I would feel the presence of the Lord on me and I knew that I was supposed to get up and say something; what was on my heart. Sometimes the power of the Holy Spirit would be on me so strongly, that I could feel my hands start to shake. The Lord would also lead me to speak to different people about the Lord. I would feel a tugging on my heart and I knew that I was supposed to talk to someone, or give them a scripture.

During this time in my life the Lord continued to lead me to Scripture and I continued to grow in the Lord. I led the team in prayer before every football game, and the Lord would lead me to what He wanted me to say before every game. I would spend time praying about what He wanted me to say and then He would lead me to the Scriptures and He would formulate my prayer. When I would say the prayer before the games, I was always amazed at how it seemed to come together. I always knew that the Lord had a huge hand in what I was saying. I also started a Bible study and had my future brother-in-law and sister-in-law teach it. Just like a person would lead a young horse to pack an elk out during hunting season, the Lord was using me to accomplish jobs.

The Maturing Process

After Jesus began to grow, He was able to eat solid food and the Holy Spirit began to minister to Him. He began to be taught by His father. Jesus was the son of God. However, Jesus is God. He was all God and all man. He was a supernatural being. However, I believe that He was taught by His father and the Holy Spirit just like we are, “And the child grew and
became strong; he was filled with wisdom, and the grace of God was upon him” (Luke 2:40). Scripture tells us that He grew and was “filled” with wisdom. He was not born with this wisdom, He was taught by His father. I believe He was taught of His father’s ways to be an example for us.

In the same way, when we accept Jesus into our heart we become the son of God, “because those who are led by the Spirit of God are sons of God. For you did not receive a spirit that makes you a slave again to fear, but you received the Spirit of sonship. And by him we cry, ‘Abba, Father.’ The Spirit himself testifies with our spirit that we are God's children” (Romans 8:14-16) and receive a supernatural spirit. The Holy Spirit can minister to us and we can be taught by our Father. As Jesus matured in size, He began to grow both physically and spiritually. He is recorded as speaking to the elders of the church and leaving them amazed at His questions and knowledge of Scripture, “Everyone who heard him was amazed at his understanding and his answers” (Luke 2:47). Just like Jesus, the Holy Spirit can lead us to Scripture, bringing life to the Scripture and increasing our knowledge.

I let the Lord lead me to do little jobs. However, I was not letting the Holy Spirit lead me to Scripture like Jesus had. I mainly received my teaching through Bible studies and church. I was still mainly living off milk, not receiving a lot of revelation from God (meat), so I did not do a lot of growing.

I trusted God and I would follow Him anywhere and do anything for Him. I had no reason to doubt Him. He was always good to me. Just like a colt that likes being with a person, I had no trouble following the Lord. Like most colts I might get distracted, and look around forgetting to keep following right in step with the Lord. However, when the rope came tight I would usually jump back to following Him. I am not saying I was perfect by any means, or that I was always in His perfect will. All I am saying is that I never tried to rebel against God. I always kept my faith in Him. Anytime I would ever get in a tight spot, I always knew I could pray, and I always knew we had a God that answered prayers.

Everything was pretty good in my life until I rededicated my life to the Lord at a rodeo Bible camp when I was sixteen. I told the Lord that I did not want to give Him a half effort. I wanted to help build His kingdom and wanted to be used by God. The first year after I rededicated my life was one of the best years of my life. I averaged 300 yards per game in football on the Junior Varsity team and we won district. I also suited up with the Varsity all year and the Varsity team ended up second at state. In wrestling, I won district and finished third at state, and in rodeo I won district, won state, and was sixth at Nationals.

However, the next year I started to get sick and remained sick for 3 years. I started getting sick in football my junior year, and got sicker and sicker until I hit a wall during wrestling season. I found myself at the end of the season with strep throat, bronchitis, mononucleosis, and the Epstein bar virus.

I only lost to one kid in wrestling my junior year, and had to quit one week before district for fear of rupturing my spleen. I tried to play football the following spring, finally getting to start at linebacker on Varsity my senior year. However, I had to quit before our first game. I was
getting bad headaches and was weak and tired all the time. The two-a-days in football practice had caused me to have a mono relapse. These relapses would keep recurring for the next 2 years, and I was diagnosed with Chronic Fatigue Syndrome.

During this time, I trusted the Lord. I never became like a colt that wanted nothing to do with a person and tried to run away. However, I was not concerned with following the Lord, and I was not letting Him lead me to accomplish any jobs. I had pretty well decided that I did not want to be led for a while, and would like to look around and see what everyone else was doing. Instead of being focused on the Lord, I started to look at many distractions.

Like trying to lead a colt that is focusing on everything else except what you are doing, I did not do much following during this time in my life. I knew that the Lord was right in front of me. I knew that He was good and I could find comfort and relief with Him. However, I just didn’t feel like stepping up and following at the time. There had been many people praying for me during this time, praying for a healing so that I could get back to living my life. However, I never seemed to get any better. I remained tired and weak, and was never able to put in more than a half-day’s work. If I worked hard for 1 day, I would sometimes have to sleep for 3 days to gain strength again.

A friend of my mom’s, Dorothy Payne, who had been praying for me, stopped by one day and said that there was an evangelist living nearby, and I should go and talk to him and have him pray for me. When she stopped by I was not too concerned with the offer. It was nearing my senior year, and I had learned that I could consume a great deal of whiskey. If I couldn’t excel in sports, I thought I would excel in drinking. I do not know which one I excelled in more. I had done pretty well in sports, however people were also quite impressed with how fast and how much whisky I could consume. I thought if I couldn’t lead the sports teams, I would lead the parties. I wrote several poems, and would jump up and recite these poems and tell jokes between drinks. I was the life of the party.

This went on through my first semester in college, until I started to realize that my life was not going to be very good unless I started following the Lord again. I had known this, but my self-preservation (flesh) and companionship instincts were driving me further from the Lord. However, my other driving factor started to kick in eventually, comfort. I did not have any comfort while I was partying with my friends. I remained tired and weak, and had an empty feeling in my heart. Eventually, I had to turn and face to receive comfort again. The same thing happens with our young horses. It doesn’t matter how good we think they are and how much we are able to lead them. If self-preservation and companionship start driving them away, we are limited in what we can accomplish.

However, it is like I tell my class: “As the energy level decreases, self-preservation decreases.” When we first catch a colt after they have had some time off, they usually are looking everywhere else, except to us. When we are trying to catch them and saddle them they have lots of energy, do not want to stand, and would rather be with their buddies in the pasture. This is where I was. I did not want to be with God and would rather be with my buddies in the pasture. However, the Lord knows how to use pressure and relief. It’s like Ray Hunt says, “Make the wrong thing difficult and the right thing easy.” The Lord is very good at this.
Although, at first I thought I received comfort with my friends partying, the more time I spent with them away from God, the more tired I got. The Lord made me work harder and harder the more time I spent worrying about the companionship with my friends. Eventually as my energy level decreased enough, killing off my self-preservation, I started looking somewhere else for comfort and relief. As soon as I turned to the Lord, I received comfort and relief like I had never felt before.

“Two Becoming One”

Before I had gotten sick, the Lord led me to do certain jobs, but the Lord did not want to lead me anymore. The Lord wanted to prepare me to be saddled so He could get on me, and we could start becoming one. Like a colt that has been worked with a flag, I was tired and looking for a better deal. I did not want to run around anymore preventing the Lord from saddling me. I was ready to submit to whatever the Lord had in store for me.

I was no longer driven by my self-preservation and companionship with my buddies. I was looking for a place to find comfort. I remembered what Dorothy Payne said about the evangelist guy. It had been 3 months since she had dropped by telling me about him. I thought I would call him the next morning. The next morning when I woke up, my dad said that Dorothy had called with a phone number of an evangelist. I was totally amazed. I thought “Ok Lord, I guess I am supposed to go visit this guy.”

The man’s name was Timothy St. George. I went to his house and visited with him for about 2 hours. It was good. I could tell he was a man of God, and what he said was very interesting. However, toward the end I was wishing he would hurry up and pray for me and heal me, so I could be on my way. We had visited for about 2 hours and my little ADD brain was having trouble staying focused. He was talking about the Spirit and his experiences. It was very interesting stuff, but my mind kept drifting off. All of a sudden he got up quickly and put his hand on my head.

When he did this, something hit me that kind of dazed me (it was the power of the Holy Spirit). Then he reached at my chest and said, “Take out this heart of stone.” “I will give you a new heart and put a new spirit in you; I will remove from you your heart of stone” (Ezekiel 36:26). He then prayed for about 3 or 4 seconds. I can’t remember what he said, but during this time I could not breathe at all. He then said “Give him a heart of gold to serve you.” When he said this he pushed something into my chest and it was like I received a rush of oxygen. It was like when he reached into my chest the first time, I exhaled all the oxygen that was in my lungs, and when he pushed back into my chest, I inhaled a bunch of oxygen. When he had finished this, he prayed a little more and then sat back down. I sat there a minute a little dazed, and then he told me to go home. I got up and left still a little dazed, and from that moment my life has never been the same.

From that moment it has been a snowball of events of experiencing more and more of the Lord. Within a short time period I started seeing visions, started to be able to hear Him speak to me, had tongues of fire fall on me like at the Pentecost, “When the day of Pentecost came, they
were all together in one place. Suddenly a sound like the blowing of a violent wind came from heaven and filled the whole house where they were sitting. They saw what seemed to be tongues of fire that separated and came to rest on each of them. All of them were filled with the Holy Spirit” (Acts 2:1-4). I received holy laughter, had the presence of God fall on me so heavily that I could not move, received dreams from God and much more. This was the first step of “On Their Back/Two Becoming One.”

Instead of feeling like I was being led by God to do something, the power of God was becoming manifested in my body. I had a supernatural peace and joy that could have come from only God. I wanted to love everyone I came in contact with. I wanted to be used by God. God started to speak to me and we began to communicate, having conversations. Instead of being led by God, we began to move together.

There are many people that believe different things about salvation and baptism of the Holy Spirit. I will explain what I believe in “Parts of God” in the “Solid Foundation of Maneuvers (Mechanical)” chapter in the book. All I can say is that there will never be total unity with God’s children until we all come into the fullness of Christ, or die and go to heaven. The Lord showed me that the neither the Bible by itself, nor religion by itself, will ever bring us into the fullness of Christ and help us hear from God. No more than only reading texts on horses and attending seminars will make me understand how to work with a horse, or enable me to help others to communicate with a horse. To be able to accomplish something with a horse, we need to have spent time working with the horse. We learn by experience. The Pharisees greatly understood Scripture, but they did not recognize God when He was right in front of their faces. Jesus told them, “You do not know me or my Father. If you knew me, you would know my Father also” (John 8:19). They knew the Scriptures, but God was not a real part of their lives. The Pharisees did not have a foundation built upon communicating with God. Their foundation came only from reading Scripture.

Interpretations of Scriptures are constantly debated, and these interpretations divide God’s children and have segregated us into different denominations and churches. The Lord showed me that the Bible is a treasure map to get us to where we need to go. We would be totally lost without the treasure map; it is vital for Christians. We need the treasure map to get to the treasure. However, when we get to the treasure, there will be no need for the map.

When we go to heaven, I do not believe that we will all walk around with our Bibles like good little Christians and go to Bible study. What would be the point? We would be in the presence of God. All we would have to do is look to Him. To start a Bible study in heaven would be as silly as studying a treasure map when you have already found the treasure. It is my belief that Satan has gotten God’s children tricked into becoming so overwhelmingly focused on the treasure map that we have forgotten about the treasure.

It is like we are all standing around 20 different translations of the original treasure map like a bunch of idiots. We are arguing about whose interpretation of a certain translation of the original treasure map is right. Satan is standing in the corner laughing and having a good old time thinking about the tower of Babel. If he can keep us from becoming united and keep us arguing, he can keep us from the kingdom of God, “Do everything without complaining or
arguing, so that you may become blameless and pure, children of God without fault in a
crooked and depraved generation, in which you shine like stars in the universe”
(Philippians 2:14-15). Jesus is standing in the other corner saying, “I am the way and the
truth and the life. No one comes to the Father except through me” (John 14:6), and the
Holy Spirit is standing right beside us. He wants to take our hand, speak truth to us, and lead us
to the Father. Satan has us arguing about what route we are going to take to find the treasure and
whose map is right, and we have forgotten that the Holy Spirit is standing right in front of us
ready to take us by the hand and lead us to the treasure.

I am not by any means saying that we do not need the Bible. The Bible is the infallible,
inspired word of God and we would be totally lost without it, “All scripture is given by
inspiration of God, and is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for
instruction in righteousness” (Timothy 3:16). However, the Bible is not the treasure.
Stepping into the presence of God, being taught by God and becoming transformed into the
image of Christ, is the treasure, “For God, who commanded the light to shine out of
darkness, hath shined in our hearts, to give the light of the knowledge of the glory of God
in the face of Jesus Christ. But we have this treasure in earthen vessels, that the excellency
of the power may be of God, and not of us” (2 Corinthians 4:6-7). Once we have received
revelation from God, the truth that we received should ALWAYS line up with the Bible. Then
we can use the truth, which lined up with the Bible, to help others to get to the same place.

A person may look at a problem with a horse and develop a solution. There are many
possible solutions that will solve the problem. However, it all depends on the methods of the
person interpreting the problem as to what solution they use. I cannot use someone else’s
interpretation. All I can use is what I have experienced and what has worked in my life to solve
the problem.

I have learned to solve every problem in my life and with my horses by using some very
simple principles (not that I don’t have any problems, I have plenty). However, the only sure
way I have found to work through these problems is by considering these simple principles: self-
.preservation (flesh), lack of communication (no feel, timing, balance/Holy Spirit), and
disobedience (operating through unwilling submission/religion). These principles are what keep
us from completing the job. We must have willing submission (give God our entire life), good
communication (operating in the Holy Spirit) a solid foundation of maneuvers (revelations from
God), and a balanced direction (Scripture) to life (Holy Spirit) ratio, to prevent resistance in
completing the job. We also need help and support. When we often feel lost and confused, we
need to find someone that is familiar with operating in these principles to help get us back on
track. Our brothers and sisters in Christ also give us support to keep us on track.

We can accomplish jobs with our horse by leading them. However, we can accomplish much
more when we get on their back. From their back, if we follow the principles, it is not long and
we can accomplish much with our horse. However, once we are on their back, if we do not
continue to operate through “feel, timing, and balance/good communication” then they will
become resentful and fall into unwilling submission. The most important factor after willing
submission is communication, communication, communication.
People are entitled to believe whatever they want. However, I know that I was a Christian (had salvation) and then something happened that enabled me to communicate with God. I went from being led by God, to communicating with God. Then we started moving together as one, with the power of God becoming manifested in my life. I believe that what enabled me to communicate with God was becoming baptized in the Holy Spirit.

I will explain my beliefs scripturally later in the book. However, I will tell you that it all depends on the person’s heart, “Blessed are the pure in heart, for they will see God” (Matthew 5:8). I do not think that I received the Holy Spirit when Timothy St. George prayed for me. However, after my heart had changed I reached a point where I could receive the baptism of the Holy Spirit. It is all about the person’s heart (read later in the book). I think sometimes that salvation and the baptism of the Holy Spirit happens all at the same time, like at the Pentecost, “Repent and be baptized, every one of you, in the name of Jesus Christ for the forgiveness of your sins. And you will receive the gift of the Holy Spirit” (Acts 2:28). Then sometimes they are separate, like in Paul’s case (Acts 9:1-19).

Receiving the Holy Spirit

After Jesus had grown up, the next step we see Jesus in is when He received the Holy Spirit. Jesus was first a seed, then a baby, then an adolescent, and then a man. When it was time to start His ministry, He received the Holy Spirit. After receiving the Holy Spirit, we see a huge change in Jesus’ life and the start of His ministry. Jesus did not work one miracle before His baptism. However, after receiving the baptism, He healed the sick and raised the dead, performed many miracles, and brought thousands to the Lord.

We also see that Jesus’ speech changed after receiving the Holy Spirit. When He was 12 years old they were amazed at His speech and knowledge of Scripture. When He was 12 years old He told His father and mother that He was about His father’s business, “And he said unto them, How is it that ye sought me? wist ye not that I must be about my Father's business?” (Luke 2:49 KJV). If when He was only an adolescent He knew so much about Scripture that the teachers of the law were amazed, and He told His parents He would be about His father’s business, I am pretty sure that He talked about His father more than once from the time He was an adolescent until He was in His thirties and received the Holy Spirit.

However, the interesting thing to me is that nobody tried to stone Jesus for the words that He said before He received the baptism. Although after He had received the baptism, the teachers of the law were constantly enraged at His speech. Why did the teachers of the law go from being impressed with His speech, to being enraged with His speech? The reason is: He was no longer speaking His own words. He was speaking the words given to Him by His father, “For I did not speak of my own accord, but the Father who sent me commanded me what to say and how to say it” (John 12:49).

Before the baptism He was speaking from the knowledge that He received from the Holy Spirit. He greatly understood Scripture, having been taught by His father. However, after receiving the baptism of the Holy Spirit, He was speaking with power and authority. Speaking as the Spirit gave Him utterance. Scripture says that we will receive power after the Holy Spirit
has come upon us, “But you will receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you” (Acts 1:8). I have definitely seen a dramatic difference in my life and the power of God has been able to manifest in my life, since receiving the Holy Spirit.

I believe that there are 2 forms of submission, “turning to face/salvation” and “on their back/baptism of the Holy Spirit.” Just like starting a colt, they can happen on the same day, or they can be years apart from each other (2 kinds of horses, 2 kinds of people). It all depends on the heart. When we submit on the ground level “salvation,” this enables us to go to heaven and the Lord is able to lead us to do jobs. When we let Him climb on our back, so to speak (baptism of the Holy Spirit), He is then able to better direct us and use us to do much more. Instead of feeling like you are being led to do something for the Lord, the Lord is able to speak right to you and direct you from within.

However, once we have received the Holy Spirit and can communicate better, this does not mean that we will never run into resistance or tough times. Receiving the Holy Spirit helps us to be able to communicate with God and brings power to our life to build the kingdom of God. However, we will never fully accomplish the second level of submission “two becoming one,” until we have completely come into the fullness of Christ, “Till we all come in the unity of the faith, and of the knowledge of the Son of God, unto a perfect man, unto the measure of the stature of the fullness of Christ” (Ephesians 4:13). Just like riding a young horse, we will constantly be running into pressure and relief until we learn to stay in God’s perfect will. When we are in the perfect will of God, we have relief, and when we fall out of it we run into pressure. “…in me ye might have peace. In the world ye shall have tribulation:” (John 16:33).

Phases We Must Go Through

We see that after Jesus was baptized, He performed many miracles and did many great things. However, to complete the example that we would have to follow, He had to die a horrible death, an excruciatingly long death. “And he said to them all, If any man will come after me, let him deny himself, and take up his cross daily, and follow me” (Luke 9:23). Jesus was all spirit, but He came in the Flesh, “The Word became flesh and made his dwelling among us. We have seen his glory, the glory of the One and Only, who came from the Father, full of grace and truth” (John 1:14). He had to kill His flesh for atonement for our sin, and to show us what we must go through to be one with God. In order to come into the fullness of Christ, into perfection, we must kill off every ounce of our flesh, every part of our worldly behaviors and desires. “Likewise reckon ye also yourselves to be dead indeed unto sin, but alive unto God through Jesus Christ our Lord” (Romans 6:11). The same is true with our horse. In order for us to truly become one with our horse, we must get rid of all self-preservation, fear, doubt, and wanting to do things their way instead of our way. The only way that this will ever happen with our horse or with God is by willing submission, good communication, a solid foundation of maneuvers, and a balanced life to direction ratio. Until this happens, we are constantly running into pressure and relief.

A horse does not go from a wild mustang in the mountains to a bridle horse over night. Our horse must go though phases, and so must we. The entire last section of the book is dedicated to these phases; however, I will give a brief preview.
Jesus was first a seed, a seed that came from God and was planted by the Holy Spirit (Matthew 13). Like Jesus with Mary, we also have seeds planted and they too must be carried to term. Then He was a baby, living off milk, entirely supported by His mother (elementary teaching about Christ). “You need someone to teach you the elementary truths of God’s word all over again. You need milk, not solid food!” (Hebrews 5:12). Then He was an adolescent, able to eat solid food, and the Holy Spirit and His father began to teach Him, “But solid food is for the mature, who by constant use have trained themselves to distinguish good from evil” (Hebrews 5:14). Jesus then matured into a man and worked as a carpenter into His thirties, until His father finished teaching Him. Then when it was time for His ministry to start, He received the Holy Spirit and we see Him enter into the fifth phase of His life, as a teacher. “The same came to Jesus by night, and said unto him, Rabbi, we know that thou art a teacher come from God: for no man can do these miracles that thou doest, except God be with him” (John 3:2).

What did Jesus teach? He taught the Gospel. However, He did not only teach the Gospel, He demonstrated the Gospel. After receiving the Holy Spirit, we see the power of God manifested through Jesus, “This beginning of miracles did Jesus in Cana of Galilee, and manifested forth his glory; and his disciples believed on him” (John 2:11 KJV). He then glorified His father through countless miracles bringing many people to the Lord. Then Jesus’ next phase would be a sacrifice. He had to kill off His flesh to free us of our sins and to be our example, “Therefore, I urge you, brothers, in view of God's mercy, to offer your bodies as living sacrifices, holy and pleasing to God” (Romans 12:1). The last phase that Jesus went through on earth, before He was taken home by His father, was achieving victory over death, “Death has been swallowed up in victory” (1 Corinthians 15:54). He totally killed off His flesh. Satan could no longer tempt Him and He did away with the Old Covenant. He then spent the last of His time on earth ministering to His disciples in the Spirit.

I will talk much more about the phases that we must go through in the last section of the book. However, the phases that I just mentioned are the phases that we must go through, and the same phases that our horse goes through. They can basically be divided into 4 phases; man, teacher, sacrifice, and victor over death. First He went through the normal maturing process of a man, from a seed to a full-grown man, learning His father’s ways. Then He was a teacher, speaking with power and authority, demonstrating the power of God. Then He became a sacrifice, killing off His flesh. Finally, He conquered death. He died and was resurrected by His father.

In order to truly become one with our horses, or more importantly with God, we must go through the same 4 phases. First, we must grow from being fed only milk to receiving meat from God. Our horse must go from being drawn away by self-preservation, to being drawn in by comfort and companionship, where they can receive the proper groundwork (salvation/growing in the Lord). Then we need to add power to our life by becoming baptized in the Holy Spirit. With our horses, once we have done the proper groundwork and they have submitted on the first level, then it is time to start on the second level, “on their back/two becoming one.” Then we enter into the third phase, where we are constantly running into tribulation and turmoil until we have killed off our flesh (self-preservation) and are able to fall into the perfect will of God, “two becoming one.”
As we kill off more of our flesh, we are then better able to communicate with God and experience more in the Spirit (unity with God). The same is true with our horse. As we begin to kill off their self-preservation and they are drawn to stay in our will through comfort and companionship, we can then begin to experience “True Unity.” Killing off our flesh and experiencing more and more in the Spirit comes through God bringing resurrection power into our life. As the “old man” dies, “His purpose was to create in himself one new man out of the two, thus making peace, and in this one body to reconcile both of them to God through the cross, by which he put to death their hostility” (Ephesians 2:15) and Christ becomes formed within us. “My dear children, for whom I am again in the pains of childbirth until Christ is formed in you” (Galatians 4:19), we begin leaving this world and become drawn to our Father. We then find ourselves wanting to please God. We enjoy being with Him and we want to stay in our Father’s will and never leave. The same is true with our horse. I have not totally achieved this with God or with my horses yet. However, I have experienced it and I do believe that this is the way God intended it.

**Baptism of the Holy Spirit**

It is my belief that we are capable of receiving the baptism of the Holy Spirit at any point, from a newborn baby Christian to a mature man of God like Jesus was. This would be the same as getting on a young colt the first day you ever work with them, or after doing years of groundwork and letting them mature until you are ready to do a job. Jesus is our example: He was the son of God and then He was baptized receiving the Holy Spirit, “As soon as Jesus was baptized, he went up out of the water. At that moment heaven was opened, and he saw the Spirit of God descending like a dove and lighting on him” (Matthew 3:16). We first become the sons of God and then we are baptized in the Holy Spirit. When we become born again we receive a new creation from God that lives within us, “Therefore, if anyone is in Christ, he is a new creation; the old has gone, the new has come!” (2 Corinthians 5:17). This new creation is not the Holy Spirit. The new creation cries out Abba Father, “Because you are sons, God sent the Spirit of his Son into our hearts, the Spirit who calls out, ‘Abba, Father.’ So you are no longer a slave, but a son; and since you are a son, God has made you also an heir” (Galatians 4:6-7) and is the brother to Jesus, “Now if we are children, then we are heirs—heirs of God and co-heirs with Christ” (Romans 8:17). The Holy Spirit is God; part of the trinity, three in one. The Holy Spirit is not the son of God and the Holy Spirit is not the brother of Jesus.

Jesus sent the Holy Spirit to bring power to the sons of God, “But you will receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you” (Acts 1:8) and to remind us of Jesus’ teachings, “But the Counselor, the Holy Spirit, whom the Father will send in my name, will teach you all things and will remind you of everything I have said to you” (John 14:26). He is also our counselor, “And I will ask the Father, and he will give you another Counselor to be with you forever—the Spirit of truth” (John 14:16-17) and our comforter, “But the Comforter, which is the Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send in my name, he shall teach you all things, and bring all things to your remembrance, whatsoever I have said unto you” (John 14:26 KJV). The Holy Spirit is here to help the sons of God. When we accept Jesus into our heart, we become the son of God, and then it is through the power of the Holy Spirit manifesting in our life that we are able to demonstrate the Gospel as Jesus did. Jesus said that we would do what He had been
doing; we would do even greater things because He was going to the Father, “I tell you the truth, anyone who has faith in me will do what I have been doing. He will do even greater things than these, because I am going to the Father” (John 14:12). I was once baffled by this scripture and asked the Lord, “How could we possibly do more than Jesus did? Jesus was the son of God!” As soon as I said this, I heard the Holy Spirit softly say “Aren’t you the son of God?”

It had never clicked until that moment that the Spirit living inside me was an actual son of God and a brother to Jesus. The new creation was conceived in the same way Jesus was, by the Holy Spirit. “The Holy Ghost shall come upon thee, and the power of the Highest shall overshadow thee: therefore also that holy thing which shall be born of thee shall be called the Son of God” (Luke 1:35 KJV). Being born again, I had a new being living inside me, “the spirit of Christ,” that only wanted to please His father and do His father’s will. This is when I fully understood the meaning of being in the flesh and being in Spirit. “Those who belong to Christ Jesus have crucified the sinful nature with its passions and desires. Since we live by the Spirit, let us keep in step with the Spirit” (Galatians 5:24-25). This is why Paul said walk in the Spirit and we will not fulfill the lusts of the flesh, “This I say then, Walk in the Spirit, and ye shall not fulfil the lust of the flesh” (Galatians 5:16 KJV). This is why it is so important to kill off our flesh so that the spirit of Christ may be manifested in our body, “until Christ is formed in you” (Galatians 4:19).

**Hungry for God**

If this does not quite line up with your doctrine, or does not make sense, that is ok. Ask the Lord and let the Lord speak truth to you. Please, please do not miss the entire theme of this book, “Communicating with God.” This is the New Covenant. Jesus died so we could return to Eden and be taught by our heavenly Father. Go to God and let God teach you. God wants to teach His children. However, we have to be willing to let Him teach us. I do not have children, but for you parents, I do not think you would turn your back on one of your kids if they were lost and confused. If they came running to you with their arms open, in desperate need of help, I do not see how a parent could turn their back on a young child, on a little kid that only wanted to be held and comforted by their parent.

However, for you parents, don’t you think it would break your heart if you saw one of your children crying in anguish, and you held out your arms to pick them up and hold them and they ran to someone else; someone else that could never love them and care for them like you could? When we are lost and confused we should run to our heavenly Father. He wants to pick us up, love on us, and teach us. How much does your heavenly Father love you? Well, picture Jesus standing with His hands spread wide apart to embrace you. Now picture those hands with nails driven through them, hanging on a cross for you. This is how much God loved His children.

When we picture Jesus hanging on the cross for us, we should fall to our knees, and thank Him for taking our sin and giving us eternal life. However, this is not all He did by dying on the cross. He also opened the lines of communication between God and Man. The purpose of this book is not to teach you about God, but to help you realize that **WE CAN BE TAUGHT BY GOD**, and to inspire you to go boldly to the throne, “Let us therefore come boldly unto the
throne of grace, that we may obtain mercy, and find grace to help in time of need” (Hebrews 4:16).

How long did Moses spend on the mountain before he heard from God? How long did the early disciples spend in prayer waiting for God to send the Holy Spirit? How desperate are you to hear from God? Do you go running to God and fall on your knees praying that He will pick you up and teach you? Or do you go running to man for a quick fix?

God speaks life to His people, “The words I have spoken to you are spirit and they are life” (John 6:63). When we start experiencing God, we start experiencing resurrection power in our life. However, as we were given the example by Christ, in order for there to be a resurrection, there must first be death. Jesus did not die a quick death. It was a long, gruesome, and uncomfortable process. EVERY time in my life when I have come to God and have desperately waited to hear from Him with a burning desire in my heart to know Him, He has opened up the heavens. When we are waiting, searching, digging, wanting to know God, we are killing off our flesh. After we start killing off pieces of our flesh, then we can start experiencing resurrection life.

When I was playing football in junior high, they never did let me carry the ball very much. I loved to hit, and I would veer from a straight path to the goal line to turn and hit somebody. I thought how much sweeter it would be to trot over the goal line after knocking somebody on their butt. However, this usually never was the case. I was such a little fart that I would put everything into the hit and after I hit them, if I did knock them down, I would usually trip over them. In the kick returns, I would catch the ball and run as fast as I could at somebody. It wouldn’t matter if it was a lineman twice my size. I would run full throttle and give everything I had in crashing into them (my neck is still sore).

It wasn’t until high school that I figured out it was ok to dodge people. I used to get so frustrated when I would line up to hit somebody and they would move. That’s why I liked hitting big people, because they usually didn’t move. Instead they would come at me. I don’t understand why Christians are not willing to put their heads down and run through a few walls to get to God. We have to go through a little opposition to get to God. Jesus told us we would, “I have told you these things, so that in me you may have peace. In this world you will have trouble. But take heart! I have overcome the world” (John 16:33). Often times its people, even religious leaders, that is part of the defense keeping us from perfection in Christ. “But the unbelieving Jews stirred up the Gentiles, and made their minds evil affected against the brethren” (Acts 14:2). However, when we make it through the defense, the victory at the goal line is so sweet! I have made it through and scored a few touchdowns, but I cannot imagine the joy we will receive when we have won the game. Oh what a celebration that will be!

Scripture says that we cannot serve two masters, “No one can serve two masters. Either he will hate the one and love the other, or he will be devoted to the one and despise the other” (Matthew 6:24). We are either playing for one team or the other; the spirit team (God) or the flesh team (the world). I have definitely scored points for both teams, and one thing I have learned is that it is just like football, momentum is everything. The more points we score, the easier it is to keep on scoring. The more points I score for the spirit team, the easier it is to keep
scoring and the tougher the defense gets for the flesh team, and vice versa. It is as Paul said, “but I see another law at work in the members of my body, waging war against the law of my mind and making me a prisoner of the law of sin at work within my members” (Romans 7:23). It is a battle. What team are you playing for? Is the primary goal of your average day focused on building God’s kingdom, or your kingdom? God tells us that there is no middle ground. If we are lukewarm He will spit us out of his mouth, “So, because you are lukewarm—neither hot nor cold—I am about to spit you out of my mouth” (Revelation 3:16). I do not know why, but for some reason I have a strong offense. I am driving hard for either one goal post or the other. I do not spend much time hanging around in the middle of the field. I have scored plenty of points for the flesh team. However, my heart’s desire is to be on the spirit team and charge for the Lord’s goal posts.

I have charged after the Lord at full throttle. When I received the baptism of the Holy Spirit it was as if God handed me a football, and there was nothing that I was going to let stand in the way between God and me. The only thing standing between God and me is my flesh. When I have totally killed my flesh, I will be dead and my Father will resurrect my spirit and take me home. However, the more of my flesh I kill off while being on earth, the more life my Father can resurrect in my spirit and the more I can experience God on earth.

I’ve spent days fasting and praying before the Lord, wanting to know God. I have gone weeks in total anguish in my spirit, desperately wanting to hear from God. The new creation “cries!” out Abba Father, “but you received the Spirit of sonship. And by him we cry, ‘Abba, Father’” (Romans 8:15). Romans 8 goes on to say that creation waits for the manifestation of the sons of God and is in frustration until it be delivered from the bondage; the whole creation groans and travails. Even we groan within ourselves, waiting for the adoption, to wit, the redemption of our body, “The creation waits in eager expectation for the sons of God to be revealed. For the creation was subjected to frustration, not by its own choice, but by the will of the one who subjected it, in hope that the creation itself will be liberated from its bondage to decay and brought into the glorious freedom of the children of God. We know that the whole creation has been groaning as in the pains of childbirth right up to the present time. Not only so, but we ourselves, who have the first-fruits of the Spirit, groan inwardly as we wait eagerly for our adoption as sons, the redemption of our bodies” (Romans 8:19-23). Our spirit desperately wants to hear from God.

I once spent an entire night freezing, sitting on a 5-gallon bucket, waiting to hear from God. That is kind of a funny story. I wanted to hear from God so badly that I decided I would present myself as a living sacrifice, “Therefore, I urge you, brothers, in view of God's mercy, to offer your bodies as living sacrifices, holy and pleasing to God—this is your spiritual act of worship” (Romans 12:1). I plopped down on a 5-gallon bucket out in the corral and said I would not move until I heard from God. It was in the middle of the summer and it was not very cold at all. It was in the evening and I was wearing a light windbreaker when I decided to wait for God.

It started out great. I was praying and worshiping the Lord, and became filled with the Holy Spirit. I had a good old time for about a half an hour. Then the wind started to lightly blow, then a little harder, then harder, and in less than an hour from the time I sat down, a storm blew in and
it stormed all night. I no longer felt the Lord’s presence and I shivered all night long. The next morning when the sun was starting to come up the Lord told me to go in the house. I went in the house and climbed under a blanket and shivered for about 40 minutes. When I warmed up, I fell asleep and when I woke up the Lord spoke to me.

Another time I was confused with all the different doctrines flying around and had a burning desire to know the truth. I spent 3 weeks in torment praying and searching. One night I spent about an hour and a half just praising and worshiping the Lord by myself. When I went to bed, the Lord opened the heavens and poured down on me. From about 11:00 at night to 6:00 in the morning the Lord gave me scripture after scripture, answering all my questions.

How hungry are you? Jesus said whoever thirsts let him come to me and he will thirst no more, “but whoever drinks the water I give him will never thirst. Indeed, the water I give him will become in him a spring of water welling up to eternal life” (John 4:14). However hungry and however thirsty you are, God will satisfy. If you are satisfied with what you have, it is hard for God to give you more. However, if we come to Him in desperate need of nourishment, He will never send us away hungry or thirsty, “Then Jesus declared, ‘I am the bread of life. He who comes to me will never go hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty’” (John 6:35).

**Hard Headed Colt**

The Lord is able to speak to me, and the Lord has been able to use me to accomplish much more after I received the Holy Spirit. However, I am like a colt that has a lot of life, sometimes it is hard to direct it. There are 2 kinds of life with our horses and with us, negative and positive. The negative form is driven by self-preservation (flesh), and the positive form is driven by excitement (Holy Spirit). The negative form is obviously not very good, and the positive form is good as long as it gets direction. The life of the horse is often driven by the horse’s energy level (motivation and determination). If this motivation and determination is driven by confidence, comfort, and companionship in us there will likely be few problems. However, if this motivation and determination is driven by self-preservation, and comfort and companionship away from us, we are sure to run into problems. The same is true in our life with the Lord. With our horses and within ourselves, we need to learn to try to get rid of the negative life, and direct the positive life. However, we need to be careful that in directing the positive life we do not do too much directing and take away all the life. I talk more about the importance of keeping a balance between the two in the “Direction and Life” chapter of the book.

If the Lord hadn’t directed my life towards Him, I probably would have been a work-a-holic, an alcoholic or a druggy. I like to go hard at whatever I am doing. I think this is why the Lord let me get Mono, so He could keep me under control, “To keep me from becoming conceited because of these surpassingly great revelations, there was given me a thorn in my flesh” (2 Corinthians 12:7). There are a lot of horses that have a lot of negative life and no direction. Sometimes we need to let them work a little, to get a little life out of them, so we can direct them. Horses with a lot of life I will sometimes put on 3 legs. I hobble one leg and let them run around on 3 legs. Like us, hopping around on one leg, they get tired a lot sooner and look for comfort and relief much sooner.
As the energy starts to decrease, self-preservation decreases and they start looking to me for a better deal (companionship). I am then able to offer them comfort and relief. When they turn and submit to me, then I am able to get on them and accomplish a job. If I got on them without them submitting, then self-preservation might take over causing them to rebel, and I might shatter any confidence they had in me. The Lord does the same thing with us. He waits for willing submission so we do not become slaves and rebel. However, sometimes God uses a hobble, or ropes us and chokes us a little bit, to help us submit a little sooner.

Chronic Fatigue Syndrome is my hobble. It doesn’t matter how great a level of communication I have with God, if I do not submit my will, then I am like the colt that is running and bucking around, with God standing in the middle of the pen holding a halter, shaking His head at me. However, the hobble helps to take away some of my energy (motivation and determination) so the Lord can use me. A high energy level is fine as long as it is driven by comfort and companionship and not self-preservation. When I feel myself start to get tired, I know that I have been spending too much time in the world (my flesh), and not enough time with the Lord.

When I reach these times, I know I need to turn to the Lord for comfort and relief, and submit to His will. Every time I do this, I instantly feel relief and close to God. We then begin communicating and set out to do a job together having a blast the whole way. However, it has to be my choice. God does not force us into unwilling submission. He gives us free choice.

We need to remember this when we are working with our horses. I think this is why the Lord gave us dominion over the animals, so we could see what we put God through, and so we could see how dumb we are. How many times have we said, “You stupid horse, we just went through this yesterday”? How many times have we become frustrated with our horses, because we feel like we have to re-teach them what they should already know?

How many times does the Lord have to re-teach us? I guess we should remember, how many times God has to remind us that we must submit EVERY area of our life to Him. I know I must be reminded of this daily, so does a horse. I do not always react to the colt’s self-preservation with the same patience and compassion that the Lord does with me. However, I have found that if I try to imitate God, acting with patience and compassion while being firm and consistent, it does not take long at all and the colt falls perfectly in line.

God always gives us free choice. When God walks out into the pasture to catch us, if we run to the other side, He will not chase us. He will only move us to a pasture with no food and water. When we get hungry and thirsty enough, He will be standing there to catch us and lead us to cold water to drink and good food (salvation/rededication). Once He has us nourished, then He will ask us to do a job. He will try to get on us (baptism/sanctification) and if we will not let him, He will make us work until we have nothing left and turn to Him for comfort and relief (prodigal son). Some of us He makes work really hard and we give in quickly, and with others He is very patient. Some people never do let God direct them from their back and spend their life being led by God.
God does different things with different people. Some people He halter breaks and starts riding them to do a job, all in the same day (salvation and baptism). With these He does a lot of teaching from the back. There is often a lot of life and not a lot of direction. Many times there is a lot of self-preservation, and these colts often try to run away and fall back into their old ways. However, once the Lord is able to direct the life and other people do not get in the way (religion), He is able to accomplish a lot.

With others, He halter breaks them and does a lot more groundwork before He gets on them. With these, they may not have as much life when He gets on their back. However, they usually have a lot better direction and are more trustworthy, with less self-preservation. With these the Lord is usually trying to bring the life up, because they may have gotten a little numb from being handled so much on the ground. If God is the only person that has done the groundwork, the person is not numb. However, most of the time other people have handled the person, and they may be a little numb and might have to run into some resistance to get soft again.

I speak more about salvation and the baptism of the Holy Spirit in the “Solid Foundation of Maneuvers (Mechanical)” chapter of the book, and I talk more about trying to work with unhandled and handled horses in the “Two Kinds of Horses and Two Kinds of People” chapter of the book. If there is some stuff that does not line up with your doctrine that is ok. When going to men to learn about God, we need to learn to eat the meat and throw out the bone. It is like anything with our horse or with God, it is not real until you experience it. All I know is that I see 2 different levels of submission with my horse and I have gone through 2 different levels of submission with God. The level of my communication with God has been black and white, or day and night, before I received the baptism compared with after. The 2 levels have proven to be true in my life, and it speaks true to me in Scripture.
~Two Kinds of Horses and Two Kinds of People~

A) First Type of Horse: Those that haven’t been handled
- It takes longer to gain trust.
- But relief, comfort, and companionship are much easier to attain.
- Very little pressure has to be applied for them to turn to you for relief, only time.
- No false teachings – when pressure is applied they usually give.

B) Second Type of Horse: Those that have been handled
- Trust, comfort, and companionship have already been established.
- But is very hard to establish the need for you.
- In many cases, a great deal of pressure must be applied for relief to have meaning.
- May have developed false teachings. They lean into pressure instead of giving.

Those that haven’t been handled – Gentiles (God can teach)
Prodigal Son: repentant, heart is open, hungry, desperate need of food

Those that have been handled – Pharisees (Religion – man has taught)
- Much more difficult
Older Son: angry, hard heart, not hungry, will not eat

There are basically 2 kinds of horses and 2 kinds of people, those that have been handled, and those that haven’t. It is much easier for me to work with a horse that has not been handled. I can start fresh, and I know that there are no hard spots or braces that I have to try to get out. If the horse has been around people, and has learned to not be afraid of people and trust, that is fine. It is when people try to train the horse, but have no feel or timing, forcing them into unwilling submission, that I have a lot of work to undo what they have done. I think the Lord thinks the same thing sometimes and so did Paul, “But I fear, lest by any means, as the serpent beguiled Eve through his subtlety, so your minds should be corrupted from the simplicity that is in Christ” (2 Corinthians 11:3 KJV). “For if someone comes to you and preaches a Jesus other than the Jesus we preached, or if you receive a different spirit from the one you received, or a different gospel from the one you accepted, you put up with it easily enough” (2 Corinthians 11:4).

When we come to the Lord hungry and wanting to learn, God is so faithful to teach us and train us into perfection. “All scripture is given by inspiration of God, and is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness: That the man of God may be perfect, thoroughly furnished unto all good works” (2 Timothy 3:16-17 KJV). Through the Holy Spirit bringing life to the Scripture, “He has made us competent as ministers of a new covenant-not of the letter but of the Spirit; for the letter kills, but the Spirit gives life” (2 Corinthians 3:6). God is able to teach us. “But the Counselor, the Holy Spirit, whom the Father will send in my name, will teach you all things and will remind you of
everything I have said to you” (John 14:26). It is when we come to Him with our head filled with religious beliefs taught by man (instead of God), that the lines of communication get shut off. If we have been taught only by man and have developed braces and hard spots, it is hard for the Lord to communicate with us. Just like our horses, when we have developed these braces and hard spots, we often have to go through some pretty tough tribulation and hard times, running into pressure, before we can get soft.

The Bible says in the last days people will have a form of godliness but denying its power. “There will be terrible times in the last days. People will be lovers of themselves, lovers of money, boastful, proud, abusive, disobedient to their parents, ungrateful, unholy, without love, unforgiving, slanderous, without self-control, brutal, not lovers of the good, treacherous, rash, conceited, lovers of pleasure rather than lovers of God—having a form of godliness but denying its power” (2 Timothy 3:1-5). This power does not come from religion; it comes from accepting Jesus Christ as your Lord and Savior, and then the power of the Holy Spirit working through you. “But you will receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you” (Acts 1:8). If you are lacking power in your life, let the Holy Spirit work through you and let God teach you. I am not only talking about power to raise the dead and heal the sick, but simple things like making it through the day after a tragedy has struck, and loving the unlovable neighbor.

Don’t be like the Pharisees that were so caught up in religion that they did not recognize God trying to teach them when He was right in front of their face. Jesus is here and He wants to teach you. Paul, one of the greatest apostles of all, did not know Jesus before He died. However, he knew Him well after His death and resurrection, “And he fell to the earth, and heard a voice saying unto him, Saul, Saul, why persecutest thou me?” (Acts 9:4). Paul talked about seeing Jesus, “Am I not an apostle? Have I not seen Jesus our Lord?” (1 Corinthians 9:1), being with Jesus, “and last of all he appeared to me also” (1 Corinthians 15:8), and He had a great relationship with Him, “For I am in a strait between two, having a desire to depart and to be with Christ; which is far better: Nevertheless to abide in the flesh is more needful for you” (Philippians 1:24 KJV).

Paul’s relationship with Jesus was just as deep and intimate after His death as the other apostles’ relationship was before His death. STOP and really think about this. Paul saw Jesus! Paul was a disciple of Jesus, taught by Jesus Christ Himself. “But I certify you, brethren, that the gospel that was preached of me is not after man. For I neither received it of man, neither was I taught it, but by revelation of Jesus Christ” (Galatians 1:11-12 KJV). “But when it pleased God, who separated me from my mother’s womb, and called me by his grace, to reveal his Son in me, that I might preach him among the heathen; immediately I conferred not with flesh and blood. Neither went I up to Jerusalem to them which were the apostles before me; but I went to Arabia, and returned again unto Damascus. Then after three years I went up to Jerusalem to see Peter, and abode with him fifteen days” (Galatians 1:15-18 KJV). Are you living in the flesh waiting for a day in the far off distance when Jesus will return? Or are you spending time in the Spirit being taught by Jesus, like Paul did? Is this even possible, can we be taught by Jesus like the disciples? I guess to a lot of people this depends on your doctrine. Well, let me give you some things to think about.
Jesus had already been taken up into heaven (Acts 1:9) before He appeared to Paul, “and last of all He was seen of me also, as of one born out of due time” (1 Corinthians 15:8). Paul wasn’t even converted until Acts, Chapter 9. So did Paul not really see Jesus like the early disciples did, or did Jesus ascend into heaven and then descend back down to earth to be seen of Paul? Is this considered a second coming?

I asked the Lord about His second coming one time and He told me to look at Paul. After looking at Paul, I guess we just have to ask ourselves, “Do we believe Paul?” “And last of all he appeared to me also” (1 Corinthians 15:8). I believe Paul because, “Ye shall know them by their fruit…” (Matthew 7:17 KJV). Paul was not taught by man and God used Him more than any of the disciples. He must have known Jesus like the first disciples. I think the reason that God used Paul more than any of the other apostles was to prove that He is here to minister to us. Jesus is alive and wants to teach us.

Jesus already came in the flesh once and His children (Israelites/ Pharisees) did not recognize the first coming of the Messiah. Jesus spoke an awful lot about being in the Spirit and in the flesh, and so did His disciples. “The Spirit gives life; the flesh counts for nothing. The words I have spoken to you are spirit and they are life” (John 6:63). “This I say then, Walk in the Spirit, and ye shall not fulfill the lust of the flesh. For the flesh lusteth against the Spirit, and the Spirit against the flesh: and these are contrary the one to the other: so that ye cannot do the things that ye would” (Galatians 5: 16-17 KJV). Do you think Jesus’ second coming will be in the flesh, so everyone can see Him in the flesh?

Or, will His second coming be in the Spirit, and we will need “spiritual” eyes to see Him? “For judgment I am come into this world, that they which see not might see; and that they which see might be made blind. And some of the Pharisees which were with him heard these words, and said unto him, Are we blind also? Jesus said unto them, If ye were blind, ye should have no sin: but now ye say, We see; therefore your sin remaineth” (John 9:38-41 KJV). Do you think He was talking about spiritual blindness or physical blindness? The church missed the Messiah’s first coming because they could not see Him, they were in the flesh. “The Spirit gives life; the flesh counts for nothing. The words I have spoken to you are spirit and they are life” (John 6:63). What will His second coming look like? Will He come in the flesh for everyone to see, again? Or, will He return to take us to the Father in the Spirit and this is why He tells us, “Walk in the Spirit” (Galatians 5:16)?

Well, I will use Scripture to answer 3 questions to give us some idea what the second coming may look like: When will He return? How will He return? Who will He return to? Then open up your heart and let God teach you. Do not fall under the law of the Old Covenant, do not become a numb horse with no communication.

When will He return? “And then shall they see the Son of man coming in a cloud with power and great glory. And when these things begin to come to pass, then look up, and lift up your heads; for your redemption draweth nigh (Luke 21:27-28 KJV). “I tell you the truth, this generation will certainly not pass away until all these things have happened” (Luke 21:32). Jesus said He would return to the same generation He left. “A little while, and ye shall not see me: and again, a little while, and ye shall see me, because I go to the
Father” (John 16:16 KJV). Do not be deceived, the last day began when Jesus rose from the dead. “But and if that evil servant shall say in His heart My Lord delayeth His coming; and shall begin to smite his fellow servants, and to eat and drink with the drunken. The Lord of that servant shall come in a day when he looketh not for him, and in an hour that he is not aware of, and shall cut him asunder, and appoint him his portion with the hypocrites: there shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth” (Matthew 24:48-51 KJV). Do not say in your heart, the Lord delays in His coming. He does want to teach His children. “And many false prophets shall rise, and shall deceive many” (Matthew 24:11 KJV). Do not just take my word. Do not just take your pastor’s word, LET GOD TEACH YOU! God told me to speak His word (milk) until they can hear His words (meat). If I speak and the people never learn to hear God, then I am failing as a minister of God. Learn to hear God’s voice so that you may not be deceived.

How will He return? “But the hour cometh, and now is, when the true worshippers shall worship the Father in spirit and in truth: for the Father seeketh such to worship him. God is a Spirit: and they that worship Him must worship Him in Spirit and in truth” (John 4:23-24 KJV). “The Spirit gives life; the flesh counts for nothing. The words I have spoken to you are spirit and they are life” (John 6:63). The Lord came in the flesh to do away with the flesh (Old Covenant), and to establish a New Covenant (Spirit). We are born into this world twice, “Verily, verily, I say unto thee, unless a man be born of water and of the Spirit, he can not enter the Kingdom of God. That which is born of the flesh is flesh and that which is born of the Spirit is spirit” (John 3:5-6). Paul tells us we grow in God’s presence (Holy Spirit), “But we all, with open face beholding as in a glass the glory of the Lord, are changed into the same image from glory to glory, even as by the Spirit of the Lord (2 Corinthians 3:18 KJV). Jesus only came in the flesh to do away with the flesh. We are to now live in the Spirit. “This I say then, Walk in the Spirit...” (Galatians 5:16-17 KJV). Looking at these scriptures, I think Jesus will return in the Spirit. We are born again in the Spirit, we grow in the Spirit, and we are supposed to walk and worship in the Spirit.

Who will He return to? To those who are looking (Greek – to expect fully). “So Christ was once offered to bear the sins of many; and unto them that look for him shall he appear the second time without sin unto salvation (Hebrews 9:28 KJV). He will return to those who are not only looking to God, but to those who are communicating with God. “For our conversation is in heaven: from whence also we look for the Savior, the Lord Jesus Christ” (Philippians 3:20 KJV). Are you communicating with God? Do you know God? “Many will say to me in that day, Lord, Lord, have we not prophesied in thy name? and in thy name have we not cast out devils? and in thy name done many wonderful works? And then will I profess unto them, I never knew you: depart from me, ye that work inequity” (Matthew 7:22-23 KJV). “Know” in the Greek means “absolutely” and is translated into – allow, be aware of, feel, have knowledge, perceive, be resolved, can speak, be sure, understand. “My sheep hear my voice, I know them and they follow me (Matthew 10:27 KJV). Can you hear His voice? Do you receive revelation knowledge from God? If not, work out your salvation with fear and trembling. “Wherefore, my beloved, as ye have always obeyed, not as in my presence only, but now much more in my absence, work out your own salvation with fear and trembling” (Philippians 2:12 KJV). “A son honoreth his father and a servant his master: if then I be a father, where is mine honour? and if I be a master, where is my fear?” (Malachi 1:6 KJV).
Let’s look at it from another angle. What do you think would be the best defense and the slyest trick Satan could pull on us, during the end times? The end times started with the early disciples, “I tell you the truth, this generation will certainly not pass away until all these things have happened” (Luke 21:32). Well, what did Satan do the first time? He kept God’s children looking to the future, instead of looking right in front of their face. Many people say, “I guess we’ll know someday, someday we’ll ask the man upstairs.” Paul met the man upstairs on earth, and he had a personal and intimate relationship with Him. I see that there could possibly be some parallels between the first and second coming of Christ and God’s children. However, do not misinterpret me. I am not trying to teach this doctrine. I am only trying to get you to open your mind, then open your heart and let God teach you. I do not know what the second coming will look like. The only revelation that the Lord has given me was to look at Paul.

There are many questions that I do not have answers to, but praise be to God that He can teach His children and He never sends us away hungry! “Then Jesus declared, I am the bread of life. He who comes to me will never go hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty” (John 6:35). “Let them give thanks to the LORD for his unfailing love and his wonderful deeds for men, for he satisfies the thirsty and fills the hungry with good things” (Psalm 107:8-9). As long as I stay spiritually hungry and keep letting God feed me, He will continue to feed me and answer all my questions. We do not have to wonder. We just have to ask and wait for HIM to answer us. It is that easy, that is all there is to it. This is how the New Covenant works.

I love the New Covenant! Thank you Jesus! Then when He does answer us, speaking truth (Scripture), we will not be deceived like Eve was having someone tell us what the word of God says. Because we will have revelation and Satan will never be able to overcome it. “Jesus replied, ‘Blessed are you, Simon son of Jonah, for this was not revealed to you by man, but by my Father in heaven. And I tell you that you are Peter, and on this rock I will build my church, and the gates of Hades will not overcome it. I will give you the keys of the kingdom of heaven…’” (Matthew 16:17-19). “Blessed are they which do hunger and thirst after righteousness; for they shall be filled (Matthew 5:6).

I do believe that one of the reasons God used Paul more than any of the other apostles, was to prove that He is here to minister to us. Jesus is alive and He does want to teach us. Don’t be like that poor horse that spends his entire life plugging along in unwilling submission. Learn to get a soft feel and operate through willing submission and good communication, bringing power to your life.

Five years ago the Lord let me receive the most sacred gift, He let me get Mononucleosis. In His love He kept me from the pit of destruction, “Surely it was for my benefit that I suffered such anguish. In your love you kept me from the pit of destruction; you have put all my sins behind your back” (Isaiah 38:17). He loved me so much, He helped me to die to my flesh that I could live in His spirit. I was very sick and weak, but when I spent time in His presence He made me strong. So naturally, I spent lots of time in the Spirit and what the Lord showed me, was truly out of this world.

The Lord is the same yesterday, today, and forever, “Jesus Christ is the same yesterday
and today and forever” (Hebrews 13:8). When we read our Bibles, we read stories of people doing amazing things and God revealing Himself in amazing ways. God has not changed, only the people who are serving Him have. I know that the Lord wants to use me, and I am excited about that. However, He wants all of me. Therefore, I want as much of Him on this earth as I can have. I pray that He will show me what is holding me back from tasting what Moses tasted, and experiencing what the apostles experienced.

As I was driving down the road one day, I asked the Lord to show me where I was in my walk with the Him. He told me, “You are lost in a forest of greatness.” I then saw myself walking in a forest of massive redwoods. The trunks were as big as monster truck tires in circumference and reached unto the heavens. They went so high into the sky that you could barely see where the branches started. He told me, “These are the mighty men of God.” He then had me walk a little further into the forest and I saw this little tree that went up to about my waist. It was a very healthy little tree, but it was pretty puny compared to the massive redwood trees, that reached to the heavens.

He then told me, “This is you. It takes time to mature into a mighty man of God.” Then, I was above all the trees looking at them from God’s perspective. All I could see was the very tops of them. I was so high up that they just looked like little fluffy green lumps that stretched out across the countryside and rolled up and down the hillsides and valleys. He then showed me that this was how He saw His forest of children, and that He loved them all the same.

The next day as I was changing water, He revealed more to me. I was back in the forest and was looking at all of the mighty trees again. I started to walk and after I had walked for a ways, I came across a cave. I entered the cave and there were millions of little trees that were inside the cave. They stretched out so far that I could not see the end of them. They were very sick and looked like they were dying.

Having been in the cave, they could not receive any light and the darkness was killing them. At the entrance of the cave, there were trees that had received some light and were able to grow for a time. However, once they had reached a certain height the cave blocked the light and they did not grow anymore. The trees that had grown in the cave had blocked the light from reaching the little dying trees. After the Lord revealed this to me, I knew it was much better to be “Lost in a forest of greatness,” than to be trapped in a cave, with no hope of growing.

The cave symbolized religion and the trees in the entrance of the cave were ministers of God. Ministers of God should lead people to the Glory and splendor of God Almighty (the light). A minister of God is a middleman. They draw people to God, teach of God, and then get out of the way and let their flock experience God. If the ministers do not step out of the entrance and let God minister to the people, the people will not grow. When we are babies we need milk, which comes from pastors. However, as we start to mature we must receive meat to grow, “For every one that useth milk is unskilful in the word of righteousness: for he is a babe. But strong meat belongeth to them that are of full age, even those who by reason of use have their senses exercised to discern both good and evil” (Hebrews 5:13-14 KJV). This meat is revelation and can only come from hearing from God himself.
The Lord once showed me something great, that went along these same lines, as I was praying. I was in an ancient city, like I would have pictured Jerusalem in Jesus’ day. It was large and very busy, with lots of noise and commotion. There were people rushing everywhere, carts being pulled by donkeys, people buying and selling, and trying to get things done as fast as they could. I kept walking and came over a hill. As I topped the hill I saw an ocean and a large beach. As I walked down the hill and left the city, the noise began to fade, and it was less hectic. People were coming down off the hill and going to these guys that were standing in boats, by the shore. These people were preachers and were welcoming the people coming over the hill.

The multitude of people went down and began to mill around on the edge of the ocean. They were tracking dirt from the city and mixing it with the water and sand on the edge of the ocean. The ground began to get very sticky and with all the people it was hard to move. Most of the people just went down to the shore, milled around in the mud and then went back over the hill. However some of the people would walk out to the preachers. Some would walk out to their ankles, some to their knees, and some would even get in the boat with the preacher and row out for a ways. However, the preacher would never go too far, because he would not want to leave the rest of his people behind.

As I was looking at all of this, I happened to glance down the shoreline in the distance and I could see a man waving his arm, standing on a dock. I walked over to him and he had a boat tied to the dock. He motioned me over and I got into the boat. I rowed and rowed until I could not see land any more. At this point, I laid down in the boat and looked up to the heavens. When I looked up, I saw heaven open and its glory and splendor were revealed to me. The man on the dock was the Holy Spirit. He showed me He can take us to the Father. We just need to be willing to leave everything behind, and row out to him.

The Lord showed me one time a group of people sitting around talking about God (Bible study) and Jesus sitting right in the middle of the group. “For when two or three are gathered together in my name, there am I in the midst of them” (Matthew 18:20). However, the group of people would not be quiet long enough for Jesus to get a word in. I think we talk about God entirely too much. We need to be quiet and let Him speak to us. It is the format of Bible studies that is throwing everything off. Most Bible studies are led by people and they spend the entire time talking about God (Old Covenant). If you are not receiving any revelation; change the format of your Bible study. Let Jesus lead it and come expecting to hear from Him.

Use the rule of thirds that the Lord gave me, to help get you started; talk, listen, share. Spend one third of your Bible study time talking about hearing from God. This gets people excited about hearing from God (eager expectation), and gets their mind off of the world and onto God. Then listen; turn on some music and worship the Lord for the next third of the Bible study. Prepare yourself to enter into the Holy of Holies through the blood of Christ and praise and worship. Come expecting to receive. It is important to realize that the Lord communicates to us through our driving factors; comfort and companionship. If you receive peace, joy, happiness, and comfort, then the Lord is communicating with you. If you keep approaching Him in this matter He will start to reveal Himself more and more until you are seeing visions and having conversations. But, be patient; take one step at a time. Then, for the final third of your Bible study share; share what the Lord has given you. If all you received is peace then that is
awesome! That is the first step to hearing from God.

This is how Paul told us to conduct a Bible study: “For ye may all prophesy one by one, that all may learn, and all may be comforted” (1 Corinthians 14:31 KJV). A prophet is someone that hears from God. We should be eager to hear from God. “Wherefore brethren covet to prophesy, and forbid not to speak in tongues” (1 Corinthians 14:39 KJV). This is how we are to get people saved at Bible studies. We do not have to do anything, we just have to get them to come to a Bible study, and God will do the speaking; if we will only let Him. “But if all prophesy, and there come in one that believeth not, or one unlearned, he is convinced of all, he is judged (Greek – ask, question, discern, examine) of all: And thus are the secrets of his heart made manifest; and so falling down on his face he will worship God, and report that God is in you of a truth” (1 Corinthians 14:25). If your Bible studies do not sound like Paul’s then try changing your format. I have never come before God with a group of people that wanted to hear from God and then had God not speak to the entire group. This is ALL He is waiting for; people to come to Him hungry and looking to Him to be fed.

Every time I come to God and wait for Him to speak to me, He is always faithful to answer me. We just need to be faithful to wait and look to Him. Sometimes it may take hours. I know that time is a factor for all of us, but we need to be careful what we are running back to. “Love not the world, neither the things that are in the world. If any man love the world, the love of the Father is not in him” (1 John 2:15 KJV). “No one can serve two masters: for either he will hate the one, and love the other; or else he will hold to the one, and despise the other. Ye cannot serve God and mammon (money)” (Matthew 6:24 KJV). There may be something dreadfully wrong with which master we are serving if we cannot find at least a half an hour a day to be still before the Lord. “Give us today our daily bread” (Matthew 6:11).

Sometimes it is very hard to try to communicate with horses that have learned to live through unwilling submission (religion). Jesus experienced the same thing when He returned to His children the first time. Let’s make sure that we do not fall back under religion and never learn to hear God’s voice and communicate with Him. “Jesus said unto them, If God were your father, ye would love me: For I proceeded forth and came from God; neither came I of myself, but He sent me. Why do ye not understand my speech? Even because ye cannot hear my word” (John 8:42-43 KJV). We do not read God’s word with our head. We hear God’s word with our heart. “For this people’s heart is waxed gross, and their ears are dull of hearing, and their eyes they have closed; lest at anytime they should see with their eyes and hear with their ears, and should understand with their heart, and should be converted, and I should heal them. But blessed are your eyes, for they see: and your ears, for they hear” (Matthew 13:15-16 KJV).

Are you under the cave of religion (sitting around talking about God), or have you stepped out into the radiance of God’s light in the New Covenant? Do you see God? Can you hear His voice? Do not be deceived, God wants to teach His people. Climb into the boat of the Holy Spirit and let Him soften your heart, so that you may be able to see and hear your heavenly Father.
II. 2nd Obstacle- Communicating Man’s Will

3 Factors of Communication
1) Feel
2) Timing
3) Balance

*The rate a person is able to move toward perfection rests entirely upon these three factors*

“Feeling” of the Horse

Ray Hunt says, “You can’t buy it and I can’t give it to you.” You can read all the books in the world, have people tell you what “feel” is, see people that ride through “feel,” but you will never have it until you experience it. It can only be achieved between you and the horse. People can help you position yourself so that you and the horse are in a situation to experience “feel,” but ultimately it is between you and the horse. If you can’t feel when things are perfect, how do you expect to attain perfection?

Often perfection will pass by in a split second and then vanish. A person needs to recognize these split seconds and relieve the applied pressure. It is through receiving relief that the horse develops the desire to stay in perfection: Then the seconds can be multiplied to minutes. A thirty-minute ride with two minutes of perfection is better than a three-hour ride with no perfection. The two minutes may be multiplied. However, the three hours without perfection will lead to an unwillingly submitted horse.

True Unity: Willing Communication Between God and Human

The title of Tom Dorrance’s book is True Unity: Willing Communication Between Horse and Human. The editor Milly Porter states, “From the beginning of time, history has been sprinkled with individuals who, because of something unique in their personalities, take the very ordinary in their environments and see in it, or do with it, a little more than others seem to have gotten from the same opportunity.” Tom was definitely one of these individuals. Tom’s teachings, both directly and indirectly have had an enormous impact on the United States and many parts of the World. Tom did not do an incredible amount of traveling putting on clinics, but his teachings have spread like wild fire, through many of his students.

Nearly twenty years ago, Tom said, “It will soon be twenty-seven years since I first met Ray Hunt – that has been another fortunate experience of my life. I have never experienced anyone who could pick up on the slightest clue and build on it in the right direction in such a short time.” Ray Hunt, one of Tom’s best-known students, has taken what Tom has given him and has shared it with people for over forty years. He is still going hard to this day.

What was it that Tom possessed, that not only helped people to realize how to get along
better with their horse, but to live a better life? People who worked around Tom not only said that their horsemanship improved, but they became a better person. So what was it? I believe it was a combination of things. The times that I was around Tom, I was too young to realize and appreciate the gift he had with horses. I just remember him being one of the most caring men I have ever met. He not only had a gift with animals and especially horses, but a gift with people.

Tom had an incredible memory, and a God-given ability to feel a horse and read a person. However, I believe that Tom’s greatest gift was his heart. Tom had a soft heart and that is why people and horses were drawn to him. What made Tom truly unique was that he had Christ-like qualities. I do not mean to take away from the legacy of Tom Dorrance, but the reason his teachings were successful, was because it was the way God intended it.

God told me once “If you have a little piece of God in this world you will stand out, if you get a little bigger piece of God you will be set apart, the more of God you receive in this world the more of you will depart from this world until you are no longer in this world and are with your Father in heaven.” Whether a person is a Christian or not, if they possess any of Christ’s qualities they will stand out in this world. A person that is humble, caring, patient, unselfish, and trustworthy will easily stand out in the world we live in today.

Tom could communicate with horses, but he had trouble trying to get people to find that same communication. It was only when the person’s heart changed that they could find what Tom had been trying to show them. The person had to set aside their selfish ambitions and look from the horse’s perspective. There were some things however, that Tom could not teach; “feel, timing, and balance.” These were the backbone to what Tom tried to get across to people, and without it, they could not progress. Without it, communication between horse and man is very limited.

Feel, timing, and balance cannot be comprehended from intellectual knowledge, but must be experienced. The same is true with God and words such as; revelation, manifestation, and glory. I am in my seventh year of college majoring in Equine Science and will graduate with a Masters in Equine Science. I have learned anatomy and physiology, reproduction, lameness, conformation, forages, genetics, management, and nutrition. All of these have helped me to understand the makeup of a horse and their character, but none of this has helped me to “feel” of the horse. This is something that I will only understand through experience.

We can go to church and learn the makeup of God; the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit. We can read the Bible and listen to sermons to understand the character of God; however, we will never truly know God, until we experience Him. This can only happen through the power of the Holy Spirit.

The frustration that Tom experienced in trying to help people communicate with the horse is the same frustration that God has with us. Tom says in his book, “If I could tell people, just go through the motions here, and then they could pick this up and do it, I wouldn’t do anything else, but work with people and horses; but there is something more. It is something that has to come in the unity between the horse and the rider.”
God tried to get people to have closeness with Him by going through the motions. He gave Moses a list of laws and told him exactly what they must do to have closeness with God. However, unity could not come through will power or head knowledge; it had to come through the death of Jesus Christ uniting us to the Father. By accepting Jesus into our hearts we become children of God, uniting us with the Father. Then the Holy Spirit is able to communicate the will of the Father, and He is able to direct and lead us. God leads us through the Spirit, and we are able to experience Him in greater ways the more we operate through the Spirit.

If Tom could have gotten everyone to operate through “feel,” instead of will power, they could have had the unity that Tom had with horses. However, many people had the habit of operating through will power. People would come to Tom and he would show them what was holding them back from “feeling” of the horse. They could feel what Tom was talking about, and experience closeness with their horse when they were with Tom. It made sense and felt good, but when they left his clinics they would slide back into their old way of trying to make it happen. When they were in the clinic environment it was easier to operate through feel, but when they left and returned to their jobs, the environment changed. They then had trouble keeping the soft “feel.”

This is no different than our lives with the Lord. If we go to someone who is living their life through the Spirit, they can show us what is holding us back from “feeling” the Lord. When we are with them it is easy to operate in the Holy Spirit. However, when we leave and return to our jobs we find ourselves in a different environment and slip back into our old way of doing it by our will power.

This is why Scripture tells us: “Let us not give up meeting together, as some are in the habit of doing, but let us encourage one another—and all the more as you see the Day approaching” (Hebrews 10:25). God knows that it is hard to walk in the Spirit when we are baby Christians. That is why He tells us to assemble together. “For where two or three come together in my name, there am I with them” (Matthew 18:20). God tells us when we are babies we need milk, “Brothers, I could not address you as spiritual but as worldly—mere infants in Christ. I gave you milk, not solid food, for you were not yet ready for it. Indeed, you are still not ready” (1 Corinthians 1-2). This should be the job of our pastor; a man that is acquainted with operating in the power of the Holy Spirit and can help us mature in Christ. If our pastor is only teaching on the character of God and is not helping us experience God (soft feel), our lives will often slide back into operating through our own will power.

Tom was probably one of the greatest people to learn how to experience a soft feel from, because Tom always operated with a soft feel. The results were evident with any horse that he worked, as well as the people that he helped. Tom did not just talk about the power of having feel, timing, and balance; the evidence could be seen through what he could accomplish. I did not get an opportunity to spend time learning about “feel” from Tom, however, I have learned a great deal from people that have spent time with him. It is from these people that I have seen the powerful results in their horsemanship and they have helped me experience the results that can come from “feel.” It is easy to see if someone is operating with feel, timing, and balance with their horse, because it will be evident in what they can accomplish with their horse. The same is true for someone who is operating through the Holy Spirit.
Jesus told His disciples, “I tell you the truth, anyone who has faith in me will do what I have been doing. He will do even greater things than these, because I am going to the Father” (John 14:12). Jesus told them they would do “greater works than these” because He was going to the Father and was going to send the Holy Spirit.

In Acts Jesus told His disciples, “For John baptized with water, but in a few days you will be baptized with the Holy Spirit” (Acts 1:5). “But you will receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you” (Acts 1:8).

The Holy Spirit came on the apostles, and they began to speak in other tongues “as the Spirit enabled them” (Acts 2:4). The men that had just crucified Jesus were at the Pentecost and were in disbelief of the power of God working through the Holy Spirit. Peter stood up filled with the Holy Spirit and in a few paragraphs Peter’s words cut through their hearts and they asked what they must do. Peter told them, “Repent and be baptized, every one of you, in the name of Jesus Christ for the forgiveness of your sins. And you will receive the gift of the Holy Spirit” (Acts 2:38). Scripture says that over three thousand were saved that day.

We may think that we have a tough crowd to try to get saved, but I am fairly confident we will not come across a crowd as tough as the people at the Pentecost. These were radical religious people that had just crucified Jesus. However, Peter was filled with the Holy Spirit and with God talking through him, his words pierced their hearts. “For the word of God is living and active. Sharper than any double-edged sword” (Hebrews 4:12).

The Holy Spirit brings power to our lives, and if we are walking in the Spirit, God’s power will be evident through us. “So the churches were strengthened in the faith and grew daily in numbers” (Acts 16:5). People were drawn to the early disciples because they could see the power of God on them. People were drawn to Tom because they could see the power of a soft “feel.” Scripture says, “That we will judge them by their fruit.” “Every tree that bringeth not forth good fruit is hewn down, and cast into the fire. Wherefore by their fruits ye shall know them” (Matthew 7:19-20 KJV). Jesus told His disciples when they received the Holy Ghost they would receive power. I am not talking about selfish power, but power for the kingdom of God. Jesus told them they would do greater things than these. Jesus healed the sick and raised the dead and that is what the disciples did once they received the Holy Ghost. Jesus and the disciples also possessed a supernatural love that only comes from God and the power of the Holy Spirit. This is the power that is available once we have learned to become united with God and walk in His spirit.

People were drawn to the disciples because the power of God was on them. People wanted to know what was different about them, and the disciples told them it was Jesus and the Holy Spirit living through them. They wanted to become born again and receive the Holy Spirit. In this same manner people were drawn to Tom, and wanted to learn how to “feel” of the horse.

In order to have unity with our horse, we need to learn how to operate through a “soft feel.” If not, we then try to do it through our own will power. The same is true with the Lord. In order to have unity with Him, we must learn how to let the Holy Spirit operate through us. It is when
we are not continually striving to know God more, and lose the hunger for His presence, that we find ourselves trying to do it by our own will power. If we want to know how to be united with our horse, we wouldn’t go to a professor of animal science, who has read all the books on horse behavior. Instead, we would be drawn to someone who attains unity with their horse and can communicate with them. Then they could help us communicate with our horse and eventually gain unity. The same is true in our spiritual life. When we are baby Christians, we need to make sure that we find people that are not only familiar with the character of God, but have experienced God and are acquainted with walking in the power of the Holy Spirit. People that communicate with God can help us communicate with Him and eventually we can gain unity with our heavenly Father. We can gain True Unity: Willing Communication Between God and Man.
Direction for My Ministry:
“Communication”

I teach the colt breaking classes at MSU and the biggest limiting factor I deal with teaching students, is to try to get them to “feel” and communicate with the horse. I can tell them step by step what they need to do, show them what to do, but ultimately it is between them and the horse. My goal for the class is to help them “feel” of the horse. If they can “feel” of the horse they can learn to communicate with the horse, and with time and hard work they can experience perfection and work toward true unity with their horse.

The biggest limiting factor in communicating with our horse is not experiencing “feel.” The biggest limiting factor in communicating with God is not experiencing the power of the Holy Spirit. The focus of my class is communicating with the horse and the focus of my ministry is communicating with God. I believe that God uses people in different ways. The Lord showed me a picture once of how He uses His disciples.

As I was praying once, I saw myself on top of a globe in a group huddle with Jesus and many of His disciples. When the huddle broke, we all separated and each person went a separate way. We fanned out and covered the entire the Globe. The Lord showed me that if we all went along the same path, we would not reach everyone in the world. However, by each of us going a different route, we were able to cover the entire globe. Different people are called to reach people in different ways. The direction that the Lord has given me is to help people communicate with God by helping them communicate with their horse. The focus of my ministry is to not only teach people about God, but to help people communicate with God. I received direction for my ministry through a vision that the Lord gave me.

As I was praying once, the Lord showed me a picture of me at the house I grew up in at Homedale, Idaho. Growing up we always had tons of horses and they were always getting out. They would get out of the pens or pastures behind our house, travel through our driveway, by our house and onto a busy highway. We would go running around them on horseback, on foot, in a pickup, or however else we could, to try to push them back down the driveway and into a corral. Once they were in a corral, we could catch them and put them back into the pens where they belonged.

In the vision I saw the same scenario. The horses had gotten out and I tried to run around them. I ran down the road and eventually got around them. When a horse gets out, they are usually buzzed up wanting to run and play and it is usually hard to keep them from running the opposite direction from where you are standing. Horses are very easy to move, sometimes too easy.

However, as I started to drive them back to the house, they started turning into calves and eventually sheep that were all balled up and wouldn’t move at all. They formed a huge ball right in the middle of the highway and I could not drive them anywhere. I wanted to get them off the road so a car or pickup did not fly down the road and hit one of them. I was concerned for their
safety and did not want any casualties.

During the transformation from horses to sheep, I tried to push one of the calves to try to get them to move. The calf did not want to be touched and kicked at me. The more I pushed the calves, the faster they turned into sheep. I had a whip in my hand and started cracking the whip for all I was worth. I was trying to get them off the road as quickly as I could. I cracked my whip until I cracked off the popper. The popper creates the noise coming from the whip and once I had cracked it off, the whip had no effect. After struggling with the sheep for all I was worth, I was beginning to get worn out. I quit pushing and looked up for a minute exhausted and out of options.

When I looked up I saw a man come running from a house that sat right next to the road that all the sheep were on. He told me we could push them into some pens that he had at his house. He had feed and water that we could feed them, and they would be safe from the dangers on the road. He said that there were too many to move them all at once. After they had gotten some food and water and had calmed down we could take them over in little bunches and with better control. With the little bunches they wouldn’t get balled up again and get lost and frustrated.

As we began to push them off the road, I heard some people talking about me in the distance. They were commenting on how loud and effective the crack of my whip used to be. The crack used to come out of nowhere and be so loud that it sounded like a rifle shot. The crack would get everyone’s attention wondering where the loud noise came from. When I used to crack my whip, I would not crack it very often, but when I did, it would startle the animals and they would flee. However, the two people were commenting on how I had been so aggressive with my whip that it lost its power and the animals became numb to it.

The Lord showed me that the pasture symbolized the kingdom of heaven. This is where we belong and this is where God wants us all to return to. Adam and Eve had a close and intimate relationship with God in the Garden of Eden. They were safe and secure in the presence of God and did not have to fear death and suffering. They were safe until Satan opened the gate to paradise and ran mankind out onto the busy road to fear suffering and death.

When we are born into this world, we are born onto a busy road; into a world of sin. God loves His children and it is not His will that any should perish, **“The Lord is not slow in keeping his promise, as some understand slowness. He is patient with you, not wanting anyone to perish, but everyone to come to repentance” (2 Peter 3:9).** God wants to gather all His children into His presence and take them to safety in the kingdom of heaven, **“I am the gate; whoever enters through me will be saved. He will come in and go out, and find pasture. The thief comes only to steal and kill and destroy; I have come that they may have life, and have it to the full. I am the good shepherd. The good shepherd lays down his life for the sheep” (John 10:9-11).** It is the job of Christians to gather as many of God’s lost sheep stranded on the road and lead them to safety in God’s kingdom.

The Lord showed me in the vision that I need to be careful that I do not try to push His lost sheep too hard or they will become numb to my voice, confused, and resistant. The animals made a transformation from free-moving horses to balled-up sheep. Often the harder we try to
push a lost soul, the quicker they make this transformation. Animals are just like people. The more we try to push them without it being their idea, they either shut down or they get on the fight. Either way we are unable to move them.

The Lord showed me I do not need to get into philosophical and religious debates trying to persuade and push people into the kingdom of God. I need to be patient and wait, and speak when the Holy Spirit gives me a word to say to someone. Through the power of the Holy Spirit, my words will be like the sound of a rifle crack coming off a whip. When a whip is cracked in the mountains the sound echoes back and forth off the mountains, enhancing the volume and giving power to the initial crack. The same thing takes place when a person speaks the words given to them by the Holy Spirit. The words bounce back and forth off the person’s heart returning with greater volume. The Lord showed me I need to be careful that I do not try to force the whip to crack, to make a loud noise, or pretty soon I will crack off the popper and it will have no effect. I will then no longer have the echo from the mountains and the roaring sound of a 30-30; instead my words will sound like a measly pellet gun going off.

The man’s whose house I pushed the sheep to was the Holy Spirit. He was able to offer the lost and confused sheep safety, comfort, and nourishment. The Lord showed me that it is not my job to try to drive people back to the kingdom of God, but only introduce them to the Holy Spirit. The Holy Spirit is able to comfort them and offer them nourishment. Then with the help of the Holy Spirit, I can try to lead them back to God’s kingdom. The Holy Spirit is called the comforter. “But the Comforter, which is the Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send in my name, he shall teach you all things, and bring all things to your remembrance, whatsoever I have said unto you” (John 14:26 KJV). The Holy Spirit begins to soften their heart giving them comfort like they have never felt. Once the Holy Spirit has softened their heart and prepared their heart to hear, then the words that the Lord gives me will cut right through their heart; changing their lives, “For the word of God is quick, and powerful, and sharper than any two edged sword, piercing even to the dividing asunder of soul and spirit, and of the joints and marrow, and is a discerner of the thoughts and intents of the heart” (Hebrews 4:12).

I will give you an example of the power of the “Comforter” by using an analogy of loading a horse in a trailer for the first time. Often when a person tries to load a horse into a trailer for the first time the horse will feel confined, threatened, and unsure. If too much pressure is put on by the person leading the horse, the horse will pull away and try to run from the trailer.

Many times when a person leads a horse up to a trailer the first time, they will come up to it fine. They will come right up next to it and then stop to check it out. This is where lots of people make a mistake. When the horse hesitates the person tries to pull the horse into the trailer. The horse does not trust the trailer and when the lead rope comes tight, the horse feels confined and pulls back trying to get away. Where people make the mistake is whenever the horse gets close to the trailer, the person tries to hurry up and pull the horse into the trailer. Eventually the horse learns that the closer they get to the trailer, the more pressure is put on them, and eventually the horse will go nowhere near the trailer.

Under a different scenario, instead of one person trying to lead the horse into the trailer, two
people are working together. One person leads the horse and the other person drives the horse from behind. All the person leading the horse tries to do is to keep the horse pointed to the trailer and the person behind does all the work. Whenever the horse is looking or thinking about the trailer the horse feels comfort and whenever the horse is looking or thinking somewhere else, the person behind puts pressure on the horse. Eventually the horse will decide that it is more comfortable to be looking and thinking about the trailer and will eventually jump in the trailer for comfort and relief.

The trailer symbolizes the church. It appears to have constraints, to be confining and is very intimidating to a horse with lots of self-preservation or a person living a worldly life. The person leading the horse is us. We try to lead people to the church; a trailer that is trying to haul people to the kingdom of God. The focus of the church should be Jesus Christ; the only way to heaven. He is the cornerstone on which every church should be built. The truck pulling the trailer is our heavenly Father. He pulls us out of the valleys and over the mountaintops, to His kingdom up above. The person driving from behind is the Holy Spirit. The Holy Spirit offers comfort and relief. Whenever our focus is on Jesus Christ (the trailer) we experience pure peace and joy, drawing us deeper into Him. The only thing we can do is lead people to the trailer (Christ). It is up to the Holy Spirit to do the rest.

How the horse views the trailer all depends on our approach to the trailer. If as the horse gets closer, he experiences relief, he will want to jump in. However, if as he gets closer, he feels pressure, he will want to run away. When we bring people to church, if we start pulling on them telling them what they must do and how they must do it, they will pull back and want nothing to do with church ever again. However, when we lead people to church, if they are drawn in by the Holy Spirit, and see Jesus Christ and experience comfort and relief, they will jump into the trailer accepting Jesus Christ as their Lord and Savior, and it will be hard to keep them from the comfort and peace they experience in Him.

Revelations about Teaching

The Lord showed me once that trying to teach somebody that does not want to be taught, is like trying to feed a baby calf that does not want to drink from a bottle. We can try to force them to drink the milk; we can put the nipple in their mouth, and pump the milk down their throat. However, if the calf has decided he does not want to drink the milk, all he has to do is not swallow. The more we fight with the calf, the more resentful he becomes and he wants nothing to do with us. The calf may be dying and in desperate need of the milk, but if the calf will not swallow the milk, we cannot force him to drink from the bottle. Sometimes we just need to be more patient and give the calf more time. Other times we have to take the calf off all food and water and nearly starve and thirst the calf to death, until he will finally drink. Then when he has nothing left, he will begin to drink the milk.

The same thing is true with people. When they have become hungry and thirsty enough, they will finally drink. However, until they have reached that point, much like the calf, the more we try to force them to drink, the more resentful they become. Sometimes they have to reach rock bottom before they are willing to listen. The very sad reality is, sometimes baby calves die because they will not drink. Sometimes people go to hell, or never grow to know God, because
they will not listen to the truth. “I am come that they might have life, and that they might have it more abundantly (John 10:10).” The “life” comes from accepting Jesus Christ as Lord and Savior, and the “more abundantly” comes from the Holy Spirit.

The Lord showed me that presenting the Holy Spirit to Christians is like presenting a bucket of grain to a colt. Christian churches believe in the Trinity; the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit. However, there are many denominations within the Christian church, and the primary reasons there are so many are inter-related; how they worship God and their belief in the Holy Spirit. This is why God has shown me to present the Holy Spirit like a bucket of grain. How people perceive the Holy Spirit is largely based on the doctrine of the church they attend. Some churches are very charismatic and some churches are more conservative. There are going to be differences in how we worship the Lord. If there were differences among the twelve disciples, then we can expect differences among ourselves. However, many times head knowledge and doctrine get in the way of a heart change and experiencing the Holy Spirit.

This is why the Lord showed me to present the Holy Spirit to people like a bucket of grain; letting them taste Him and experiencing His goodness. Once they have experienced Him, and the Holy Spirit has touched their heart giving them confidence in Him, then we can discuss doctrines. Then we can try to discuss things they may not have believed before. Like a colt, once they have experienced the goodness of the grain, then the more we move towards them, we will not scare them away. However, if as soon as they get close to the grain and think about taking a bite, we start moving quickly, we ignite their self-preservation. We will often scare them away.

I have often done this with people. Instead of telling of my experiences and sitting back and letting them taste of the Holy Spirit on their own, as soon as they get close, I try to reach out and touch them; I try to help them just a little bit more. I keep saying little things to try and help them experience the Lord. I get so excited and instead of being still, speaking only the words that the Lord has given to me to speak, I start babbling along and pushing them way too much. Eventually, just like a man that is moving too much when a colt is coming up for the first time to get a bite of grain; I scare them off.

I am definitely a charismatic Christian. However, I need to be careful that I am speaking only the words the Lord has given me concerning the Holy Spirit and not speaking my own words out of excitement. If I am talking too much and not speaking only the words that the Spirit has given me, then I may say something that does not line up with their doctrine, “But avoid foolish questions and genealogies, and contentions, and strivings about the law; for they are unprofitable and vain (Titus 3:9)” and like the man moving the grain bucket, scare them off. “My purpose is that they may be encouraged in heart and united in love, so that they may have the full riches of complete understanding, in order that they may know the mystery of God, namely, Christ” (Colossians 2:2). There is unity in Christ and all are united in the presence of God. “Endeavoring to keep the unity of the Spirit in the bond of peace. There is one body, and one Spirit, even as ye are called in one hope of your calling” (Ephesians 4:3-4 KJV). It is important that we do not get into religious debates, but get into the presence of God All Mighty and the Holy Spirit will work out all the differences, “Let us therefore, as many as be perfect be thus minded; and if anything ye be otherwise minded,
God shall reveal even this unto you” (Philippians 3:15 KJV). There is only perfection in Christ Jesus; if we are in Christ we are no longer in ourselves and there will be no more division.
III. 3rd Obstacle – Obeying Commands

3 Main reasons horses don’t obey commands

1) Self-Preservation/ Flesh
   - Due to lack of trust

I) Need salvation 2) Grow in the Lord/ Kill the flesh

2) Disobedience (bitter resistance against commands)
   - Due to false teaching,

Operating through unwilling submission (Religion)

3) Lack of Understanding/ Communication
   - Horse needs more time, patience, and teaching,

Learn to hear God’s voice, Holy Spirit (helper/teacher)

We must grow and mature in the Lord if we ever hope to have communication with God; not living our life solely in the flesh. If we do not have an intimate relationship with Jesus Christ, and instead try to serve God through religion and unwilling submission, we are almost certain to fall into disobedience.

Growing in the Lord

Below is something that the Lord showed me about communicating and growing in the Lord.

When we accept the Lord into our heart, we have a new creation living inside us; this is the spirit of God. “For ye have not received the spirit of bondage again to fear; but ye have received the Spirit of adoption, whereby we cry, Abba, Father” (Romans 8:15 KJV). Just like when a new creation is brought into this world as a baby, they must be nourished. When our babies are born, if they are not fed, they will die. The same is true for the Spirit living inside us. The Lord’s Prayer says, “Give us this day our daily bread.” The Lord expects us to be fed daily, just as a baby must be fed daily, if they are expected to grow.

We feed our babies milk while they are infants, and as they mature, they are able to eat solid food. I think there are too many Christians that live their life on milk, being fed only once a week, when they go to church. If a baby only ate milk once a week, they would die; the same is true with us. When God’s spirit inside us does not get fed, it becomes weaker and weaker, until finally, the spark that we once had for the Lord begins to feel dead, and we become empty and lost.

If our babies never matured and grew up, we would think there was something wrong with them. If they did not grow by the week, month and year, we would seek a physician to find the answer. If we are not growing in the Lord, we to need to seek a physician; the Holy Spirit. We expect our babies to drink milk, graduate on to solid food and grow up. As they grow up we are able to have a relationship with them. We can talk to them, have a conversation, they are able to
follow us, and we are able to lead them. If they never grew and matured, we would be limited in our relationship. The same is true for us and our heavenly Father.

The Lord showed me once in prayer a beautiful long-stemmed, red rose. It was perfect in every way and its fragrance and beauty were evident to everyone around it. He showed me how the rose did not become this way all at once. It started out as a little seed that was planted into the ground and with water and sunlight, it was able to grow. It was able to sprout and grow roots that worked their way into the ground. Once the roots had a base, it then grew out of the ground, and we were able to see the beginning of the rose that was planted.

The little plant needed water and sunlight daily so that its roots could dig further into the ground, gaining more nutrients from the earth. The more the flower’s roots sprawled out, the more it was able to grow, until it grew into a beautiful rose. If at any time during its growing process it failed to get water and sunlight, it would have become sickly looking and eventually died. It was during the growing process that the water and sunlight were the most crucial for the maturing of the flower.

Our lives are like this rose. Some never get the seed, some have the seed planted but have never grown out of the ground, and some grow for a ways but never reach maturity. The beautiful petals we see at the top of the rose, is how God views our lives. If it is bright and beautiful and the fragrance fills the room, it is evident to all who come in contact with us.

The stem symbolizes support. Ultimately, all the support we need comes from God, but our brothers and sisters in Christ help to make up this support. The roots that grow into the ground symbolize our knowledge. Growing in the Scriptures supplies us with nutrients to grow. The water that is so crucial for our growing is the Holy Spirit. Without this, we are not able to sprout into the ground and we will never be able to grow.

The light that comes from above is revelation from God Almighty. We wait in eager expectation for God to reveal Himself to us, whether it be through Scripture or in the Spirit, it is crucial for growth. The leaves that grow off the stem are the things we do for others. The more we do for others, out of selfless acts, the more leaves we grow and we are able to soak in more sunlight.

Often we will find withered, dying petals that have crept their way into our flower and are taking away some of its beauty. We must seek the gardener, who is the Father, to remove these petals. Upon request, He removes them immediately and we return to the beautiful, perfect state we were in.

When the Lord originally spoke to me through the analogy of the flower, He used the flower to show me how Amaia and I were to grow in the Lord. He showed me what a husband and wife must do to ensure that God views our marriage like the beautiful petals of a long-stemmed rose; the petals making up the different parts of Amaia and me. He then applied the analogy to the church. Each of the petals makes up an individual of the church. By ourselves we are nothing special, but put many together and we make a beautiful rose. Whether we apply the rose to ourselves, to a marriage, or to the church, we all grow in the same manner.
In order for babies to grow, they need nourishment and the same is true for a flower. We expect this in earthly creations and we are willing to make sure that they get it. We can see the process of them growing and we can tell when they need more nourishing. The Spirit living inside us is a new creation and we should expect it to need nourishment as well. We should pay attention to the joy that we receive with the Lord, and as it fades, go back to Him to get filled up.

If we would do this, we would not find ourselves hungering and thirsting for happiness and looking everywhere except to Him to provide it. He can provide His sons and daughters with everything they need in this life; just as He did His son Jesus Christ. If He provided it for His son who lived on this earth, He can provide it for His son who lives inside us.
Resistance in Obeying Commands

#1 Reason = Horse hasn’t submitted to man’s will

Levels of “resistance” (Questioning commands)
Resistance = Flesh

Agreement – Immediately obey commands with no hesitation.
Disagreement – Hesitate in obeying commands.
Arguing – Know you should obey, do not at first, but end up obeying.
Fighting – Do not want to obey commands and become resentful.

God’s Commands (Exodus 20:2-17)

These are the Ten Commandments that God gave to Moses, and that all of God’s children were supposed to follow. Jesus then came to fulfill the law. “Do not think that I have come to abolish the Law or the Prophets; I have not come to abolish them but to fulfill them. I tell you the truth, until heaven and earth disappear, not the smallest letter, not the least stroke of a pen, will by any means disappear from the Law until everything is accomplished. Anyone who breaks one of the least of these commandments and teaches others to do the same will be called least in the kingdom of heaven, but whoever practices and teaches these commands will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. For I tell you that unless your righteousness surpasses that of the Pharisees and the teachers of the law, you will certainly not enter the kingdom of heaven” (Matthew 5:17-20).

1) Thou shalt have no other Gods before me.
2) Thou shalt not make unto thee any graven image (Idol).
3) Thou shalt not bow down thy self to them nor serve them: For I am a jealous God.
4) Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord your God in vain.
5) Remember the Sabbath day and keep it holy.
6) Honor thy father and thy mother.
7) Thou shalt not kill.

“You have heard that it was said to the people long ago, ‘Do not murder, and anyone who murders will be subject to judgment.’ But I tell you that anyone who is angry with his brother will be subject to judgment” (Matthew 5:21-22).

8) Thou shalt not commit adultery.

“You have heard that it was said, ‘Do not commit adultery.’ But I tell you that anyone who looks at a woman lustfully has already committed adultery with her in his heart” (Matthew 5:27-28).
9) Thou shalt not covet.

Covet – primitive root; to wish for: covet, (greatly) desire, be desirous, long, lust (after).

10) Thou shalt not bear false witness.

(Lie)

Jesus simplifies God’s commandments for us in Matthew 22:37-40 putting God’s commands into two commandments. “Jesus replied: ‘Love the Lord your God with all your heart and with all your soul and with all your mind.’ This is the first and greatest commandment. And the second is like it: ‘Love your neighbor as yourself.’ All the Law and the Prophets hang on these two commandments.”

In order to complete a job the horse must obey our commands. In order for God to use us, we must obey His commands. So how do we obey His commands? How do we get our horse to obey our commands?

This is where the two thought processes come in. What is the goal, job completion, or perfect unity? If there is perfect unity we will obey the commands. The same is true with our horse.

The older I get, the more I work with young horses, and the more God teaches me about life, the importance of willing submission becomes increasingly evident. I have tried to obey God’s commands, through will power, because I know that I should and I know that my life will be better if I do. However, if I have not willingly submitted every ounce of my life to Him, I find that I enter into a battle of what I want to do and what I know I should do. This is a fight between my flesh and the spirit of God, which is living inside me. “But I see another law in my members, warring against the law of my mind, and bringing me into captivity to the law of sin which is in my members” (Romans 7:23). I often lose this fight, and have learned that it is awfully hard to obey God’s commands solely through will power. A person must willingly submit their entire life to God and let the power of the Holy Spirit work through us to obey God’s commands. Satan is going to try to use tricks that appeal to our flesh to get our focus off of God and keep us from obeying God’s commands. If we have not willingly submitted to God and laid our entire life at His feet, Satan is then able to convince our flesh to disobey God’s commands and get us off track.

I find the same thing to be true when working with our horses. I will use an example of loping circles. Circles and spins are a good tool to test the level of communication between the horse and a person. The rate at which a horse is able to progress is determined by the horse’s ability to stay on a set line and speed; whether it is straight or curved, walking or running. The measure of how well trained a horse is, is determined by the rider’s ability to control the horse. It is not too difficult to get a horse to travel in a straight line, but to get a green colt to lope a circle on a loose rein or turn around on a loose rein, the horse has to be listening to the rider and have submitted their will. The same is true with us. It is easy to obey God when our life is on the straight and narrow, but when things start getting complicated and we start
getting pulled different directions; it gets harder to follow God.

A horse is the same as us, they are going to bounce back and forth between listening to us (feel/Spirit) and paying attention to everything else that is around them (distractions/ flesh). When a horse is more concerned about the distractions around them than listening to the commands of the rider, it does not do any good to try to force the horse to obey the commands. This will only make the horse resentful against the commands and ultimately the rider. Often braces and strongholds will be formed that are very hard to get rid of in the future.

Most of the time I start working on circles around five to ten rides on a horse. Often I will work with a horse on loping circles, and at the end of the ride we will be in agreement and loping very good circles. However, if I try to get on them the next day and pick up where we left off, I usually run into some resentment. In the past I used to force the horse to obey my commands and lope the circle, but it seemed like our ride was based more on disagreements and arguments than on perfect unity and total agreement. At the end of the ride the horse would be loping the circle, but it felt like I had to force him to stay in the circle instead of him wanting to lope the circle.

Or, the horse had lost some of the softness that I had at the end of the ride the day before. The problem with this scenario is that I was trying to force the horse to obey my commands, without him being fully submitted to my will. This, in turn, made the horse resentful to me, and the unity that I had earlier started to fade, and he started to obey me through unwilling submission (religion).

To correct this problem, a person needs to realize that although the horse had submitted his will the day before, it was a new day and each day we must gain willing submission before we can teach them. Four things are needed in order for a horse to obey our commands: willing submission, good communication, a solid foundation of maneuvers, and a balanced direction to life ratio. If a horse is lacking in willing submission and communication we can strengthen these by working on the foundation of maneuvers and balancing the direction to life ratio. The most important maneuvers in young horses are the hindquarters (life) and suppleness through the loin and poll (direction). It is the hindquarters that drive the horse’s self-preservation to run, buck, rear, and even flip or elevate their head. By submitting the hindquarters (stage 1) the horses will no longer be driven by self-preservation and all the problems I have just mentioned will leave.

The horse is no different from us; although one day we might have been in perfect unity, a young horse is still filled with all kind of worries, cares, and interests (flesh) that keep them from obeying our commands. To fix this problem, a person must build the foundation; direction and life. If they are concerned about their buddies, want to run, buck, and play instead of listening to us, or are scared of silly little things, then build the foundation; tip their nose and disengage their hindquarters. At first the horse will more than likely not be very soft because they are concerned about the environment, but the more time you spend working with the horse through feel, timing, and balance, they will receive revelation that it is easier to listen to you than to worry about the cares of the world. Once the horse has begun to listen to you (willing submission) then you can try to lope circles or use other things to build their foundation. The most important thing is direction and life; they must have a balanced ratio.
I have found the same thing to be true in my life. If I start the day without first willingly submitting to God and attaining perfect unity, I often end up doing one of two things. I make it through the day and obey God’s commands (loping the circle), however it was a constant battle with my flesh, and I am tired, stressed, and worn out. Or, I try to obey God’s commands, but my flesh takes over and I have a “run away” from God’s will. The same thing happens to our horse when we try to force our commands on them; they end up submitting unwillingly or they rebel against our commands all together.

However, there is a better way: Perfect unity, perfection. This is attained by direction and life. If we feel like that colt that is full of the flesh, worrying about everything, concerned with our own affairs, and our interest seem to be everywhere but obeying God’s commands, then we need to build the foundation; direction/Scripture, life/Holy Spirit. Read Scripture and let the Holy Spirit start to soften you to God’s will, giving you a new perspective on life, in that you are not in control and everything is in God’s hands. He cares for you, wants the absolute best for you, and wants to communicate with you. Then as we willingly start to submit to His will, we start to receive revelation and God is able to communicate with us, taking us further into maturity. Then we face the day in perfect unity, and God is able to direct us and teach us as the day progresses.

Resistance “Killing the Flesh”

In order for the spirit of Christ to grow inside us and become changed into Christ’s image, we must kill off our old self, “Knowing this, that our old man is crucified with him, that the body of sin might be destroyed, that henceforth we should not serve sin” (Romans 6:6). Our flesh and our spirit are at war with one another and it is impossible to please the Lord if we are living in the flesh. Our flesh is made up of selfish desires and worldly concerns and affairs, keeping us in sin and out of God’s will.

However, the Spirit living inside us wants nothing more than to please God and stay in His will. The Spirit cries out “Abba, Father,” wanting to know God and be close to Him, “Because you are sons, God sent the Spirit of his Son into our hearts, the Spirit who calls out, ‘Abba, Father’ ” (Galatians 4:6). We need to kill off the flesh and learn to live in the Spirit. The flesh is what causes resistance in our life, keeping us out of God’s will and it is the flesh (worries, doubt, distrust, fears) in the horse that keeps them from staying in our will.

It is only by killing the flesh (resistance) that we have any hope of gaining perfection in our life, or with our horse. Often we may think we are living our life in the will of God, but tribulation will test where our heart truly is deep down inside. God will not give us more than we can handle, “No temptation has seized you except what is common to man. And God is faithful; he will not let you be tempted beyond what you can bear. But when you are tempted, he will also provide a way out so that you can stand up under it” (1 Corinthians 10:13), but he wants to take us into perfection. He will let tribulation fall upon us so He can kill off more of our flesh and we can grow closer to Him.

The same is true with our horses. If all we did was walk around the round pen and went for
little rides, never asking more out of our horses, rather than bringing the tempo up and letting them run into a little tribulation, we would never fully get to the center of what was holding our horses back from becoming truly one with us. We would never have the opportunity to achieve a deeper level of communication and take them further to maturity. I can take a green colt and in a few rides have them loping in a straight line and good to ride down the road. However, this will not bring perfection between us. We need to give our horse a job; opening a gate, loping circles, working cows. It is in these higher stress situations that our horse runs into a little tribulation and we kill off the flesh, bringing them closer to perfection.

The round pen offers security and comfort, and usually does not have a lot of foreign objects that may cause fear and doubt in your horse. We can get them soft and comfortable in the round pen, but if we stay in there too long, they will get numb and dull. We need to get them out in the real world and have them run into a little tribulation. They may get tight, confused, and scared, but if we do not force them into a panic and are there to offer them support and comfort, they will come back to us, and our relationship will grow to new heights.

The church is like our round pen. It gives us comfort and security and teaches us foundational truths that we can build on. It also keeps us under control and from getting into a wreck if things get a little wild. It is needed to gain the first level of submission and to begin the second level of submission. However, once we have gained the first level and started the second level (direction and life on their back), if we stay in the round pen too long, and don’t apply the truths we learned from the round pen to the real world, we will get numb and dull (like the Pharisees). If we never give life to our direction and apply it to jobs, our softness, and our good level of communication will start to degenerate.

If we never get out of the comfort and security of the pen and learn to build on the foundation through jobs, often running into tribulation and killing off the flesh, learning to stay in the Spirit, we will never reach maturity. The round pen is a starting place for perfection, but the only way to reach any level of perfection is to open the gate and get outside. It is by getting in the real world that we start to build foundational truths between the rider and horse, and between God and man. It is by getting in the real world that we learn to operate through willing submission, strengthen our communication, gaining foundational truths through building on our foundation of maneuvers and learning to balance the direction to life ratio.
IV. 4th Obstacle – Completing the Job

*Resistance is what keeps us from completing the job*

Our flesh resists the will of God; we must kill our flesh and die to our self. Pick up our cross and follow Him.

4 Things Need To Be Established To Prevent Resistance

A) Willing submission  
B) Good communication  
C) Balanced direction to life ratio  
D) Solid foundation of maneuvers  
    1) Mechanical  
    2) Mental

_Willing Submission_

It does not do any good to try to force a horse to obey our commands if they have not willingly submitted first. The horse will be resentful against the command; the same is true with people. There must be a heart change before we can expect obedience.

**Turning to God: In the World, Not of the World**

Once we have turned to God and accepted Him into our heart, we then spend the rest of our lives in two different places. The first people born into a world of sin were Cain and Abel. I think we can learn a lot from them, because we find ourselves in both of their shoes. The oldest was Cain and he was a tiller of the ground, and younger brother was Abel and he was a keeper of sheep. Both of them were trying to serve God and work in this world.

However, one of them had it easy and the other had it tough. Abel was a “keeper” of sheep. Keeper in Hebrew is translated as – to tend, to rule, to associate with (as a friend), companion, keep company, friend. Cain was a “tiller” of the ground. Tiller in Hebrew is translated as – to work, to serve, to enslave. Cain obviously got the shorter end of the stick as it is better “to rule” than “to enslave.”

God sent me to Texas to show me the meaning of Cain and Abel. I went to Texas to ride some colts for a cutting trainer. He was a Christian man and my dad thought it would be good to do some fellowshipping with him. I was trying to get over my mono and was standing on faith that I was healed. When I arrived in Texas I did not do much riding.

I spent most of my time picking stalls and driving a tractor leveling ground. I spent at least an hour at night, and a half an hour in the morning reading my Bible. I thought about God all day no matter what I was doing. I was putting in long days and I could feel myself getting a little tired, having not a lot of strength from the mono. However, God was teaching me so much, I
gave little thought to the undesirable jobs, and that I was getting a little worn down. I was thinking about God and the plans He had for my life. I would get so excited that I had plenty of energy to get through the day.

After a few weeks, I called my dad and told him how it had been going. I told him what I had been doing, and he was a little irritated. He was worried about me and my health, and that I was not doing the job that I went down there to do. He had gone out of his way to help his friend and he thought it would be a good experience for me. However, he wasn’t using me to ride horses and we had horses at home that needed to be ridden. (The cutting trainer is a great guy and was not trying to take advantage of anybody; he was only trying to get done the work that needed done). After I got off the phone with my dad, I started thinking about the undesirable jobs and that I could be doing something else.

The joy that I had left and I started to get tired. My joy with Christ did not leave because of my dad, but the things he said out of concern, made me think about the job, instead of God. Within two days I was starting to get sick and my side began to hurt again. I went from focusing only on God, to focusing mainly on the undesirable jobs and how I could have been doing something else more pleasant.

The same thing happened to Cain. “And in process of time it came to pass, that Cain brought of the fruit of the ground an offering unto the LORD. And Abel, he also brought of the firstlings of his flock and of the fat thereof. And the LORD had respect unto Abel and to his offering: But unto Cain and to his offering he had not respect. And Cain was very wroth, and his countenance fell. And the LORD said unto Cain, Why art thou wroth? and why is thy countenance fallen? If thou doest well, shalt thou not be accepted? and if thou doest not well, sin lieth at the door. And unto thee shall be his desire, and thou shalt rule over him” (Genesis 4:3-7 KJV).

If people were living to be 900 years old and the Scripture says, “And in process of time it came to pass. . .” I do not think that after day two of tilling the ground Cain’s heart changed toward the Lord. It was “over a process of time,” and could have been weeks, months, and probably years. Also, if Cain would have been evil from the beginning God wouldn’t have let him stay in His presence.

It wasn’t until he became “wroth” and his “countenance” had fallen, that he brought God an unworthy sacrifice. That is when we see sin creep in. Cain had a tougher job than Abel. He became wroth and let his countenance fall. Wroth means – to grow warm; to blaze up of anger, zeal, or jealousy. Countenance has the same meaning as presence – the face as the part that turns, to turn, to face, appear, look.

Cain stopped looking toward God, and started to think about how undesirable his job was and how his brother’s job was so easy. Once he stopped looking toward God, he began to lose his zeal for the Lord. He became jealous of his brother, and became angry with the Lord. When it came time to bring the sacrifice before the Lord, his heart was not in the right place and God did not accept him.
Having been bitter and angry toward God, Cain did not repent and turn back to God, and Satan was able to enter into him and take control of him. “And Cain talked with Abel his brother: and it came to pass, when they were in the field, that Cain rose up against Abel his brother, and slew him. And the LORD said unto Cain, Where is Abel thy brother? And he said, I know not: Am I my brother's keeper?” (Genesis 4:8-9 KJV).

Scripture says that we are to be as living sacrifices. “Therefore, I urge you, brothers, in view of God's mercy, to offer your bodies as living sacrifices, holy and pleasing to God — this is your spiritual act of worship” (Romans 12:1). He wants all of us and He will not settle for only part of us. “But you ask, ‘How have we defiled you?’ ‘By saying that the LORD's table is contemptible. When you bring blind animals for sacrifice, is that not wrong? When you sacrifice crippled or diseased animals, is that not wrong? Try offering them to your governor! Would he be pleased with you? Would he accept you?’” (Malachi 1:7-8). God is not happy when we do not sacrifice our life and give Him our all, just like God wasn’t happy with Cain and his sacrifice.

When things are going good and God is blessing you, it is easy to be happy with God. It is when things get tough that we start to question God. When you turn to God, He will give you blessings in this world, but He does not want you to be in love with this world. That is why He gives us earthly blessings for a time, but also wants to give us heavenly blessings. He wants us to be more concerned about heavenly blessing than earthly blessings. “**Do not store up for yourselves treasures upon earth, where moth and rust doth corrupt, and where thieves break through and steal. But lay up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where neither moth nor rust doth corrupt, and where thieves do not break through nor steal. For where your treasure is, there will your heart be also**” (Matthew 6:19-21).

Therefore, we must not look to the world, but look to the heavens. This is why He asks us to give things up that are binding us to worldly affairs. God will ask us to give Him control of our lives and anything standing between God and us. This may be pride, a habit, a business, friends, the need for control in our lives, or anything else we turn to besides God. We are to give up living our own life and let Him lead us to paradise.

Many times we will be living our life like Abel and God will be blessing us, then He will ask us to give something up. When we don’t obey Him, He will make our lives seem like we are enslaved, like Cain. This is not God punishing us. He wants us to give Him our entire life so He can transform us into His image and reward us with a crown in heaven (1 Corinthians 9:25, Philippians 4:1, 1 Thessalonians 2:19, 2 Timothy 4:8, James 1:12, 1 Peter 5:4). God wants to use us here on earth and if we are still trying to control our lives, He cannot use us.

*If you have a little piece of God in this world you will stand out. If you get a little bigger piece of God, you will be set apart. The more you receive of God in this world, the more of you will depart from this world, until you are no longer in this world, and are with the Father in heaven.*

When my Grandpa Ace Black was becoming sicker with cancer and his flesh was starting to die, he said he talked to Jesus and saw angels. Jesus tells us that we must die to ourselves. If we
have accepted Jesus and we die, our spirit goes to heaven. The same is true while we are still breathing. The more we die to our flesh (the world), the more God can reveal Himself. This is what my Grandpa experienced as his flesh was dying. He was no longer of this world, but he was about his Father’s business. “How is it that you sought me? Wist ye not that I would be about my fathers business” (Luke 2:49).

When you find yourself in Cain’s situation, and you feel like God is being unfair, remember to keep your eyes on Him, and continually seek Him for answers and comfort. Once you stop looking to God and start thinking about the circumstances and how unfair it is, you open the door for Satan to come in.

Once you have lost your trust in God and you allow Satan to come in telling you lies, people will do things they never thought they were capable of doing. This is because they are being led by Satan and he is able to blind people to the truth; what is right and what is wrong. I do not think that Cain, a loyal and righteous man who once served God, would have thought that he would be capable of killing his brother and then lying, and disrespecting God. However, Satan led him to do the unthinkable.

After Cain had let sin creep into his life and he killed his brother and lied to God, God sent him out of His presence and into vagrancy and a land of exile and wandering. “So Cain went out from the LORD’s presence and lived in the land of Nod, east of Eden” (Genesis 4:16). Eden in Hebrew comes from a word meaning – pleasure, to be soft or pleasant, to live voluptuously, house of pleasure. Nod in Hebrew means – vagrancy, exile wandering, to waver, wander, flee, disappear, and taunt. When we are in God’s presence we are living in Eden, but after we have sinned He kicks us out into the land of Nod.

You may say, “I have never done anything as bad as Cain, I have never killed anyone.” Jesus tells us, “You have heard that it was said to the people long ago, ‘Do not murder, and anyone who murders will be subject to judgment.’ But I tell you that anyone who is angry with his brother will be subject to judgment” (Matthew 5:21-22). If we are angry with our brother, we are subject to judgment. In this sense we are all guilty. Once you have stopped thinking about God and allowed yourself to focus on an undesirable situation, it is then that Satan will cause you to sin. Do not keep on sinning, or Satan will take control of your life.

Ask God to forgive you, for your sins to be washed in His blood, and give Him control of your life. Then Satan will no longer have any control of your life. Then, you can enter back into Eden and can live voluptuously, in the house of pleasure. God created a perfect world, a world without sin, and one where we can walk and talk with God. It was in this world that we could be one with God and one with the animals; Jesus died to restore that which was taken.
4 Things Need To Be Established To Prevent Resistance

A) Willing submission
B) **Good communication**
C) Balanced direction to life ratio
D) Solid foundation of maneuvers
   - total control of the
     1) Head and Neck
     2) Shoulders
     3) Hindquarters

A horse will not be able to obey the command if he does not understand it. Many times confusion will be mistaken for disobedience, when in reality the horse just needs more time and patience to understand what the person wants. God communicates to us through the Holy Spirit. We need to let Him teach us. It is easy to get confused with different religious beliefs and doctrines; let God teach you.

I am constantly reminded of the importance of good communication with my horse and with God. If there is not a good level of communication, then obeying commands and completing a job is very hard to do. I am so thankful that God is able to communicate with me; He can tell me the future, and what I should do to stay in His perfect will. “**Behold, the former things are come to pass, and new things do I declare: before they spring forth I tell you of them**” (Isaiah 42:9).

God is able and willing to communicate with us, but we must learn how to communicate with Him. I think a lot of the trouble people get in with their horse is the same trouble people get in with God. Communication involves two individuals. Many times I have tried to give a command or request to the horse without listening to what the horse was telling me. Many times the horse would not be ready to do what I was asking him, which would lead to confusion and disobedience.

The same thing happens with God. Many times I have prayed and prayed giving my request before God, wanting Him to answer my prayer. When my prayer goes unanswered, I become downhearted and confused, which often leads to some level of disobedience. God’s ways are not man’s ways. “**For my thoughts are not your thoughts, neither are your ways my ways, saith the LORD. For as the heavens are higher than the earth, so are my ways higher than your ways, and my thoughts than your thoughts**” (Isaiah 55:9). It has been my experience that when a prayer goes unanswered it is because my heart was not right, or I was praying against the will of God. The timing may be wrong or God may have something much greater in store. Just like the horse, get a soft feel (Holy Spirit), and open the lines of communication. Then, once there is a soft feel, we are able to communicate with God and He is able to direct us (two-way communication).

We communicate with our horses through feel, timing, and balance, their primary driving
factors (self-preservation, comfort, and companionship) and their underlying factors (confidence and energy). The underlying factors play a very key role with the driving factors and our ability to communicate with the horse. For example, take a wild mustang stud that has never seen a person before. The stud will have very little confidence in people and be largely driven by the confidence in his self-preservation. If the stud begins to lose confidence in a situation he will rely on his self-preservation to bite, kick, or strike, i.e., “fight.” On the other hand take a weanling colt that is still on his mother, or a yearling colt. The colt is not going to have very much confidence in his self-preservation in terms of “fighting.” His confidence is going to be in fleeing, i.e., “flight,” to the safety of his mother, or the rest of the herd. If the young colt begins to lose confidence he will flee to the comfort and companionship of his mother, or herd. However, when the stud begins to lose confidence, he will often turn to fight. Both are forms of self-preservation (“fight or flight”) and limit our ability to communicate with the horse.

Using the horse’s driving factors there are two ways to eliminate their self-preservation. We can either increase their confidence, or decrease their energy. As the horse begins to increase their confidence level in a person, or a situation, their self-preservation is no longer engaged and if we have feel, timing, and balance, we are able to communicate with them. The horse’s energy is “motivation and determination” and greatly influences the driving factors. A wild mustang stud is going to be driven by the confidence that he has in his self-preservation “fight.” The higher the energy levels in the stud, the higher the levels of self-preservation. A weanling or yearling colt is going to be driven by comfort and companionship to the herd. The higher the energy level, the more motivated they are going to be to flee from you and run to the herd. Using energy as an underlying driving factor, as we decrease the energy, they will become less motivated to “flight or fight” and we are able to build their confidence in us.

A good example of this would be body condition. A wild horse with a body condition score of 5 or 6 is going to be highly motivated to respond with “fight or flight.” However, if that same horse falls to a body condition score of 1 or 2 they are not going to be as motivated to respond with “fight or flight.” They will have little confidence in their self-preservation, because they do not have the energy to drive the self-preservation. As the energy decreases, self-preservation decreases. This is an important concept when working with horses. If a horse is greatly driven by self-preservation all we have to do is decrease their energy and increase their confidence. Instead of trying to saddle a horse when they are running over the top of you and striking you on the head, decrease the energy. Run them around the round pen a little bit, or flag them with a flag until the energy lowers to a point that their self-preservation is no longer in full operation. As the energy begins to decrease, self-preservation will decrease and we can build their confidence, by offering them comfort and companionship.

God does the same thing with us. We have the same primary driving factors and underlying driving factors that our horse does. God wants to get rid of our self-preservation (flesh) and offer us comfort and companionship in Him. We are driven the same way that our horse is. We are either like the mustang, full of pride and relying on our own ability to fight. Or, we are like the young colt with no confidence in ourselves and putting all our faith in the security of our earthly companions. God gets rid of our self-preservation the same way that we do with our horses. He either increases the confidence, or decreases the energy. God will increase our confidence (faith) by increasing comfort and companionship (Holy Spirit) “in” Him, which will kill off our self-
preservation. An example of this would be stepping into a spirit-filled sermon or receiving revelation knowledge, which totally transforms your life and lets you know that God is real and cares for you. You gain confidence in Him and give Him total control of your life.

The other way He gets rid of our self-preservation is to decrease our energy, “motivation and determination.” An example of this would be a person diagnosed with a life threatening disease, or losing a loved one. We then find ourselves with no confidence in ourselves and desperately begin to look for comfort. It is sad, but this is often times the only way that God can get our attention (tragedies). We often times get too much confidence in ourselves, or our earthly companions and forget that we are to be totally dependent on God. It is in these times that God helps us to become dependent on Him, by roping us around the neck and taking all our air away (energy) so to speak. Catastrophe strikes and we lose all the comfort and confidence that we thought we had in ourselves and in our earthly companions. We begin to go looking for this comfort and ultimately find it “in” Him. In the same way we rope a horse around the neck to decrease their energy and increase their confidence; God does the same thing with us.

The goal is to decrease self-preservation (flesh). This is done by increasing confidence (faith) and by increasing comfort and companionship. The more confidence our horse gains in us, the more self-preservation is killed off. The same thing is true with the Lord and us. The more time we spend in the Holy Spirit experiencing comfort and companionship “in” Him, the more confidence we gain and the more self-preservation (flesh) is killed off. We are only able to remove our self-preservation by gaining confidence in God. Our horse’s self-preservation is only removed when they gain confidence “in” us, and the same is true with the Lord. We cannot remove our self-preservation by gaining confidence in our pastors, priests, friends, or family. It has to come through the Holy Spirit and spending time “in” Him.

The Lord’s Prayer – Communicating Through Prayer

In Matthew 6:5-15, Jesus tells us how to pray and what to pray. “And when thou prayest, thou shalt not be as the hypocrites are: for they love to pray standing in the synagogues and in the corners of the streets, that they may be seen of men. Verily I say unto you, They have their reward. But thou, when thou prayest, enter into thy closet, and when thou hast shut thy door, pray to thy Father which is in secret; and thy Father which seeth in secret shall reward thee openly” (Matthew 6:5-6 KJV). These two verses tell us how to pray.

The first verse tells us that our prayers to God should be personal. Our prayers should not just be for others to see, but for a time of communication, between God and man. The second verse tells us to “enter into thy closet.” Closet in the Greek means – used for storage or privacy-secret chamber, closet, storehouse. Jesus tells us first we must find a place of privacy, a place with no distractions. This could be in a quiet room, in church with our eyes closed, or even driving down a peaceful interstate. The key to our quiet place is if we are able to shut the “door.” If we are to enter into a place where we can hear from God, we must first close the door to the distractions of this world.

Moses went on top of the mountain to speak to God. Abraham was on top of a mountain
when God spoke to him and the transfiguration where God revealed His Glory through Jesus Christ, also appeared on top of a mountain. I am not saying the only place we can hear from God is on top of a mountain. However, it was when these people distanced themselves from the distractions of the world that they were able to hear from God and experience His Glory. It has been my personal experience, that when I have taken the time to completely shut the door to this world, God is very faithful to open the door into heavenly places.

Once we have entered into this quiet secret place, Jesus assures us that God will reward us openly. Openly in the Greek means – shining, i.e. apparent, publicly, externally: abroad, + appear, known, manifest, open [-ly], outward [-ly]. When God says He will reward us openly, He is telling us He will make Himself known and manifest Himself upon us. I don’t know about you, but that is pretty exciting to me.

So now that we know how to pray to God, let’s find out what to pray to God as Jesus tells us through Scripture. “But when ye pray, use not vain repetitions, as the heathen do: for they think that they shall be heard for their much speaking. Be not ye therefore like unto them: for your Father knows what things ye have need of, before ye ask him. After this manner therefore pray ye:

Our father which art in heaven,
Hallowed be your name.
Thy kingdom come,
Thy will be done in earth, as it is in heaven.
Give us this day our daily bread.
And forgive us our debts,
as we forgive our debtors.
And lead us not into temptation,
but deliver us from evil:
for thine is the kingdom, and
the power, and the glory, for ever.
Amen. (Matthew 6:7-13 KJV)

The first line to the Lord’s Prayer is “Our Father which art in heaven, Hallowed be thy name.” By signifying that He is our Father, this places us as His son/daughter. Jesus tells us how to approach our Father, “And he said: ‘I tell you the truth, unless you change and become like little children, you will never enter the kingdom of heaven. Therefore, whoever humbles himself like this child is the greatest in the kingdom of heaven’ ” (Matthew 18:3-4).

No matter what age we are, whether we are eight or eighty, God wants us to be converted as little children. Converted means to turn around or reverse. We must change from running our own lives, to letting God run our lives. If we let our little kids run their own lives, could you imagine what kind of trouble they would get into. I think God thinks the same thing about His kids. Just as parents would not like to see their children going though hurts and heartaches, the same is true with God. “Come to me, all you who are weary and burdened, and I will give you rest. Take my yoke upon you and learn from me, for I am gentle and humble in heart,
and you will find rest for your souls. For my yoke is easy and my burden is light” (Matthew 11:28-30).

The next line in the Lord’s Prayer is “Hallowed be thy name.” God is Holy and there is power in His name. In Jesus’ name the dead rise, the sick are healed, Satan flees, and fear is changed into strength. We serve a mighty and Holy God; His very presence sends people falling to their faces. He created the heavens and the earth and everything in it. God is the ruler of the universe, and He IS worthy of our praise and worship.

“Thy kingdom come, thy will be done in earth, as it is in heaven.” The next line in the Lord’s Prayer says, “Thy kingdom come.” If we have prepared ourselves to hear from God and have been converted as little children, then we will be able to enter into the kingdom of heaven, “the realm of God” (see revelation chapter). “Therefore, whoever humbles himself like this child is the greatest in the kingdom of heaven” (Matthew 18:4).

It is then that we can ask God to show us His glory. It is then that we say, “Thy will be done in earth, as it is in heaven.” It is important to note that the two “ins” in the sentence above do not mean the same thing. The first “in” means to be over or upon. As we walk upon the earth or sail over the seas. The second “in” comes from two words, the first meaning – to or into (indicating a place reached or entered) of place, time, or purpose. The second word means – denoting origin (the point whence motion or action proceeds), from, out, (of place time or cause). We are born into this world, a world of sin. But through Jesus, we may be born again, born into the kingdom of heaven. This is a place that we enter into; we go out from this realm and enter into the realm of God. “Neither shall they say, “lo here”? Or “lo there” for behold, the kingdom of God is within you” (Luke 17:21). The Strong’s Concordance says by implication heaven means happiness. Entering into the realm of God can be as extreme as being drawn up into the third heaven, “I knew a man in Christ above fourteen years ago, (whether in the body, I cannot tell; or whether out of the body, I cannot tell: God knoweth;) such an one caught up to the third heaven” (2 Corinthians 12:2), or as simple as having a peace fall over you that gives you pure joy and happiness. “But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, longsuffering, gentleness, goodness, faith, meekness, temperance: against such there is no law” (Galatians 5:22).

It is not until this point into the prayer that we actually ask God for anything. The next verse says, “Give us this day our daily bread.” We only ask that we would be fed; that God would reveal Himself to us and that we would receive nourishment. We ask for bread; something to chew on. We are not going to man to receive milk, but to God to receive the meat that Paul talks about, “But strong meat belongeth to them that are of full age, even those who by reason of use have their senses exercised to discern both good and evil” (Hebrews 5:14 KJV).

The next line we say is “And forgive us our debts, as we forgive our debtors.” A debt is something you owe; we owe God our life because of sin. But, Jesus died for that sin, so we are no longer accountable. Once we ask forgiveness for our sins, we are then washed of our sins. God has given us much mercy, but what we have received; we must be sure to also give. “For if you forgive men when they sin against you, your heavenly Father will also forgive you. But if you do not forgive men their sins, your Father will not forgive your sins” (Matthew 6:14-
Meditate on this scripture. We have a distorted view of God’s forgiveness; we think that God will always forgive us. However, if you do not forgive men their sins, God will not forgive you your sins. God showed me once in a dream, He cannot cleanse me of my sins, until I forgive those who have sinned against me. Bitterness is a cancer to the heart. It is sin that separates us from God, and no matter how many times we ask for forgiveness and pray to be cleansed of our sins, if we have not forgiven God will not forgive us. “And his lord was wroth, and delivered him to the tormentors, till he should pay all that was due unto him. So likewise shall my heavenly Father do also unto you, if ye from your hearts forgive not everyone his brother their trespasses” (Matthew 18:34-35 KJV). If you feel like you have been cast into bondage and have lost the peace that can only come from God; start forgiving. We will never be close to God, until we start forgiving.

We then say, “And lead us not into temptation but deliver us from evil.” For us to say, “lead us not into temptation,” we must be following. God will not lead us into a temptation greater that we can handle, “And God is faithful; he will not let you be tempted beyond what you can bear. But when you are tempted, he will also provide a way out so that you can stand up under it” (1 Corinthians 10:13). However, if we fail to be led by Him on a daily basis, we will surely sin. When we are thinking about God, it is hard to sin, but the moment we quit thinking about God, it often does not take long until we have sinned. This scripture tells me that Satan is going to attack us; we can expect it. Just as a man going to battle is expected to fight, when we wake up we know Satan is going to try us. We can either choose to go out unarmed and be sure to fail, or put on the full armor of God (Ephesians 6:11-18) and stand a fighting chance, or my favorite is to get behind God. “I am the light of the world whoever follows me will never walk in darkness, but will have the light of life” (John 8:12). This is the best, if we are in the light darkness cannot get to us. “And the light shineth in darkness and the darkness comprehended (Greek- take eagerly, seize, posses) it not” (John 1:5). If we are in God’s light, Satan CAN NOT get to us!

Let God lead us and fall behind the protection of the living God. Let God deal with His fallen angel, and become totally wrapped up in God’s presence. I have certainly not obtained it, but I have read of men that never left God’s presence. For God’s presence is the only place Satan has no hope of ever reaching us.

The last verse in the Lord’s Prayer says, “for thine is the kingdom, and the power, and the glory, for ever. Amen.” Jesus tells us that our Father has the kingdom, the power and glory waiting for us. The Strong’s Concordance tells us that the kingdom is “a realm of God,” the power is “miraculous power,” and His Glory is “very apparent.” Once we enter God’s kingdom, we can see, feel, and experience His Glory, and His miraculous power can be manifested through us.
4 Things Need To Be Established To Prevent Resistance

A) Willing submission  
B) Good communication  
C) Balanced direction to life ratio  
D) Solid foundation of maneuvers

**Life** - The ability to move the horse, with any speed at any time. When the person’s legs are lightly fanned the horse should move their feet in the direction we want, with the speed that we want.

“Get-up-and-go, spirited” – Often fueled by energy (motivation and determination)

**Direction** - When the slack is taken out of the rein the horse puts the slack back in the rein with suppleness through the poll and loin.

a) Vertical Direction- (Atlas Vertebrae) – Up and down  
   - Break in the poll vertically:  
     - Nose should be perpendicular to the ground.

b) Horizontal Direction- (Axis Vertebrae) – Left to Right  
   - Break in the poll horizontally:  
     - Nose should be directly underneath the eye  
     - Should not see any white in the eye (looking back not forward)  
     - Front feet follow on the same path made as the nose  
     - Poll and loin should make a quarter circle  
     - Should make perfect circles and spins

**Life** -

The “life” in our bodies is often driven by our energy level. However, this is not always the case. Take a tired and worn out football player in the final minutes of an overtime game. Although they may not have any physical or dietary energy left in their body, if someone gives an inspiring speech the words can bring life to their body and give them the ability to finish the game with full strength. Another example would be riding a horse at the end of an eight or ten hour day, they are totally drained and exhausted. The horse may have had to be kicked every step to keep the life in him the past two hours. However, when you turn and start to go home, and he knows he is going home, he will become filled with life. The horse will have so much life; you will have to hold him back from loping home.

Some people are naturally born with a lot of life (motivation and determination) and others are not. Part of this depends on how God made us. Just like Arabians and Thoroughbreds naturally have more life than Quarter and draft horses, some of us naturally have more life. However, our energy level also drives our life, and our energy level often depends on our health. The healthier we are, the more energetic we are and the more life we have. It is important as...
Christians that we stay active and work for our food (2 Thessalonians 3:8-12). We are the temples of God and we should take care of our bodies so we can be used by God. We should eat healthfully and stay in good shape in order to give life to our bodies to glorify God. The important thing is that we are using the life that we are given, to glorify God. The Holy Spirit brings life to our bodies. If you feel you are not motivated and determined you may need to submit your life to God and become filled with the Holy Spirit.

The best source of “life” for our bodies comes from God. “And the Lord God formed man of the dust of the ground, and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life; and man became a living soul” (Genesis 2:7). “Thus saith the Lord God unto these bones; Behold, I will cause breath to enter into you, and ye shall live” (Ezekiel 37:5). “It is the spirit that quickeneth; the flesh profiteth nothing: the words that I speak unto you, they are spirit, and they are life” (John 6:63). “For the law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus hath made me free from the law of sin and death” (Romans 8:2). When we become filled with the Holy Spirit we become filled with life (motivation and determination) for the kingdom of God. However, as I mentioned earlier we are naturally born with life, some more than others. Paul was born with a lot of “life,” he just had it directed in the wrong direction. Think what Hitler could have done for the kingdom of God if his “life” would have been directed towards God.

Sometimes if we are selfishly using the life that the Lord has given us, like Paul, He will take it away so He can redirect it. Often times the Lord will let a sickness fall on us to help us redirect our life. This is what the Lord had to do to me. As long as I am seeking God’s will I am filled with “life” (energy). However, whenever I begin to do things my own way and forget to look to Him, my life is drained. This is a good thing; I have far more life when I am filled with the Spirit, than I could have ever had in my flesh. “For to be carnally minded is death; but to be spiritually minded is life and peace” (Romans 6:8).

**Direction**

**Direction = Sanctification (God’s word and the Holy Ghost)**

“But we are bound to give thanks always to God for you, brethren beloved of the Lord, because God hath from the beginning chosen you to salvation through sanctification of the Spirit and belief of the truth” (2 Thessalonians 2:13).

God’s Word - “Sanctify them through thy truth, thy word is truth” (John 17:17). “And for their sakes I sanctify myself, that they also might be sanctified through the truth” (John 17:19). “That he might sanctify and cleanse it with the washing of the water by the word” (Ephesians 5:26). “For it is sanctified by the word of God and prayer” (1 Timothy 4:5).

**Holy Spirit (blood)** - “…that the offering up of the Gentiles might be acceptable, being sanctified by the Holy Ghost” (Romans 15:16). “Wherefore Jesus also, that he might sanctify the people with his own blood…” (Hebrew 13:12). “…. through sanctification of the Spirit, unto obedience and sprinkling of the blood of Jesus Christ” (1 Peter 1:2). “….but ye are washed, but ye are sanctified, but ye are justified in the name of the Lord Jesus, and by the Spirit of our God” (1 Corinthians 6:11).
Direction is the most important thing with our horses and with the Lord. Direction can interchangeably be described as sanctification and it is the sanctification process that takes away our self-preservation (flesh) and helps us reach maturity (perfection). Sanctification means to “purify” or “make holy;” we are not holy or pure when we are in our self-preservation (flesh). It is only by getting rid of our flesh that we can become holy and it is through the sanctification process that our flesh is killed off. Scripture says that we are sanctified through God’s word (1 Timothy 4:5), truth (John 17:17), Jesus’ blood (Hebrews 13:12) and the Holy Spirit (Romans 15:16). We are sanctified through the Holy Spirit. The Holy Spirit gives life to God’s word and we are washed in the blood through the Holy Spirit. Every problem I have in my life leaves when I take time to become sanctified in the blood and spend time in the manifest presence of God almighty.

When direction comes to our horses it seeps through the horse’s entire body taking away all self-preservation (stiff poll and loin) and brings suppleness, willing submission, and good communication. When a horse has direction they are no longer driven by self-preservation, and they experience comfort (Holy Spirit-comforter) and companionship with the rider. Nearly every problem I have with my horse and in my life can be traced back to not having direction (sanctification). When a person slows down and gets direction, all problems seem to leave. This is because our problems come from self-preservation, unwilling submission, and a lack of communication, and direction eliminates all these problems.

Often times when working with a horse, I will work on direction and life independently. A horse can have good direction, but if they do not receive a little life to the direction, the horse will eventually become numb and dull and may lose the direction. Once I have direction, I will often give the horse his head and drive a bunch of life into him to get him moving out. Then I will try to direct it once the horse is moving and going somewhere. Sometimes when I bring the life into the horse a little self-preservation might come out; the horse may jump, kick, and play. As long as the horse is not driven by fear and only excitement I do not mind. Once the horse has the life in him, I can then direct it. The Lord does the same thing with us. Often times when we become filled with the Holy Spirit our flesh will do things that do not necessarily benefit the Kingdom like; shake, laugh, dance, and yell. However, this is just the Lord bringing the life up so that He can use it later to benefit the Kingdom. With a horse you sometimes have to push them past the little jumping and playing in order to use the life to do the job. The same thing is true with us, once the fleshly manifestations have passed, then the Lord can begin to use the life to benefit the Kingdom. This is all part of balancing the direction to life ratio and balancing the ratio is extremely important in reaching maturity.

**Life to Direction: Amaia and My Story**

I had come off the mountain and told Amaia the direction that the Lord had given me. I had expected a total agreement and to start planning the wedding. However, Amaia was not as gung ho at the idea of getting married right out of high school. Looking back, I cannot blame Amaia for being a little hesitant, but at the time I did not see what the big deal was. I had gotten the direction from God; all we had to do was follow it.

What I needed to learn is that you can have all the direction in the world, but if there is no
life (from the Lord) putting the direction into motion, there will be no results. The same thing is true with a horse. We can tip their nose, but if the reins are not tied to the feet (not literally) putting motion to our direction, our horse will not move. There is a good saying someone told me once, “Your reins show them where to go and your feet get them there.” Many times when we direct our horse they are slow to turn. We then make a mistake of pulling on the reins harder trying to speed them up, instead of bringing life to the feet.

When we pull on the reins harder this will often cause them to be resentful to the direction and flip their head. The horse does not need more direction; the horse needs more life putting the direction to motion. The same is true with the Lord. We can alter the saying to, “The Scripture shows you where to go and the Holy Spirit gets you there.” We can read our Bible and have direction, but if we do not receive any life from the Holy Spirit, it is hard to follow through with our direction. Also, much like our horses, if all we have is direction and never receive any life, we will eventually become resentful to the direction, leading to “false direction.” Giving on the outside (tipping nose), but hard on the inside (stiff poll and loin). Obeying God’s commands on the outside but having a hard heart on the inside.

I had direction when I came off the mountain, but I needed life to come to the direction. Amaia told her family what I had told her. They didn’t have a problem with me marrying her; they had pretty well expected it someday. However, rightly so, they thought that we were getting married a little too young. Surprisingly enough, the fact that my future wife and her family were a little unsure of us getting married on the day the Lord gave me, did not bother me too much. I figured the Lord had everything under control. I knew my future family was a good Christian family and that they would be praying for direction. It was probably around April of 2003 when the Lord had spoken to me, so I figured I had a good year to pray about it and let the Lord put things into motion.

However, there was something that I did not understand about the date that the Lord had given me. July 14, 2004 was on a Wednesday. It did not make very much sense to get married on a Wednesday and I prayed for confirmation many times. However, every time I would pray, I would keep hearing July 14, 2004. Although it did not make sense, I prayed that if it was His will, that He would speak to everyone involved in making the decision concerning our marriage. Every night I would pray about the date that the Lord had given me and every night I would pray for each individual.

As I prayed for each individual I could feel God’s presence. As His presence would come on me, I would feel my stomach start to tighten up. I would pray until I felt my stomach relax and then I would pray for someone else. The Lord showed me some Scripture later of different men in the Bible that had the same experience when they were praying for people (Psalms 48:6; Isaiah 13:8, 21:3, 26:17, 26:18, 66:7; Jeremiah 6:24; Micah 4:10; Romans 8:22; Galatians 4:19). In Galatians 4:19, Paul tells the Galatians that he “travails in birth” until Christ be formed in them. *Travail* in the Greek means “to experience the *pains* of parturition.” “Therefore are my loins filled with pain: pangs have taken hold upon me, as the pangs of a woman that travaileth: I was bowed down at the hearing of it; I was dismayed at the seeing of it” (Isaiah 21:3 KJV).
I have obviously never experienced actually pains of parturition, but I guess in the spiritual sense, that is kind of what I went through. Sometimes my stomach would only get tight and other times it would hurt pretty badly, doubling me over. I would pray through it and then it would be peaceful. I often still experience the same thing when I am praying for people.

I continued to pray about our wedding and direction for my life. I did not mention the wedding date the Lord gave me very much, but stepped back and let God do all the work. I spent some time at a cow camp and continued to pray and to seek God’s will for my life. Although I ended up getting consumed with my job at the cow camp, most of the time (I will tell the story later) the Lord was still able to give me direction and life.

One time as I was praying, I saw Amaia and myself pulling up to a ranch to buy some horses. Oddly enough we were driving an old 66’ Ford pickup pulling a two-horse trailer. When I got there, they lined up all the horses that they had for sale and I approached them for inspection. They had around 12 head and as I first walked up to them they all looked fine, except one. One of the horses only had three legs. The three-legged horse looked similar to the rest, but the poor thing only had three legs and was obviously not my first choice.

However, the longer I looked at them the better the three-legged horse looked and all the others began to look poorer. They transformed to the point that the three-legged horse was one of the best looking horses I had ever seen, and the other others were old, starving with all their ribs and hip bones showing, ugly heads, and poor coats; the most hideous horses I had ever seen.

Amaia and I made the decision to take the three-legged horse. We loaded him up and took him home. When I arrived home my brother and my Dad were not impressed with the choice. They looked at the three-legged horse we had picked and were thinking, “What the heck were you thinking buying a three-legged horse?” It did not seem very practical at all to pay money for a three-legged horse. What good could it possibly serve? My mother and sister, although not thinking as practically, did not see anything wrong with our decision. They thought, other than missing a leg, it seemed to be a very kind and good-looking horse. They thought the horse was very cute and wished us the best of luck.

I kept praying and I saw myself breaking the colt. The horse was without a doubt the best horse I had ever started. I bridled him up and he became an outstanding horse. He could spin on a dime both ways, and work a cow. He could do anything a normal horse could do, only better. As I saw this, I asked the Lord how this could be. I then saw that the horse had not been missing a leg, he only had a leg that could not be seen by our worldly eyes. The leg that we could not see was a supernatural leg that had come from God and was made out of solid gold. With this leg the horse was able to do things that far exceeded anything a normal horse could do. However, it would never make sense to the world.

The Lord showed me there would be many things in Amaia’s and my life that would not make sense to the world. However, like the horse with one leg, David against Goliath, Paul saying he was strong when he was weak, if we are following the will of God, He can work supernaturally in our lives making the impossible possible. The Lord showed me that getting married so young may not make sense to the world and the date that He had given may not make
sense to me. However, He had a special plan for our lives, which would one day make sense.

I prayed for two or three months. Then Amaia’s dad told us we should get married whenever we felt God was telling us to get married. I kept praying, and around early December Amaia’s mom called me after she had gotten out of church. She felt she was supposed to tell me I had her blessing to get married whenever we felt like the Lord wanted us to. I am not saying that I am the only one that prayed and it was only because of my prayers that anything changed. Amaia and her family had been praying for direction as well. It had been by the power of the Holy Spirit and everyone’s prayers, in which the direction was brought to life.

After Amaia’s mom gave me her blessing, I decided to propose to her on Christmas Eve. I proposed to Amaia in the form of a cheesy poem on Christmas Eve. I proposed to her in front of her family and this is the poem that I told her.

For the gal that weds a cowboy,
    Might as well get set to learn.
For the cowboys later return.
Well the guy that works with cattle,
    Don’t work by clock or sun.
And the gal that can’t wait supper
    Hadn’t ot’ to marry one.
Well the gal that weds this cowboy
    I hope she’ll always know.
That she’s found a man that loves her,
    And will never let her go.
Well I am a stubborn cowboy,
    It’s bred deep in my roots.
But with God and the love between us,
    I hope to give my pride the boots.
I will love you always and forever
    And all the rest my life.
You have my heart, will you take this ring
    And be my little wife.

Yeah, I know, pretty cheesy. But hey, they either really liked it, or really hated it, because there were definitely some tears flying after the poem. Well, poor Amaia being so young and so naive, not having a clue what she was getting into; said yes. Amaia had agreed to marry me on Christmas Eve, but there was still the wedding date that we needed to nail down. I thought if it was the will of God that we get married on July 14, 2004 that it would come to pass with prayer. I did not want to get in any arguments with Amaia over the wedding date. July 14 was on a Wednesday and rightly so, she did not want to have her once in a lifetime wedding on a Wednesday when only a few of her friends and family could come. Like most girls, she had dreamed of this day since she was a little girl and she wanted to have a big wedding.

So I left it totally in God’s hands and continued to pray. I let Amaia pick the date and decided if it was God’s will then she would pick the date that God had given me. Amaia’s first
choice for the wedding was in one year at the same time; a Christmas wedding. This would give her another semester of college under her belt and she had always wanted a Christmas wedding. However, getting married the next winter didn’t end up working out because Amaia’s sister and her husband and three girls were being led by God to teach in Armenia and they were leaving the next fall. So with the spring being way too soon, this left us with a summer wedding.

After bouncing around to different dates, Amaia ended up picking the seventeenth of July. She picked the seventeenth, because it was on a Saturday and close to the date that the Lord had given me. I was totally amazed. I was totally amazed that the date that we ended up with, was three days from the date that the Lord had given me. As we started to get closer and began planning the wedding, I began to see why the Lord had given me July fourteenth; three days before our wedding.

Amaia and I have both been blessed with many family and friends. Both Amaia and I wanted our friends to come to the wedding and by the time we invited all our family, we had invited all of Owyhee County. If you have ever seen the movie, “My Big Fat Greek Wedding” you have some idea of our wedding. Actually if we knew you at all, or thought we knew you, you probably got an invitation and were there. But for those of you that couldn’t make it, that is what we had, a “Big Fat Basque Wedding.”

Amaia had nine bridesmaids, so I had nine groomsmen. We had six flower girls. We rode in a horse and buggy with five outriders to the reception, and around 1,000 people came to our reception; I had the time of my life. It was without a doubt one of the single greatest days of my life. Amaia’s dad married us, and although he had not performed many weddings, he did a fantastic job. He did such a good job that after our wedding many other people approached him to perform their weddings. My father-in-law is an amazing preacher and many lives were touched during the ceremony.

Amaia and I got married on July 17th, our wedding certificate says July 17th and we consummated our marriage on July 17th. However, we were already married when we said our vows on July 17th. The Lord had given me July 14th to get married on, so Amaia and I got married on July 14th. We went up to Ted and Dorothy Payne’s ranch in Jordan Valley, with a small group of our brothers and sisters in Christ and we got married. We gathered around in a newly cut hay field, next to a stream in the mountains and sang praises and worshiped the Lord to start the ceremony. After we had worshiped, I gave a small testimony of why we had gathered together and why Amaia and I were having two weddings. I explained that the first wedding was designed to be a total spiritual wedding. The focus of the entire wedding was Amaia, me, and God, uniting ourselves together.

Doug performed the wedding, Amaia and I spoke what was in our hearts on the spot for our vows; we exchanged rings, kissed and then returned back to God, to praise and worship. We then had all our brothers and sisters in Christ lay hands on us and pray over us. They agreed to continually pray over us and be our spiritual supporters, as we went forward in our marriage trying to follow the path that the Lord has set before us. The Lord showed me that our second marriage focused on God, showing through Amaia and me, and was to be a spiritual example for our friends and family and was to be a celebration.
The first wedding went from our brothers in sisters in Christ, through Amaia and me, and focused entirely on God. The first marriage was a spiritual devotion between Amaia and me, with our brothers and sisters in Christ standing behind us for prayer and support. The first wedding was focused primarily on the unity of our spirit and the second wedding had more to do with the unity of our flesh; friends, family and a celebration.

Sometimes the Lord tells us something and gives us direction. At first it may not make sense and nothing may be lining up. However, through prayer and the power of the Holy Spirit, life may be brought through to our direction and we can fall in the perfect will of God. The same thing is true with our horse. If we tip their nose and nothing happens, instead of pulling harder, just wait on the feet and the feet will bring life to the direction causing them to fall perfectly in our will.

**Direction and Life: Cow Camp**

I thought I would elaborate a little more on what the Lord told me while I was at cow camp, and what I learned about direction and life in-between getting the direction from God for our wedding and our actual wedding. When I left Treasure Valley Community College and spent some time helping Ted and Dorothy Payne before going to the cabin, I helped their son Jack as well. Jack was kind of in a bind and needed a person to stay at a cow camp to keep 600 head of mother cows pushed out of a mountain range that had just been burnt. I immediately volunteered for the job. I thought this would be perfect, I could spend time alone with the Lord, and He could continue to minister to me. I thought for sure I would come off the mountain as Moses did, with God’s radiance beaming off my face, “When Moses came down from Mount Sinai with the two tablets of the Testimony in his hands, he was not aware that his face was radiant because he had spoken with the LORD” (Exodus 34:29). Little did I know that the Lord had more to teach me about direction and life.

My time at cow camp was very good, and looking back I can see all the things that the Lord taught me. However, while I was at the cow camp, I had a little trouble seeing all of these valuable lessons. The name of the cow camp was Bull Basin and it was southwest of Jordan Valley about two and a half hours; back up against the East Fork of the Owyhee, bordering Nevada. It took an hour to travel the last eight miles into the camp, because for most of the way a person could not travel over about five miles an hour due to all the rocks.

I took one semi-broke horse and eleven head of colts to cow camp. Two of the colts had a week on them and the other eight head had only a couple of days. We had the horseshoer come out and quickly tack a set of shoes on them before I went. The horses had not been handled very much up to this point, so the horseshoer just tried to get the shoes on as quick as he could. Dad had to rope a hind leg from another horse to put on many of the hind shoes. I had not shod many horses up until this point, and for the ones I had shod, I was always around somebody to bail me out when I got lost.

The first two weeks at cow camp were a total wreck. From where my cow camp was to where I had to keep the cows pushed out was about eight miles, over what they called “Rock
"Flat." My colts were out of shape and quickly became tired and worn out before I could get where I needed to be. I started taking a couple of horses, and would stake them out on trees. I could then come back and get a fresh horse. However, even staking out the colts and trying to switch, I was still riding them way too hard and I was taking the heart out of them.

The young horses would be tired and exhausted, but would have to go further until I could get back to another horse or back to camp. The colts would quickly go from having lots of energy, wanting to buck or run off, to dragging their feet and having to be peddled every step. The horses would get dead footed, not picking up their feet in the rocks and several times I almost went head over heels. I had several close calls, thinking for sure I was going all the way over, but each time the Lord kept my head from digging a trench through the rocks.

When I did get to the cows and tried to push them out of the burned field. The cows had come from a farmer down in the valley, and had not been trailed long distances. The cows would not line out and were very tough to move. I would try to move them all in one big bunch, but the bunch was too big and as soon as I stopped pushing one side to go and push the other side, the side that I had just been pushing would stop moving, or fan out.

I spent the entire time running back and forth from side to side. My colts quickly ran out of energy and I could not push the cows where they needed to be. I would have been better off taking smaller bunches, but I needed to get all cows out, so they didn’t get in trouble with the BLM. There were six hundred head of cows with calves that I needed to push about ten miles, after I had trotted eight miles to get to the cows. Every day was a total failure. I would push them as far as I could and the next day they would all be right back in the field that I had just pushed them out of.

To top it all off, it rained the first two weeks and the deep mud was jerking off my horse shoes right and left. Putting back on the shoes was a disaster, considering that they were tough to shoe; I was a very inexperience horseshoer and I had forgotten an anvil and ran out of horseshoe nails the first week. I found a piece of medal out in the brush, and shaped my shoes on that and the back of the old 58’ Chevy stock truck that I used to get up there. To solve the nail problem, I found an old box of nails that had some pulled horseshoe nails in it.

So, I would spend my evenings trying to pound old used nails through my poorly shaped shoe, on my poorly leveled foot, on the stupid colt that would not stand. Needless to say, the frustration level was a little high during the evenings and I was not exactly singing praises to the Lord. I spent the majority of my time mad, frustrated, or confused, trying to figure out how to accomplish the job at hand with the material I had to work with. If the cows would have moved, or if I had older horses that could withstand longer days, it wouldn’t have been so bad. However, the combination of the two and the all out wars to get a horse shod was a little frustrating. I was frustrated because I could not get my job done, and I was frustrated because I was not getting to spend time with the Lord and was totally consumed with my job.

After the first few weeks it got a little better. I went down to the valley and got a couple of dogs, my stock whip, and all the birdshot I could carry. It quit raining allowing the ground to dry out and let me put longer rides on my colts. They also built a fence around the burned field and
helped me push the cows back over the mountain onto another BLM allotment. I then only had to keep them out of the basin in which my camp was and out of a few watering holes a few miles from my camp. I say it got better, but I still had about a twenty-five to fifty-mile circle every day, and I was still pushing cows that would not move over a big mountain, and riding a bunch of green colts that gave out quick. The dogs ended up being good help, but were only a year old and could not be used very much, or they too would give out. I took one dog on too long of a ride and lost him. I left my jacket by a tree and came back the next day to find him with his feet rubbed raw. He healed up ok, but I was unable to use him again while I was up there.

Through all of this, the Lord showed me the importance of direction and life. I had the direction, I wanted to serve God, and He had showed me how He wanted to use me. However, I needed to learn how to operate in the power of the Holy Spirit during stressful situations. I needed to learn how to lead by example; to stay in the Spirit and not fall into the flesh during stress. It had been easy to spend time reading my Bible and pressing into God, remaining in the Spirit while I had been at Treasure Valley Community College. However, when I went to the cow camp, it was a different story. The Lord showed me later that this is where a person is truly a light for Christ; in dark places.

There were many people throughout history that have ordered armies to attack and have achieved victory. However, the greatest and most miraculous stories of battles have been when these armies have been led into battle, by a great leader. God showed me He does not want me to preach the Gospel, but to demonstrate the Gospel. I needed to learn how to live my life with the same power and unity I had with God at TVCC, and transfer it to a stressful day moving cows or shoeing a horse. It is then that a person can start reaching people; it is then that God can start using us.

I have not come close to achieving this yet, but it is like Tom said, “Remember what happened right before what you did not want to have happen, happened, and remember what happened right before what you did want to have happen, happened.” I tell my class if they can recognize what steps took place before the wreck occurred and try not to make the same mistakes again, they can avoid the wreck. By a process of elimination, if they get into enough wrecks, pretty soon they will be doing something right. What I have learned from all my wrecks and failures is that I cannot do it by myself. If I am not spending time with God and being filled with Holy Spirit daily, it is easy to fall back into my flesh and lose my temper when I get into a stressful situation.

The same is true with our horses. If we are not operating through willing submission and a soft feel (Holy Spirit), when we bring the tempo up, our horse will fall apart, and self-preservation (flesh) will take over. Our horse needs direction, but our horse also needs life. We can tip their nose, but if there is no life that comes to the feet, we are limited to what we can accomplish. In contrast, if we have all life and no direction, the horse will eventually have a runaway. The life will eventually escalate until there is no control. The Holy Spirit will never lead somebody away from God because the Holy Spirit is God. The Holy Spirit speaks the truth, “This is what we speak, not in words taught us by human wisdom but in words taught by the Spirit, expressing spiritual truths in spiritual words” (1 Corinthians 2:13). The Holy Spirit will always direct us back to Jesus and line up with the Bible.
However, there are times when our focus can become so consumed with the Holy Spirit and the pleasures that we receive in the Spirit that we begin to forget about Jesus Christ and His sacrifice and His goodness. We begin to think that if we do not experience something new in the Holy Spirit that something is wrong. We begin to fall in love with the pleasures of God, instead of with God himself. We begin to take the comfort that we receive from the Holy Spirit for granted and expect it. We begin to get greedy when we come to God, and if we do not experience something supernatural when we come to Him we are disappointed. We may also become judgmental of people that are not experiencing the same thing we are. Instead of being happy that people are spending time in the Spirit and are growing, we try to direct them, instead of letting the Holy Spirit direct them. We must remember to keep a balanced direction to life ratio. If we have all life and no direction it is awful hard to accomplish a job and we could easily get into a wreck. However, if we have all direction and no life our horses will become resentful to the direction. The same is true with our life and the Lord.
**False Direction**- The horse puts slack back into the rein by giving his nose, without breaking in the poll; “rubber-necked horse.” On the outside the horse is giving, but on the inside they are tight and stiff, unwillingly submitted.

**Guidelines to identify false direction –**

1) Do not break in the poll- hairline remains straight; hairline should curve between ears
2) Nose is not directly underneath the eye, tilt their head when they give
3) Can see white in the eye (white leaves when horse is looking back, instead of forward)
4) Poll and loin do not make a perfect “C”
   - Can’t ride a perfect circle (“C” is half an “O”)
5) After tipping the nose, the front feet and hind feet do not travel on the same path as the nose
6) Poll and loin are “I” shaped instead of a “C” shaped in turns
   - Results in dropped shoulders and leaning out in turns, kicking hindquarters out or hopping in spins and roll backs, and not holding a pivot foot
   - Also results in rubber-necked horses, hard mouths, stiff movements, cross-firing, and missing leads

* Pretty much any problem you are going to have with your horse other than a little confusion comes from not having any direction, or having false direction*

The best example of false direction from the Bible would have to be the scribes and Pharisees. Like a horse with false direction, they too looked like they were giving on the outside (tipping their nose, putting slack in the rein). However, on the inside they were tight and stiff (“I” shaped poll and loin, full of self-preservation). “Ye stiffnecked and uncircumcised in heart and ears, ye do always resist the Holy Ghost: as your fathers did, so do ye” (Acts 7:51). They were following the Lord’s commandments on the outside. However, they were stiff-necked and hard-hearted. The Jews missed the first coming of Christ, because they were caught up in religion, and resisted the Holy Ghost.

Listen to what Jesus had to say to the religious people of His day. **“Woe unto you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! For ye make clean the outside of the cup and the platter, but within they are full of extortion and excess. Thou blind Pharisee, cleanse first that which is within the cup and platter, that the outside of them may be clean also. Woe unto you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! For ye are like unto whited sepulchres, which indeed appear beautiful outward, but are within full of dead men’s bones, and of all uncleanness. Even so ye also outwardly appear righteous unto men, but within ye are full of hypocrisy and iniquity”** (Matthew 23:25-28). No matter what kind of act we put on for our friends, Jesus can see right through our mask and see the true intentions of our heart.

I think if Jesus was to return to the Church today, He would have the same thing to say to many of us. God’s primary concern is not for us to attend church on Sunday, go to Wednesday night Bible studies, and go on living our life. God wants our entire life, every second of every day. We are to lay down our life and let the Holy Spirit totally wipe away all our self-
prese
rvation (flesh). Jesus said anyone who wishes to come after Him, must take up their cross daily and follow Him (Luke 9:23). Do not resist the Holy Spirit like the scribes and Pharisees. Let the Holy Spirit totally wipe away your self-preservation and bring direction to your life.

The scribes and Pharisees were stiff-necked because they resisted the Holy Spirit (Acts 7:51). The Holy Spirit is the comforter and removes our self-preservation bringing us total peace in Him. Jesus said, “In me you will have peace, in the world ye shall have tribulation” (John 16:33). The scribes and Pharisees were too busy living in their self-preservation to submit to the will of God and experience the all-consuming peace that can be found “in” Him. Tribulation comes from the Greek word meaning pressure. It is easy to tell if someone is riding with false direction or not. If a person truly has direction the horse will be willingly submitted and will experience peace “in” the person riding them. If the person truly has direction the horse will willingly move off “pressure” and seek the relief that comes from following your will. However, horses that have false direction (unwilling submission) must have constant rein and leg pressure. The instant the “pressure” stops, the horse returns to their own will doing what they want to do. They never learn to find “peace” in your will and must always be ridden with “pressure.”

If you find yourself going through life with no peace and surrounded by tribulation (pressure), stop and submit to the will of God. It is like my dad says, “It takes pressure for relief to be effective and relief for pressure to be effective.” God has us experience pressure in this life to draw us to Him, “that in me ye might have peace” (John 16:33). If you are going to church and doing everything you think you must do to be a good Christian, but are still experiencing pressure in your life, more than likely you are operating through false direction. You are giving on the outside, but on the inside you are still living through self-preservation. Jesus told us “In me you will have peace,” if you do not have peace, you need to learn how to stay “in” Him.

You need to learn how to walk in the power of the Holy Spirit (comforter) and not fall into the deceitful ways of your flesh. “Walk in the Spirit and ye shall not fulfil the lust of the flesh” (Galatians 5:16). Do not live your life operating through self-preservation, unwilling submission, and false direction. Let the Holy Spirit take away your self-preservation and experience the peace that can be found “in” Him. Then enjoy the fulfillment that can be found in living with willing submission, good communication, a balanced direction to life ratio, and a solid foundation of maneuvers. I am far from having this every second of every day with my horse, or with the Lord. However, I know that it is attainable and I will spend the rest of my life trying to attain it, learning to stay “in” Eden, where there is true unity and willing communication.
Balanced Direction to Life Ratio

4 Things Need To Be Established To Prevent Resistance

A) Willing submission  
B) Good communication  
C) Balanced direction to life ratio  
D) Solid foundation of maneuvers
   1) Mechanical  
   2) Mental

Balancing the ratio-
The ratio is determined by the speed which we can willingly bring the life up and willingly direct it on a set line (straight or curved), without losing “direction” (suppleness through the poll and loin).

Balanced direction to life ratio = Suppleness through the poll and loin with speed
Suppleness through the poll and loin = Sanctification
Sanctification = God’s word and Holy Ghost

We need to learn to direct the life and stay in His perfect will. We have to learn to stay in His perfect will; just like the horse has to. Like the horse, start simple; a straight line. Spend a day alone with the Lord and keep direction all day; two forces moving together as one. Like the horse, then get more complicated, curved lines; at work, with other people, during distractions. If direction is lost regroup and start over; perfection always being the goal. Whenever direction is lost, regroup and return to a state of perfection.

God’s word and the Holy Spirit go hand in hand. We are no different than our horses. If we begin to feel tight and stiff in our job, we need to slow down and get direction. Then we can speed up and accomplish more in our job. However, if we never slow down and get direction (sanctification), we will get tighter and tighter, until we eventually lose all confidence and fall apart. Get direction and then bring the life to the direction. Whenever the direction is lost, slow down and get direction, and then bring the life back to the direction. Pretty soon the direction to life ratio will become balanced and you can go at full speed without ever losing direction.

Balancing the direction to life ratio

When I first started teaching my class at MSU I did not have “balancing direction to life ratio” as one of the things needed to prevent resistance. I thought that this concept pretty well fell under the previous three. However, as I began to teach the class, I began to realize the importance of drawing my students’ attention to their direction to life ratio. If their ratio was off, then it had a dramatic impact on the previous three factors. I also noticed the impact that balancing the direction to life ratio had with my own horses in getting a horse to turn around. As I talk about in “Stage 4” in the “Solid Foundation of Maneuvers” section of my class handout, I had two major problems that limited my ability in getting a horse to turn around. These two
problems were: 1) too much kicking, and 2) too much pulling through the turn. Both can be attributed to too much direction and not enough life.

The horse should willingly move off our legs in a forward and lateral motion (life), and should put slack in the rein when the slack is taken out with suppleness through the poll and loin (direction). What had limited my ability in getting a horse to turn around was if I showed the horse where to go and he did not move, I would often put more pressure on the reins and kick with the outside leg. This would cause the horse to become tight and stiff, elevating his head; curving his ribs to the inside of the turn instead of the outside, and swinging his hindquarters out of the turn, instead of holding a pivot foot. The revelation I received one day, which made all the difference in my turns, was balancing the direction to life ratio.

My horse did not need more direction in the turn (pulling on the reins) he needed more life (moving off my legs in a lateral motion). By not having adequate life to push the direction, and instead increasing the direction, the horse became resentful to the direction; shown by elevating his head. Once resentment to the direction crept in, then all hopes of a willing turn vanished. What I realized one day is that I needed to get the life and then direct it. I got my horse to willingly move off my leg at a trot in a straight line and in a big circle (Stage 3). Then I would bring the life back into the turn (Stage 4). Once I started riding my colts with this simple concept, my horses became more willing in the turn, the level of communication increased, and they made a dramatic improvement on the foundation of maneuvers.

What had enabled me to build on the other three factors that prevent resistance in accomplishing the job, was balancing the direction to life ratio. My dad had told me this simple concept of bringing the life into the turn for years. However, like so many things, I had to receive revelation for it to become real in my life. The Old Covenant was all direction and little life. The New Covenant is centered on bringing life to the direction, so that we do not become resentful to the direction. Paul tells us that the letter kills but the Spirit brings life, “He has made us competent as ministers of a new covenant-not of the letter but of the Spirit; for the letter kills, but the Spirit gives life” (2 Corinthians 3:6). If we do not bring life to our direction with our horses, then we will experience death in our willing submission and communication, and all hopes of building a solid foundation of maneuvers vanish.

The same is true with the Lord, if we do not receive directed life when trying to accomplish a job, then we are certain to run into resistance (flesh) and often into disobedience. The Devil knows this; he knows that the only way to keep us away from God is to keep us in the flesh. He likes it when we are in the flesh running away from God, but it is even better sometimes, when we are in the flesh trying to serve God. If he can keep people in the flesh serving God, then he can accomplish two things. Number one, Christian churches would have created a false God; a powerless God. This God will live far way in heaven and will one day return and we will be able to have a real relationship with Him. In the mean time this God will not have any power to work miracles in our life. We will read stories in the Bible of a God that had power for His people and even hear of stories today. However, we will think that this is not for us; we will have “….a form of godliness but denying its power” (2 Timothy 3:5).

The other thing the Devil is able to accomplish by having God’s children full of false direction and no life, is that we will be a poor example to non-Christians. Not only will God’s
children never come into the fullness of Christ, but we will also drive non-Christians away from God instead of to God. Non-Christians will believe that all Christians are hypocrites and we serve a make-believe God. They will think our God must be make-believe, because like all make-believe things He cannot be seen. They will not see God manifested in our action, or in our life. We will be full of sickness and disease, broken hearts, bitterness and selfishness. They will think that if our God was real, then He would show Himself, and He would help His people. It is vital to our success with our horse and with God that we keep a balanced direction to life ratio.

It is important to realize that 3,000 people were saved after seeing the tongues of fire fall on the early disciples, on the day of the Pentecost (Acts 2:41). And five thousand people were saved after seeing a healing of a crippled beggar and this is what the skeptics had to say, “Now when they saw the boldness of Peter and John, and perceived that they were unlearned and ignorant men, they marveled; and they took knowledge of them, that they had been with Jesus. And beholding the man which was healed standing with them, they could say nothing against it. But when they had commanded them to go aside out of the council, they conferred among themselves, Saying, what shall we do to these men? for that indeed a notable miracle hath been done by them is manifest to all them that dwell in Jerusalem; and we cannot deny it” (Acts 4:13-16 KJV). These are the powerful results than can happen by bringing life to our direction and demonstrating the Gospel instead of preaching it. Whenever the power of God is manifested among His children, large numbers are saved and people cannot deny His power.

**Life and Direction: Temptations of Jesus**

After Jesus was baptized and received the Holy Spirit, Satan tried to tempt Him in three ways when He was in the wilderness. First, he tried to get Him to live on words that did not come from God. “The tempter came to him and said, ‘If you are the Son of God, tell these stones to become bread.’ Jesus answered, ‘It is written: Man does not live on bread alone, but on every word that comes from the mouth of God’” (Matthew 4:3-4). Second, he tried to get Him to become self-centered forgetting about worshiping and serving God and focus only on worldly things, “Again, the devil took him to a very high mountain and showed him all the kingdoms of the world and their splendor. ‘All this I will give you,’ he said, ‘if you will bow down and worship me.’ Jesus said to him, ‘Away from me, Satan! For it is written: ‘Worship the Lord your God, and serve him only’”” (Matthew 4:8-10). Finally, he tried to get Him to test God, by testing His power. “Then the devil took him to the holy city and had him stand on the highest point of the temple. ‘If you are the Son of God,’ he said, ‘throw yourself down. For it is written: He will command his angels concerning you, and they will lift you up in their hands, so that you will not strike your foot against a stone.’ Jesus answered him, ‘It is also written: Do not put the Lord your God to the test’” (Matthew 4:5-7). He tried to get Jesus to not be fed by His father, he tried to get Him off track forgetting to eat from His father, and he tried to get Him focused on using His father’s power, instead of being directed by His father. The same way that Satan tempted Jesus after He was baptized in the Holy Spirit, I believe is the same way he tries to tempt us. I believe this because it happened to Jesus and He is our example; what Jesus went through we can expect to go through. Also, I went through the same temptations after I received the Holy Spirit and still find Satan trying to tempt
me in the same three ways.

Number one, Satan tries to limit our direction; to not listen to God. Once we have been baptized in the Holy Spirit, we have the ability to hear from God. We can actually hear God and be taught by God. If Satan can get us to listen to only man and never God, he greatly limits what we can do for the Kingdom. This is the first step of taking our power away for the kingdom of God. We receive revelation and hear from God when we become saved and baptized in the Holy Spirit. At this point we are full of direction and life. If we don’t keep receiving revelation and hear from God, we will either become all direction and no life, no direction and no life, or all life and no direction. We must continue to communicate with God. This is why Jesus said, “Man does not live on bread alone, but on every word that comes from God.” God’s words are life; He speaks life unto us. If we do not continue to hear from Him we will start to die.

Number two, Satan tries to get our focus from building God’s kingdom, to building our kingdom; from worshiping and serving God, to focusing only on worldly things. Once a person starts working miracles for the kingdom of God, people will want to glorify the person instead of glorifying God. When Jesus spoke to the multitude and performed miracles, they wanted to crown him as king. “When Jesus therefore perceived that they would come and take him by force, to make him a king, he departed again into a mountain himself alone” (John 6:15). Satan will try to shift our focus to becoming a mighty man of God, doing wondrous things for God, instead of being a humble servant like Christ was.

Instead of preaching a spirit-filled sermon and turning to God for confirmation, Satan will try to get us to look for confirmation from the congregation, which leads to praise and gives us self-fulfillment by receiving acceptance from man instead of God. Satan will also try to get us consumed with worldly things so that we forget about our obedience to God. Just like Eve in the Garden of Eden, Satan is always trying to wave things that appeal to our eyes (flesh) in front of us, trying to see if he can get us to stumble. Whether it is pride, fear, a job, selfish ambitions, the opposite sex, drugs, etc., he is constantly trying to keep us focused on worldly things and worldly behaviors.

Number three, Satan will try to get us to become consumed with wanting to see miracles and testing the Lord. Instead of praying over someone to be healed because the Lord told them to, because the Lord has prepared the victim’s heart to be healed, they pray over someone to be healed, wanting to see a miracle, testing the Lord. Satan told Jesus to throw Himself off the pinnacle and His father would save Him. Satan dared Jesus saying if “He was truly the son of God” then His father would save Him, “If you are the Son of God,” he said, “throw yourself down. For it is written: ‘He will command his angels concerning you, and they will lift you up in their hands, so that you will not strike your foot against a stone’” (Matthew 4:6). Satan tried to get Him to go against the will of His father and use His father’s power, without receiving direction.

Satan tries to get us to do the same thing. Instead of getting direction from God and becoming filled with the Holy Spirit before praying over someone, he will try to get us to pray on our own will proclaiming a miracle. The miracle does not happen because it was not in the will of God and people’s faith is weakened.
Whenever Jesus was questioned about what He had said or what He had done, He always said that He did not speak on His own accord, but only the words that His father had given him, “Now they know that everything you have given me comes from you. For I gave them the words you gave me and they accepted them. They knew with certainty that I came from you, and they believed that you sent me” (John 17:7-8). Jesus was led by the Holy Spirit and communicated with His father, doing the will of His father; this is to be an example for us. We need to realize that by ourselves we do not have the power to heal; it is from the power of the Holy Spirit and Jesus Christ that He can use us to heal. If we do not feel the power of the Holy Spirit leading us to pray over someone and proclaim a miracle, it does no one any good to profess a healing. We must be led by God; God does the work, God heals their heart (or the hearts around them) and then the disease is secondary. I had many people pray over me when I was sick. But the Lord did not heal me until I had a change of heart. I am not by any means saying that it is wrong to pray over sick and diseased people; God answers prayers. Cast your cares upon the Lord, “Cast your cares on the LORD and he will sustain you” (Psalm 55:22).

All I am saying is that if we confess a miracle, we better have heard from the Lord telling us that He has healed them. Otherwise, Satan can come in and destroy our faith or other people’s faith around us. This is the goal of Satan; to steer us away from God. If he can lead us to believe that we serve a God that is a dud, one that cannot heal us, then he can shatter the faith of many people. I am not down playing miracles in the slightest. If you ask me, our society does not believe, or ask God for miracles near enough. We serve a mighty God, a God of miracles.

However, like Jesus and the disciples did, we must receive direction from God and the power of the Holy Spirit first. There wasn’t anyone that Jesus prayed over that did not get healed. This is because everyone He prayed for was ready to be healed. However, when Jesus healed the man by the pool, he was the only person He healed, “Then Jesus said to him, ‘Get up! Pick up your mat and walk.’ At once the man was cured; he picked up his mat and walked” (John 5:8-9). There were many sick people by the pool; however Jesus only healed one man. If Jesus does not want us to be sick, why didn’t He heal everyone by the pool?

The reason is He was only led by His father to pray for one person. There was only one person that was ready to be healed. By Jesus’ stripes we are healed, “and with his stripes we are healed” (Isaiah 53:5 KJV). God wants to heal us. However, He is more concerned with the health of our spirit, than the health of our flesh. This is why I believe I got sick and why the prayers of so many people went unanswered for a long time. I was not ready to be healed yet. However, once my spirit became healthy, then I became healthy.

Sometimes, just as Satan did with Jesus, he will give us Scripture saying that “if we are truly the son of God, then God will save us.” We then proclaim a healing instead of receiving direction. When the healing does not take place, we begin to question Scripture and the power of God, weakening our faith. This is why it is so important to make sure we are receiving direction when we are praying over people, so that we do not profess something that does not happen and as a result weaken people’s faith, thinking that we serve a God that is a dud: A God that does not care about us, a God that does not answer our prayers.
On the same lines as miracles, Satan will also get people to be totally consumed with the manifestations of the Spirit. He will try to get them to forget about loving on Jesus and be totally focused on the pleasures we receive from the Spirit. He will then lead us to believe that if people are not experiencing the exact same manifestations we are, they are wrong. He will try to get us to force people to experience the same things we have. Instead of being filled with the Holy Spirit and speaking only the words that we have heard, we go on a rampage speaking our own words. Instead of letting the Holy Spirit work in their life, we try to tell them how the Holy Spirit should be working in their life.

I am not saying that it is wrong to try to encourage others to experience manifestations of the Holy Spirit. Throughout history and still today God has used many people in amazing ways by helping other people experience manifestations of the Holy Spirit. Peter saved three thousand people in one day, after they saw manifestations of the Spirit. “And there appeared unto them cloven tongues like as of fire, and it sat upon each of them. And they were all filled with the Holy Ghost, and began to speak with other tongues, as the Spirit gave them utterance” (Acts 2:3, 4). “Then they that gladly received his word were baptized: and the same day there were added unto them about three thousand souls” (Acts 2:41). However, I do feel it is wrong when the manifestations become the only focus, and we start pushing people away from God instead of to God.

I believe that these are the three ways that Satan tries to get baptized Christians in the Holy Spirit off track. He tries to alter our direction and life. If we have no life and no direction, we are no threat to Satan (unsaved). If we have all false direction and no life, we are a very little threat to Satan (all religion/ Pharisees). If we have all life and no direction, we will become out of control (focused only on manifestations, not loving our neighbor). However, once we receive direction with life by becoming baptized in the Holy Spirit, we have the ability to do amazing things for the kingdom of God. “But you will receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem and in Judea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth” (Acts 1:8). Satan knows this and he tries to take our power for the Kingdom away. He tries to take our direction away (hearing from God), make us become self-centered or caught up in the world, or shift our focus to only life and forget about direction. We can see from Scripture that Satan tried to tempt Jesus these three ways after He was baptized and received the Holy Spirit, and I too have been tempted the same three ways.

I have definitely been guilty of all three of the ways that Satan tries to get us off track. I easily get off track and consumed with the world, forgetting to press into the Lord and let Him teach me. Just like a horse, I am constantly bouncing back and forth from being on the right path to becoming lost and confused. From letting God teach me, to having my only source of teaching come from church once a week; from having direction from Scripture, but no life from the Holy Spirit to bring the Scripture to life.

I have also been guilty of worrying about what other people think of my ministry. I have enjoyed the praise that I received after I have preached something that the Lord had given me, instead of realizing anything good that came out of my mouth had to come straight from God and give Him the total credit. I admit I have sometimes gotten caught up in the praise that followed speaking what the Lord had given me. It is not that I wanted to speak what the Lord had given to
receive praise, but after I had spoken I will admit, that the praise felt good to my flesh. I think if a person has spoken the words of God, they should try to be unmoved by the congregation, whether the congregation is trying to praise them, or stone them.

It is also so easy to become consumed with worldly things and fall into worldly behaviors, forgetting to worship and serve only God. I guess the main thing that I have learned is that if you give Satan an inch he’ll take a mile. I have learned that if I am not totally focused on God and building His kingdom that I am very easy to lead into worldly affairs. I am a very passionate person and I easily get caught up in what I am doing. If I am not continually focused on worshiping and serving God, I easily fall into worldly affairs.

I have also gotten caught up in manifestations, miracles and the power of the Holy Spirit. I have often tried to push people too hard, trying to encourage them to experience the Lord. Instead of introducing them to the Holy Spirit and letting the Holy Spirit teach them, I have gotten in the way too much. With my excitement in my experiences in the Lord, I have often pushed to the point that I know people have ended up feeling resentful.

In order to be successful with our horse, or with God, we must learn to keep a balanced direction to life ratio. When I was at cow camp, I had all direction and no life, which caused me to fall apart in stressful situations. However, there have been times when I was consumed with experiencing the life of the Holy Spirit and forgot the simple command to “love your neighbor as yourself.” I often became selfish for God, becoming consumed with His presence and thought if I couldn’t spend time with Him, I couldn’t love my neighbor. However, what I need to learn is to draw close to Him through loving my neighbor. Just like a colt with all life and no direction, we need to direct the life, in order to accomplish a job. We need to keep a balance between direction and life.
Solid Foundation of Maneuvers

4 Things Needed To Prevent Resistance

A) Willing submission
B) Good communication
C) Balanced direction to life ratio
D) Solid foundation of maneuvers
   1) Mechanical
   2) Mental

There are three parts to the horse’s body, three parts to God’s body, and three primary parts to the Church’s body. All the parts must come together in perfect unity to accomplish a job with a horse and with God.

Part 1 – Solid Foundation of Maneuvers (Mechanical)-

Parts of the Body
Hindquarters = Apostle, “power” (bring miraculous power to the body)
Head and neck = Prophet, “mind” (deliver direct messages from God to the body)
Shoulders = Teachers, Evangelists, Pastors, “guidance” (solid scriptural guidance and teaching)

Four Mechanical Stages/ Training maturity (Horse):
  Stage 1 – Pivoting around the inside front foot.
  Stage 2 – Hindquarters pulling the horse in a reverse motion.
  Stage 3 – Lateral movement of shoulders and hindquarters together.
  Stage 4 – Pivoting around the inside hind foot.

Three Mechanical Stages/ Training maturity (God):
  Stage 1 – Baby Christian – received salvation, very little scriptural foundation
  Stage 2 – Adolescent Christian – growing in scriptural truths
  Stage 3 – Mature Christian – solid scriptural foundation

Introduction – Parts of Body

Before I go into discussing the different parts of the body and how they function. I would like to point out the very obvious. Although they have different functions, they are all part of the same body, they are all united. They may not always be “in” unity, but they are never disunited (separated). The horse has three very separate and distinct parts to its body; head and neck, shoulders, and hindquarters, and the Church has three separate and very distinct parts to its body as well; apostle figures, prophet figures, and figures that teach and preach the gospel. “And God hath set some in the church, first apostles, secondarily prophets, thirdly Teachers” (1 Corinthians 12:28). Apostles were men with miraculous power. Prophets were men that delivered direct messages from God to the people and teachers, pastors and evangelists were to teach and preach the Gospel, teaching and guiding us in solid scriptural truths (sound doctrine). Did the apostles preach the gospel, did they prophesy, can teachers prophesy and work miracles, can a prophet teach and heal? The answer to all these questions is yes.
What gives the children of God the ability to teach, work miracles, and prophesy? Well we know that God gives gifts unto men. “Wherefore he saith, when he ascended up on high, he led captivity captive, and gave gifts unto men” (Ephesians 4:8) and these gifts include miraculous power, prophecy and teaching. “For to one is given by the Spirit the word of wisdom; to another the word of knowledge by the same Spirit; To another faith by the same Spirit; to another the gifts of healing by the same Spirit; To another the working of miracles; to another prophecy, to another discerning of spirits; to another divers kinds of tongues; to another the interpretation of tongues” (1 Corinthians 12: 8-10). We can see the miraculous power and gifts of prophecy in this list of gifts and our teachers should have knowledge and wisdom, and faith is the gift that binds it all together. “But without faith it is impossible to please him…” (Hebrews 11:6).

There is no doubt that God gives gifts unto men. “Wherefore he saith, when he ascended up on high, he led captivity captive, and gave gifts unto men” (Ephesians 4:8). I think there is a little confusion on this verse, however. Listen very carefully to what I am about to tell you, the Corinthians stumbled on this concept and many continue to walk in confusion today. The scripture above says, “Gifts unto men.” The meaning of that last word is very important. “Men” comes from the Greek word meaning man faced; a human being. Ok, keep that in mind and go to John 1:12, “But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on his name: Which were born, not of blood, nor of the will of flesh, not of the will of man, but of God”. Ok, Son in the Greek means a child (as produced): child, daughter, son. Flesh in the Greek means flesh (stripped of skin) meat, the body as opposed to soul or spirit, external, human nature (with it’s frailties [physically or morally] and passion) or (specifically) a human being: carnally minded, fleshly.

Power comes from the Greek word meaning ability: privilege, force, capacity, competency, freedom, mastery, magistrate, superhuman, potenmate, token of control, delegated influence: authority, jurisdiction, liberty, power, might, strength. God does give gifts unto men (flesh) to build the Kingdom. However, through the spirit of Christ, His children have power (superhuman, ability) to do mighty things for the kingdom of God that far surpass that of man. We are born into this world twice, once as a man (flesh), the other as a child of God (Spirit).

I see the same problem that Paul had with the Corinthians is the same problem that God has with the Church today. We are immature and carnally minded. “And I, brethren, could not speak unto you as unto spiritual, but as unto carnal, even as unto babes in Christ. I have fed you with milk, and not with meat: for hitherto ye were not able to bear it, neither yet now are ye able. For ye are yet carnal: for whereas there is among you envying, and strife, and divisions, are ye not carnal and walking as men” (1 Corinthians 3:1-3). The Corinthians were walking as fleshly men (carnally minded), not children of God (spiritually minded). They did not understand a very simple concept that I too missed for so many years, and many of my brothers and sisters in Christ are still missing today. The simple concept of what it means to be “in” Christ. For so many years I did not know what it meant to be “in” my flesh or “in” the Spirit. “This I say then walk in the spirit and you will not fulfill the lusts of the flesh” (Galatians 5:16). Neither did the Corinthians, they did not understand that we have a fleshly body and a spiritual body, a natural body and a spiritual body, a terrestrial body and a celestial body, a corrupt body (sin) and an incorrupt body (righteous), first man Adam, second man spirit
of Christ (1 Corinthians 15:39-50). The two major problems of the Corinthians were that they were ignorant of being “in” the flesh and “in” the Spirit and they did not understand the resurrection; they were carnally minded.

The Corinthians did not understand the resurrection in 1 Corinthians 15 and many Christians today do not understand it as well. The resurrection is for now, as we die to the flesh we begin to live “in” the spiritual. This is why Paul says, “I protest for your rejoicing which I have in Christ Jesus our Lord, I die daily” (1 Corinthians 15:31). This statement right here brings 1 Corinthians 15 from a day in the far off distance, to the present. People that understand this concept have resurrection power in their life and go on to maturity and people that do not, remain carnally minded and in infancy (Corinthians). People that have received revelation of the resurrection power of God in their life, receive the power of Christ in their body to work as Christ did. “Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that believeth on me, the works that I do shall he do also; and greater works than these shall he do; because I go unto my father” (John 14:12). How could we possibly do what Jesus had been doing? We are only men; Jesus was the son of God? Yes, this is the hang up with so many Christians. With our first birth we were only men (natural, flesh). However, with our second birth we become a child of God (supernatural, spiritual). If we choose to live in the flesh we are limited by the limitations of man (sin). However, if we choose to die to ourselves like Paul, we may live in the spiritual and God can manifest His power through His son that is in you “For you have not received the spirit of bondage again to fear. But you have received the Spirit of adoption, where by we cry, Abba Father” (Romans 8:15).

The reason why there are not revivals and mighty works in the body of Christ, like in the day of the Pentecost, is because the early apostles had the resurrection power of Christ in their bodies and many of us today do not. There must be death before there can be life. In the same way we must kill off our horse’s self-preservation in order to reach true unity. We too must kill off our own flesh. Jesus had to die a horrible death in the flesh to be resurrected in Spirit; this is our example. Our body is the temple of the Holy Ghost. “What? Know ye not that your body is the temple of the Holy Ghost which is in you, which ye have of God, and ye are not your own?” (1 Corinthians 6:19). We are the temple of God, and what did Jesus do? He destroyed the temple and raised it up again. “And said, this fellow said, I am able to destroy the temple of God, and to build it in three days” (Matthew 26:61). What did Jesus say it meant to truly follow Him? “And he said to them all, if any man will come after me, let him deny himself, and take up his cross daily, and follow me” (Luke 9:23). We must die, it is that simple. We need to get rid of the old man, the fleshly man, the son of perdition (sin). “Let no man deceive you by any means: for that day shall not come, except there come a falling away first, and that man of sin be revealed, the son of perdition; Who opposeth and exalteth himself above all that is called God, or that is worshiped; so that he as God sitteth in the temple of God, showing himself that he is God” (2 Thessalonians 2:3-4).

Has the son of perdition been revealed in you? Do you like to be worshipped by men? Do you look for people to tell you, you are smart, good looking, and a good person? Do you constantly have to have the encouragement and the acceptance of people around you? There is a time for this in babies. I am sure Mary and Joseph encouraged Jesus as He was growing. However, we must reach maturity; we must follow the example of Christ. Praise from man
brings pride, not humility. **“God resists the proud, but gives grace to the humble” (James 4:6).** Did Christ look for the acceptance of man? No, when people tried to praise Him, He ran to the seclusion of His father. The verse in Thessalonians 2:4 is often taught referring to the end times, the great tribulation, and the antichrist. Well, Jesus told us **“Ye shall know them by their fruits” (Matthew 7:16).** Jesus also said if we believed in Him, we would do what He had been doing. People are entitled to believe whatever they want. However, I have only seen the fruit of what Jesus had been doing in people’s lives that apply 2 Thessalonians 2:4 to their own life, on a daily basis. It is only when we are willing to lose our life for Christ that we can gain it.

It is only through our death, that the resurrection power can come. **“So also is the resurrection of the dead. It is sown in corruption; it is sown in incorruption: It is sown in dishonor; it is raised in glory: it is sown in weakness it is raised in power. It is sown a natural body; it is raised a spiritual body” (1 Corinthians 15:42-44).** This might go against the doctrine of some churches, but ask yourselves, if your church does not believe this, is there resurrection power in your church? Are the members of your church doing what Jesus had been doing? Are there healings, prophecies, and large revivals spurring out of your church? Are lives being touched and changed on a daily basis? People are entitled to believe whatever they want, but I will believe my Bible and the words of Jesus Christ. Jesus tells me in Scripture, **“Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that believeth on me, the works that I do shall he do also; and greater works than these shall he do; because I go unto my father” (John 14:12).** Do you believe this scripture? Do you see this happening around you? Why don’t we see more men doing what Jesus had been doing?

I’ll tell you what I think. **“For the time will come when they will not endure sound doctrine; but after their own lusts shall they heap to themselves teachers, having itching ears; And they shall turn away their ears from the truth, and shall be turned unto fables” (2 Timothy 4:3-4).** What did Paul say, **“As we said before, so say I now again, if any man preach any other gospel unto you than that ye have received, let him be accursed” (Galatians 1:9).** What is the Gospel, **“But we preach Christ crucified, unto the Jews a stumbling block, and unto the Greeks foolishness” (1 Corinthians 1:23).** Christ crucified, He is our example, and we are to follow Him to the cross and all the way to the grave. **“Therefore we are buried with him by baptism into death: that like as Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life” (Romans 6:4).** This is when we see the resurrection power manifested in our life. It cannot come from holding tight to our religious beliefs and our own will power; it has to come from dying to our self. It is not easy telling people that they must die to themselves, but that is the truth, that is the Gospel. As long as there is self-preservation in our horses we can expect resistance and the same is true with us. Although, we may have a solid mechanical foundation of maneuvers (understanding of Scripture), if we do not kill off the self-preservation (flesh), we have no hope of ever reaching true unity. It is only through killing off the self-preservation, that we have any hope of becoming one.

As we begin to kill off more of our horses’ self-preservation, our horses becomes handier and the same is true with us. The gifts to teach, work miracles, and prophesy do not come from us, they come from the Spirit. The gifts are given to our old man so that we can learn and help others come into a new man. **“That ye put off concerning the former conversations the old**
man, which is corrupt according to the deceitful lust; and be renewed in the spirit of your mind; and that ye put on the new man, which after God is created in righteousness and true holiness” (Ephesians 4:22-23). The old man has limitation (fleshly). However, the new man is a child of God (spiritual). I have the gift of tongues. This was given to me as a gift from God and it never leaves. I can speak in tongues when I am in the flesh and when I am in the Spirit. Some people do not have the gift of tongues; they can only speak in tongues when they are “in” the Spirit. The same is true with every one of the gifts; they are given unto men. As we grow “in” Christ, the old man is killed off and we begin to grow as a child of God. God can then manifest words of wisdom, knowledge, healings, miracles, prophecy, discerning of spirits, kinds of tongues, and interpretation of tongues. How is this possible? It is through the Spirit. These are the gifts of the Spirit and when we are in the Spirit, God can use any of these gifts, at any time, in any person, for the edification of the body of Christ. Unless we do not believe this, unless we put limitation on the Holy Spirit and say that He cannot do this. Unless we have blasphemed against the Holy Spirit and said, this is not how the Holy Spirit works.

**Blasphemy against the Holy Spirit and Gifts of the Spirit**

Blasphemy in the Greek comes from a word meaning *villication* (especially against God) and is translated to: blasphemy, evil speaking, and railing. Webster’s dictionary defines “vilify” as: 1) to lower in estimation or importance, 2) to utter slanderous and abusive statements against. If you are slandering someone who is filled with the Spirit, you are slandering the Holy Spirit and this is unforgivable. “Wherefore I say unto you, All manner of sin and blasphemy shall be forgiven unto men: but the blasphemy against the Holy Ghost shall not be forgiven unto men. And whosoever speaketh a word against the Son of man, it shall be forgiven him: But whosoever speaketh against the Holy Ghost, it shall not be forgiven him, neither in this word, neither in the world to come” (Matthew 12:31-32).

If you are unsure if something came from the Holy Spirit, just turn it over to God and let Him decide. If something is not in direct opposition of Scripture, do not say with certainty it did not come from God. Because if it did and you are wrong, you are have blasphemed against the Holy Spirit and that is unforgivable. I see this happening a lot with the manifestations of the Spirit. Scripture says, “Eye hath not seen, nor ear heard, neither have entered into the heart of man, the things which God hath prepared for them that love him” (1 Corinthians 2:9). Just because God chooses to manifest Himself to someone else in a different way than you, be careful judging that person. You may be judging God and blaspheming against the Holy Spirit.

I have heard people say God has given them discernment and they know if something did not come from God. If this is true, you should have nothing but pure love in your heart towards the person. If God truly has given you the spirit of discernment, you will be filled with nothing but meekness (humility), not pride, in showing them where they are in fault. “Bretheren, if a man be overtaken in a fault, ye which are spiritual, restore such a one in a spirit of meekness” (Galatians 6:1). Keep in mind our flesh is in direct opposition with anything that is of the Holy Spirit, make sure that it is not your flesh saying something did not come from God. If something is not of God, He will give you a scripture and you will have nothing but pure love in your heart (meekness). It is always our flesh that holds us and others back from experiencing more of God. In the same way, that it is our horse’s self-preservation that holds them back from maturing with
This is why newborn believers receive the gifts of the Spirit, easier than older believers do and younger horses are easier to work with than older horses. It is because newborn believers are open to God and there are no limitations, no false teaching. However, some older believers have been taught things of the Spirit that may not be true. They may have put limitations on God and may have blasphemed against the Holy Spirit. I have heard it taught that God gave special power to the early disciples to preach the gospel and the gifts that they possessed are no longer available today. This is unscriptural and simply not true and is a very dangerous teaching. It is this teaching that has taken the power of God out of our churches and has limited God’s ability to move amongst His people. Instead of coming expecting to experience the power of God like the disciples did in the Pentecost, we are taught that God does not do that anymore and guess what, He doesn’t among those people. The Holy Spirit did not move among the Pharisees, He moved among the Gentiles. This is why we see Pentecostal meetings in African tribes, foreign countries, and in groups of newborn believers. They have not been taught to put limitations on the Holy Spirit. They are open to God and the power of the Holy Spirit and God showers them with His blessings.

God wants to move mightily in our churches, God wants to bless us; God wants to give good gifts to His children. “If ye then, being evil, know how to give good gifts unto your children, how much more shall your Father which is in heaven give good things to them that ask him” (Matthew 7:11). It is ok to ask your heavenly Father, for spiritual gifts to help you grow and help build the Kingdom. Paul says, “Covet earnestly the best gifts” (1 Corinthians 12:31). Yes, if we do not love, then all the gifts are meaningless (1 Corinthians 13). However, we are missing the point. If we are in the Spirit we are going to love, love is one of the fruits of the Spirit. Paul had to remind the Corinthians to love, because they were in the flesh, not in the Spirit, they were carnally minded. If we have learned anything from the Corinthians, hopefully we have learned the importance of being “in” the Spirit and not “in” the flesh, spiritually minded instead of carnally minded. We should covet the best gift, to build God’s kingdom. The only time we forget to love is when we are focused on building our kingdom, instead of God’s kingdom. As long as we are focused on God and living “in” the Spirit we will love.

Around some Christians, I get the feeling that it is wrong to ask God for spiritual gifts. Many people are hesitant to go to God to ask for spiritual gifts, to help them mature in their walk and build the kingdom of God. However, they do not hesitate the least bit to pray for fleshly gifts like winning games, getting a job, and making money to buy more earthly things. I think there is something dreadfully wrong with this picture. Stop and think of all the fleshly gifts you have asked God for and how He has answered your prayers. Do you pray with the same intensity for spiritual gifts? We are supposed to spread the Gospel and help people come closer to God. What greater gift could we ask for than the gift of prophecy? The ability to deliver a direct message from God, to a member of the body. What about wisdom and knowledge, what a gift for the body of Christ? Think of all the crowds that were saved through healings, five thousand people were saved after witnessing one healing in Acts. If we would only love our God, with ALL our heart, with ALL our soul and with ALL our strength and not get caught up in carnal things like the Corinthians. God could then shower down His blessings and gifts for the edification of the body of Christ.
Division comes from man, not from God. Division among believers comes as a result of two reasons. It is because either everyone is in the flesh (old man), or some people are in the flesh and some are in the Spirit (new man). This was the problem with the Corinthians and is still causing many problems among believers today. We are carnally minded and there is naturally going to be division among men. This is why Christ came, that through Him we may be unified. We cannot have two groups of people. One group that wants to die to their self and experience God in their life and another group that wants to play religion and go to church on Sunday and continue to live their life. The group that wants to die to their self and experience God will, and the group that wants to go to church on Sunday and continue living their life will be very uncomfortable around the Spirit-filled believers.

It is similar to people that like to ride with self-preservation in their horse and people that like to get the self-preservation out. The people that don’t mind the self-preservation are always whipping, spurring, jerking and pulling and many times don’t care if their horse loses confidence and starts to buck. Whereas the other group, likes to slow down and take the extra time to build the horse’s confidence and remove the self-preservation. Although the two groups of people might get a job done together, they are not going to see things eye to eye. I have worked around people that were in both groups and I too have been in both groups. It has been through my own personal experience and from observing others that I have found we are much more productive if we take the extra time, to get the self-preservation out, before we try to accomplish the job. The kicker is however, we can accomplish a job just fine with self-preservation in our horses, and I did it for years. It is just a matter of how much resistance we can live with. The same is true with the Lord. We can accomplish a job for the Lord in the flesh. However, we are sure to run into resistance and are always under the limitations of our fleshly man. We live our life with a mechanical foundation of maneuvers and never learn the power of the mental foundation (mind of Christ) “true unity.” “For who hath known the mind of the Lord, that he may instruct him? But we have the mind of Christ” (1 Corinthians 2:16).

When we are riding a colt, at times it may feel like the horse is disunited, his head is going one way and his feet are going the other way. However, when direction (suppleness through the poll and loin) comes, the three parts of the horse come into perfect unity. The same is true with the body of Christ, although at times it may feel like we are disunited. When direction comes (Holy Spirit, sanctification) we will come into perfect unity as well. With both the horse and Church body, if direction does not eventually come when there is disunity, self-preservation will escalate and there is certain to be a blow up, resulting in a fight or flight response. This is what happened to the Corinthians and is still happening among the Church today. It is kind of funny to watch people that are having problems with their horse. If they would just slow down and get rid of the self-preservation all their problems would go away, but they are often times in too big of a hurry to get to the heart of the problem. The same is true with believers in the Church.

Solid Foundation of Maneuvers

Part 1 (Mechanical) – Ability to move the 3 three parts of the horse (head and neck, shoulders, and hindquarters) in any direction to accomplish any job
3 Parts of horse’s body – Head and neck, shoulders, hindquarters
3 Parts of the Church’s body – Apostles, prophets, teachers

“And God hath set some in the church, first apostles, secondarily prophets, thirdly Teachers” (1 Corinthians 12:28).
“And he gave some, apostles: and some prophets, and some evangelists, and some pastors, and teachers; for the perfecting of the saints for the work of ministry, for the edifying of the body of Christ. Till we all come in the unity of the faith and of the knowledge of the Son of God, unto a perfect man, unto the measure of the stature of the fullness of Christ” (Ephesians 4:11-13).


2) Prophets: from two words – Foreteller, (“prophet”); by analogy and inspired speaker, by extension a poet: - prophet

3) Teachers: an instructor; - doctor, master, teacher
   Evangelists: a preacher of the gospel; - evangelist
   Pastors: a Shepard (lit. or fig.): - pastor

**Parts of the Body: Church and Horse**

The apostles are the hindquarters that bring miraculous power to the body of Christ. Without the power from the hindquarters driving the body to accomplish a job, the horse is very limited and so is the body of Christ. The prophets are the head and neck, God tells the prophets where He wants the body to move. Just as God spoke to the Israelites directing them where they should go, He can speak to us and direct our path. It is the teachers, evangelists, and pastors that keep the body moving together. The shoulders bring guidance to the body with a solid scriptural foundation. The driving force to all three parts is obviously the power of the Holy Spirit. We do not have any power within ourselves. The power to do mighty things for the kingdom of God can only come through the power of the Holy Spirit. Apostles receive miraculous power through the Holy Spirit, prophets can only know the future through the Holy Spirit, and the power to teach and preach the gospel should come from the Holy Spirit as well. It is through the Holy Spirit that God can use any part of the body, in any person, at any time, if we would only believe in Him. “Verily, verily, I say unto you, he that believeth on me, the works that I do shall he do also; and greater works than these shall he do; because I go unto my Father” (John 14:10). Jesus had miraculous power to heal, spoke of things that would happen in the future and taught the ways of His father giving solid scriptural guidance.

These are the three primary parts to the body of Christ and to the horse. However, there are many other parts that help to make up the horse; outer functions such as the hair and skin for protection, layers of fat for warmth and insulation, structural support such as bones, and cartilage, muscles to give power, internal organs, veins and arteries that connect the entire body delivering blood and oxygen, eyes, ears and many others. There are many small parts that are so important to the entire body. If one part decides it is not going to function properly, although the
impact might not show immediately depending on the part, ultimately the overall production of the body is weakened and may result in the death of the entire body. The same is true with the body of Christ; we are one body but many members.

“For the body is not one member, but many. If the foot shall say, because I am not the hand, I am not of the body; is it therefore not of the body? And if the ear shall say, because I am not the eye, I am not of the body; is it therefore not of the body? If the whole body were an eye, where were the hearing? If the whole were hearing, where were the smelling? But now hath God set the members every one of them in the body, as it hath pleased him. And if they were all one member, where were the body? But now are they many members, yet but one body? And the eye cannot say unto the hand, I have no need of thee: nor again the head to the feet, I have no need of you. Nay, much more those members of the body, which seem to be more feeble, are necessary: And those members of the body, which we think to be less honorable, upon these we bestow more abundant honor; and our uncomely parts have more abundant comeliness. For our comely parts have no need: but God hath tempered the body together, having given more abundant honor to that part which lacked. That there should be no schism in the body; but that the members should have the same care one for another. And whether one member suffer, all the members suffer with it; or one member be honored, all the members rejoice with it. Now ye are the body of Christ and members in particular” (1 Corinthians 12:14-27).

The horse and the Church have three primary parts. However, there are many other parts that help to make up the entire body. Part of a mechanical foundation of maneuvers is to find where you fit into the body and do your part to help the body function. This may be anything from financial support, to cleaning the church, to preaching. All the parts are important and like I said before, God can use any part of the body, at any time, to accomplish anything He wants to. God has unlimited power, it is us who limit God’s power to be used in our life, because of our unwillingness to submit to His will.

**Mechanical Foundation of Maneuvers**

When riding a horse, as long as we have direction (suppleness through the poll and loin) the three parts of the body will be in perfect unity. There will be no division. However, when self-preservation comes into the horse, they will become stiff through the poll and loin and all direction leaves. We are then left with a horse that is tight and stiff and filled with self-preservation. If something is not done to soften the poll and loin bringing direction back to the horse, it is very easy to have a blow up and get into a wreck.

If we do not have direction unifying the three parts of the horse, we have to treat each part of the body as a separate unit, to prevent a wreck. Although, this is not how the horse is designed and this is not the goal. Until direction (suppleness through the poll and loin) comes, we must have order to prevent a wreck. As we begin to bring order to the three parts of the body, we direct them to their designed position (mechanical foundation). As long as we are riding with willing submission and good communication, direction will eventually begin to work its way into the horse and eventually all the parts will be moving together in perfect unity (mental foundation). The same is true with the body of Christ, if the members of the body are not in
unity; we need to work on the mechanics, until direction (sanctification) comes. If we are operating with willing submission and good communication, once direction has come, all the parts will come into perfect unity, and there will be no more division.

I will give an example of this concept trying to get a horse to lope a circle. Now the horse has three parts; head and neck, shoulders, and hindquarters. Ideally to lope a perfect circle the poll and loin should make a “C” shape (the loin does not actually make that tight of a “C”, it is more of a quarter circle), then all we have to do is keep forward motion and we have a perfect circle. What I have just described is direction, as long as we have direction we will have no trouble loping a circle. However, there are times when self-preservation works its way into the horse and the poll and loin become stiff making an “I” shape. It is in these moments that we must speak to the three parts of the horse individually to prevent a runaway. If the poll and loin become stiff and we keep pulling on the horse trying to lope a circle, self-preservation will escalate until they become resentful to all direction and pull their head straight and run off.

The horse has three parts; head and neck, shoulders, and hindquarters. As long as two of the three parts are in line, the horse will travel on the set path that we have chosen. Let me explain this. If we direct the head and neck to the right, and the shoulders and hindquarters continue to push in a straight line, we will continue to travel on a straight line, regardless of the head direction. In these situations the body is in disunity, the head is going one way and the feet are going another. This is not how God designed the horse; they are designed to move together. So how do we fix the problem? We can fix the problem two ways; mechanically or mentally. The first way is to slow down and get direction, the three parts of the horse will then come into unity, and the problem will be solved (mental solution). Although this is the best way, this option is not always available. Like when somebody throws a hat under your horse and he takes his head, tucks his tail and runs for dear life. It is in these moments that we need to understand the mechanics of the horse, and how to fix the problem mechanically.

If we pull the head to the right and the horse continues to travel in a straight line, we have two methods of bringing the horse back into line. The first way is to move the shoulders the same direction as the head with our outside leg (Stage 4) and the second way is to move the hindquarters the opposite direction of the head (Stage 1), with our inside leg. Both ways will bring the feet back into line with the head and they will travel on the set line. Although, both ways will work (shoulders in, hindquarters out), most of the time there is only one way that will work in a high self-preservation situation. Let’s think about this. When a horse’s self-preservation is engaged they will become stiff through the poll and loin and it is this stiffness through the poll and loin that is preventing us from bringing the horse’s feet back into line with the head. The horse’s self-preservation is telling him, “Save your life, get away from the pressure, buck, or run off.” In order to remove the self-preservation the horse needs to become supple through the poll and loin (direction + willing submission and good communication). The horse cannot become supple through the poll and loin if we are kicking them with a spur with our outside leg (trying to move the shoulders in). If someone poked you in the ribs, you would move away from the pressure, not into it right? The horse does the same thing. As we begin to kick them with our outside leg, they arc their ribs away from the direction we want to go, instead of in the direction we want them to go.
The same thing happens in the Church. The head and neck are the prophet figures (message from God to the body), the shoulders are the teacher figures (Scripture/teaching) and the hindquarters are the apostle figures (miraculous power). When there is a lot of self-preservation in the body (fleshly, carnal minded) and not much direction (sanctification, Holy Spirit) we need to be careful how we try to deliver the message. If we come at them giving them a message from God (head and neck) and then back it up with lots of scripture (shoulders) and there is no direction (sanctification/Holy Spirit), then the body will get stiffer and stiffer until they either get up and leave, or get on the fight (fight or flight). However, you can take a horse with all the self-preservation in the world and if when you tip his nose one way, his hindquarters go the opposite direction, you can always keep him from trying to run off and buck. Although they might not have direction (suppleness) you can keep them with you.

When I begin trotting a circle on a young horse the first time, I will often times not have any direction. However, if I have solid mechanical foundation of maneuvers I can get direction. If when I take the slack out of the rein the hindquarters go the opposite direction (Stage 1), I can keep them trotting in a nice circle. The shoulders and hindquarters will make two different circles, drawing out a bull’s eye. The shoulders will be traveling in a smaller circle than the hindquarters. If I keep the horse riding with willing submission (loose rein) and good communication (feel, timing, balance, comfort) eventually direction will come and all the parts of the horse will come into line. The shoulders and the hindquarters will fall onto the same line made by the nose, making a perfect circle (direction).

The same is true with people in the body of Christ. If you deliver a message and you feel self-preservation start to rise up in the body, be careful doing more teaching, or they will often times get more resentful. Instead remember what Paul told us, focus on the mechanics of the Church. Paul said first apostles, then prophets, then teachers. If there are members of the body that will not listen to the message, or sound doctrine, work on the hindquarters (miraculous power). Let the miraculous power of the Holy Spirit begin to move and it will support the message and keep the self-preservation from escalating. Although they may doubt the message, if the miraculous power of the Holy Spirit is manifest in their midst, they will not be able to leave. Although, they may not have totally submitted to the message (direction – suppleness), they will not run off, because the power of the hindquarters (miraculous power) will keep bringing them back. Eventually direction will come and they will submit to the will of God and receive solid direction from God Himself.

There is no greater miracle than salvation. Being born a sinner, a son of perdition damned for hell, and then in an instant becoming born again, a child of God, destined for eternity with God in heaven. The hindquarters are the powerhouse of the horse and salvation is the beginning of the power in our life. In order to accomplish a job with the horse the hindquarters must be submitted and the same is true with us. We must have salvation; this is the first of the miraculous power in our life. It then does not matter how much self-preservation comes in, if we can control the hindquarters (salvation), we can prevent a wreck. I think the problem with a lot of churches is that they have lost the miraculous power of the hindquarters to keep people drawn in. People have begun to doubt the message and have drifted away because of a lack of evidence to support it. They may have the power of salvation, but after that the power stops. Think if we only got our horse to submit his hindquarters once, we would be very unproductive. The same is
true in our life; submission is just the beginning. Once they are submitted then we can use them to bring power to the direction. To keep order with our horse without having direction, the message (head and neck) must be supported by the power (hindquarters). The same is true with the body of Christ.

As I said before, if any two parts of the horse are in line, although there may be self-preservation, we can still keep the body from falling into disunity; this is true with the Church body as well. When someone gives a message (head and neck) to the body, the prophecy should be supported by either miraculous power (hindquarters), or Scripture (shoulders). An example would be if God gives someone a prophecy for someone in the Church, like quit your job, or move to Alaska. Make sure God tells you when to give the message, because timing is everything. Let God supernaturally prepare the person to receive the message. The power of God should be working in both people’s hearts, so that when the person delivers the message, God has already prepared the person receiving the message, to receive it. They will know without a shadow of a doubt that the message came from God. Then the person will know it came from God with the same certainty, as if God had spoken directly to them. An example of power supporting a prophecy would be Jesus, with the woman at the well. She listened to His message because it was backed with miraculous power; there was no way He could have known the secrets of her life without direct insight from God. “The woman answered and said, I have no husband. Jesus said unto her, Thou hast had five husbands; and he whom thou now hast is not thy husband: in that saidst thou truly. The woman saith unto him, Sir, I perceive that thou art a prophet” (John 4:17-19).

Any time we get a message from God, Satan will try to tell us it did not come from God. However, if the message has power to support it, when self-preservation comes telling you the message did not really come from God, you will know without a shadow of a doubt the message did come from God, because the message (head and neck) has the power (hindquarters) to support it. The other method of keeping the body in line is when someone gives a prophecy (message) to the body, if the body is unsure of the message, God will give a scripture (shoulders) to support it. For example God has given me many visions (prophetic messages). However, if when I present them to the body I do not give Scripture to support them, the message may not get through bringing unity. There are numerous places in the Bible where Jesus gave scripture to back up the insight He had received from His Father. To sum it up, a prophetic word (message/head and neck) should always be supported by either miraculous power (hindquarters), or Scripture (shoulders).

Remember God gives gifts unto men, but when we are in the Spirit, God can use any gift, in any person, at any time, as He so chooses. Scripture says, “And God hath set some in the church, first apostles, secondarily prophets, thirdly teachers” (1 Corinthians 12:28). This is how it should be. Can you think of having it any other way in a church? If we are sitting amongst a group of believers and God gives someone a revelation to heal somebody, prophecies and teachings can wait. If God has given someone a prophecy, a direct message from God, teachings can wait. If a group of believers are together and God has not chosen to manifest His power through an apostle figure, or given revelation to a prophet figure, we should listen to sound doctrine given to us by our teachers (pastors, evangelists). Should these teachers teach from their own knowledge and wisdom of Scripture? No, they should speak only what the Holy
Spirit is telling them to speak. The Holy Spirit is the teacher, we are only the messenger, remember. The Holy Spirit will bring the scripture to mind that the congregation needs. The Holy Spirit speaks truth; He will speak to our teachers so that the teachers may teach the children of God, until the children of God can learn to hear from the Father. This is the job of our teachers, to help us reach maturity. To help us grow and communicate with our heavenly Father; to help us come into perfection in Christ Jesus, to help us reach true unity and willing communication.

**Dangers of not following Paul’s advice**

What happens if we do not follow the teachings of Paul and bring the three parts of the Church into unity? Well, we get an awful lot of self-preservation coming into the body, until there is absolutely no unity whatsoever. Self-preservation totally takes over and we have a blow up, fight or flight. Or the body becomes numb and dull and we just go through the motions with no power and no direction. We get the job done, but have unwilling submission, poor communication, and an unbalanced direction to life ratio, leading to a very unproductive body. If we didn’t know better, we might think that Paul knew this and he tried to warn us. If we do not have a solid mental foundation of maneuvers, we had better follow the teachings of Paul and work on the mechanical. Division comes from self-preservation. Working miracles comes from God, prophecies come from God, and solid teaching from Scripture should come from God as well. When we have self-preservation in the body, we need to let God remove it.

I hope this does not come off too strong, but when you are in the body of Christ, if you do not feel the power of the Holy Spirit come on you to work the miraculous, prophesy, or teach, be quiet, just sit there! God should be moving in the body, not self-preservation. I hear in Bible studies all the time, “Well, I believe” and “So and so teaches this” and “we do not follow those teachings.” These are words of self-preservation, be careful, we will be held accountable for our self-preservation and our unemployed words. **“But I say unto you, that every idle word that men shall speak they shall give account thereof in the day of judgment” (Matthew 12:36).** Idle comes from the Greek word meaning; inactive, unemployed, lazy, useless. If God has not given you something to say, your words are “inactive, unemployed, lazy, and useless.” Just sit there! It is ok to ask a question. But not to ramble on and on with what you believe and don’t believe. Why would you want to say something, which will only bring self-preservation into the body? The Holy Spirit speaks truth, and when He speaks to you, you will not have to say, “I believe this.” You can say, “Scripture says ....” Then people can benefit from your words, and then you can bring direction and guidance to the body instead of more self-preservation.

I do not understand why a lot of Bible studies end up being discussions. We give every one time to speak and often times the people who end up doing all the talking are not saying anything, but unemployed words! This is not how God designed the Church. When Jesus spoke people listened, when the apostles spoke people listened, when prophets spoke people listened, when Peter became filled with the Holy Spirit and gave his sermon on the day of the Pentecost, people listened. If God has not given you something to say, be quiet! If your leader is not a person that can hear from God and can speak employed words from God, then you need to find a new teacher. What qualifications does Paul give to men leading the body? (The Church is the body of Christ, not a building; anytime someone is leading a group of believers He is leading the
Church.) Let’s see what Paul has to say about bishops (Greek- a superintendent, charge of the church)? “Holding fast the faithful word as he hath been taught, that he may be able by sound doctrine (instruction, teaching) both to exhort and to convince the gainsayers (disputers): For there are many unruly (un-subdued, insubordinate) and vain talkers (idle) and deceivers (mind misleader) specially them of circumcision (religious/ fleshly)” (Titus 1:9-10). Our teachers should speak employed words and silence the unemployed words. Every word that we speak out of self-preservation is idle; it benefits nobody and can bring destruction to the entire body.

I have been in discussions with people about God and whenever there is division there is always somebody saying, “I believe, and I think.” They talk for time on end, without saying any employed words; they don’t give any or very little, sound scriptural truth to back their beliefs. Whenever somebody starts the sentence with “I,” it is not a good sign and they will often bring division to the body. It is the same with our horse, if your horse is only thinking about what he thinks and what he believes, there is going to be division between you and the horse. What is the key word to “self-preservation”? Self, self is the key word. Focusing on yourself, what “you” believe, what “you” have been taught, speaking idle words that did not come from God, speaking from your own understanding, instead of following the teaching of Paul; first apostles (miraculous power), second prophets (prophetic word), third teachers (scriptural guidance). All three parts must be in the body of Christ to have a proper functioning body. Instead of acting with the power of the Holy Spirit, which will benefit the whole body, we bring in more self-preservation which benefits nothing. “From which some having swerved have turned aside unto vain jangling (random talk, babble), desiring to be teachers of the law; understanding neither what they say, nor whereof they affirm (1 Timothy 1:6-7). “But avoid foolish questions and genealogies, and contentions (quarrel, debates), and strivings (battle, controversy) about the law; for they are unprofitable and vain (profitless, empty)” (Titus 3:9). Self-preservation is what keeps our horse’s body from coming into unity with us, and it is self-preservation (flesh) that keeps the body of Christ from true unity as well.

Be careful if you are the one bringing self-preservation into the body. We will be held accountable, if we speak something that did not come from God and it causes someone to stumble. “And whosoever shall offend one of these little ones that believe in me, it is better for him that a millstone were hanged about his neck and he were cast into the sea (Mark 9:42). Offend means to; entrap, trip up, stumble, cause to sin. The word “believe” in Mark 9:42 is the same word that Jesus uses when He says, “Verily, verily, I say unto you, he that believeth on me, the works that I do shall he do also; and greater works than these shall he do; because I go unto my Father” (John 14:10). Why do you think there are not more people doing what Jesus had been doing; miraculous power, prophecy, teaching in large numbers? I think it is due to idle words; self-preservation infecting the entire body, keeping us from perfection in Christ. I think it is due to not following the teaching of Paul concerning the body of Christ; first apostles, second prophets, third teachers. A horse has three very essentials parts to their body and they must work together. A horse is not all hindquarters, where would the message come from? A horse is not all shoulders, where would the power come from? A horse is not all messages, where would the power and guidance come from? A horse is made up of all three, head and neck, shoulders, and hindquarters. They must all be present in the body and they must all work together, the same is true with the body of Christ. The body of Christ must have
miraculous power, the prophetic word and solid scriptural guidance in order to operate properly.

**Apostles: Hindquarters**

The apostles are the hindquarters that bring miraculous power to the body of Christ. It is the power of God that separates the God of Elijah from other gods and it is the apostle figures that bring this power to the body. Without the power from the hindquarters driving the body to accomplish a job, the horse is very limited and so is the body of Christ. The hindquarters are the powerhouse behind everything that the horse does. Five thousand people became believers after hearing Peter and John preach (*Acts 4:4*), and three thousand were saved when the tongues fell at the Pentecost; this is the power of God. Wherever there is a manifestation of the power of God, revival and saved souls follow right behind.

Skeptics need proof; something that they can see and know is real. Otherwise the skeptics will think Jesus is just another theory, with no hard evidence to support it. God does not want His Son to be just another “theory” that people believe in. “But when the Comforter is come, whom I will send unto you from the Father, even the Spirit of truth, which proceedeth from the Father, He shall testify of me” (*John 15:16*). Testify in the Greek means; witness, testify and is translated into give evidence, bear record. The Holy Spirit gives evidence to people that doubt and the apostle figures are the Spirit-filled men that bring this evidence to them.

The first apostles were chosen and ordained by Christ. “Ye have not chosen me, but I have chosen you, and ordained you” (*John 15:16*). Ordained in the Greek means to place (in a passive or horizontal posture), different from a word meaning upright and active, and comes from a word meaning utterly prostrate. “Greater love hath no man than this, that a man lay down his life for his friends” (*John 15:13*). God chooses apostles that are willing to lay down their lives and become nothing, it is only then that God can use them to do the miraculous.

Jesus chose the early disciples because they were willing to leave everything behind to follow and be taught by Christ. Disciple comes from a Greek word meaning learner, a pupil. The disciples left everything behind, to be taught by Christ. God asked me once, “What do you want to be when you grow up.” I thought, well since you’re asking and there’s no limit with God, if can be anything? I told Him, I wanted to be a disciple of Christ. He then told me, “Start preparing accordingly.” It is a choice that we choose to make. When God calls us, are we willing to leave everything behind and follow Him, to truly follow Him, to follow Him all the way to the cross? It is only when we are totally dead to ourselves that God can start to use us in miraculous ways. It has to come from Him and we have to get out of the way. “I protest by your rejoicing which I have in Christ Jesus our Lord, I die daily” (*1 Corinthians 15:31*). “If any man will come after me, let him deny himself, and take up his cross daily, and follow me” (*Mark 9:23*).

Seven years ago I saw a vision in which a caterpillar turned into a butterfly, and then I heard “transformation” then “take your wife and preach the gospel.” This winter I asked the Lord what I was going to transform into and I heard the sweetest word “nothing.” That is all there is to it “He must increase and I must decrease” (*John 3:30*). Oh how great it will be, when we are
truly dead to ourselves and Christ has become absolutely everything. Think of how productive you become with your horse, when your horse is no longer driven by self-preservation or resentment to commands. The same is true with our life. We just need to get out of the way. It is just the old self-preservation (flesh) holding us back. When God tells us He wants to use us to build His kingdom and shows us things in the future of how He is going to use us, it is easy for a sense of righteous self-preservation (flesh) to swell up. We begin thinking we are going to be a mighty man of God; we are going to do mighty things for God’s kingdom, this is only our self-preservation. We need to get rid of this too. We cannot do a job with a horse if their self-preservation wants nothing to do with the job. However, we are also limited if the horse wants to do the job, but will not listen to any direction and does the job his own way.

What a sweet revelation. Am I going to become a mighty man of God? No, I am going to become absolutely “nothing.” I have been ordained by God and I cannot tell you how excited I am. However, I am no good to God when I am in an upright and active position; it is only when I have reached a total horizontal and passive position, that the resurrection power may be manifested through my body. The power to perform miracles comes from Christ and the power of the Holy Spirit; it does not come from man. It doesn’t matter what church we attend or whose theology we follow, the power of God can only come through God, not religion. It’s like God showed me once, we are just a lightning rod; God tells us who He wants to heal and we just place our hand on them and the power of God goes through us and God heals them. What good is a lightning rod without lightning? What good are we without the power of the Holy Spirit? The horse must receive the power of the hindquarters to move the body and the Church must receive the power of Spirit-filled apostle figures to help move the body as well.

Prophets: Head and Neck

We deliver the message to our horse’s body through the reins that are tied to the head and neck. The message goes to the head and then it is delivered to the rest of the body. God used prophecies and prophets to deliver messages to the body of Christ. “And it shall come to pass in the last day, saith God, I will pour out of my Spirit upon all flesh: and your sons and daughters shall prophesy, and your young men shall see visions, and your old men shall dream dreams” (Act 2:17). “But if any man be ignorant, let him be ignorant. Wherefore, brethren, covet prophecy, and forbid not speaking in tongues” (1 Corinthians 14:38-39). It is through speaking in tongues, that God can use us to prophesy. Speaking in tongues does not benefit others, only ourselves. When we speak in tongues, we are speaking baby language in our Spirit, just between our Father and us; it is a beautiful thing and very gratifying. However, as we mature we begin to speak in the Spirit in a language that people can understand. This is why Paul said to “covet prophecy and forbid not speaking in tongues.” Although baby talk (speaking in tongues) edifies only the person speaking, prophecy edifies the entire Church. If we forbid speaking in tongues, there will be no babies growing, maturing to prophecy and it is through prophesying that God delivers direct messages to the body of Christ. This is how God designed the Church. Smith Wigglesworth (1859-1947) in his book Greater Works says that there are three forms of prophecy and I agree with him.

One form comes in the way that I just described, basically, speaking in tongues in a language that people can understand. In this form you do not know what you are saying, no more than you
know what you are saying when you are speaking in tongues. God is truly taking your lips and
the Spirit is speaking through you. This can be speaking not knowing what the next word will
be, or writing not knowing what the next word will be, or typing and not knowing what the next
word will be. The main point with this kind of prophecy is making sure absolutely everything
lines up with scripture. In this type of prophecy the Spirit (voice of truth), is speaking directly
through someone so they will be speaking truth (scripture). If everything they said did not line
up directly with scripture then be careful it wasn’t the Holy Spirit speaking through some one.
We should remember this when we listen to anyone that is speaking about God. If it is truly the
Holy Spirit speaking through someone it should line up directly with scripture.

The second form of prophecy is sharing a revelation that came directly from God. This is
when God shows someone His manifest presence and they know without a shadow of a doubt
that God has spoken to them. Like when Peter received the revelation that Jesus was the son of
God (Matthew 16:17), God speaks directly to our heart, and we KNOW God has spoken to us.
This form of prophecy is incredibly edifying to the body of Christ and so very important to its
growth. Some of the most powerful church services I have ever been in, have been when people
have stood up overflowing with the Holy Spirit, and shared a prophecy that had been given to
them. These messages are unrehearsed and come directly from the Holy Spirit. Often times
people are shaking they are so filled with the Holy Spirit. When they open their mouth they are
filled with fear and trembling (1 Corinthians 2:3) and their words cut right to the heart of the
entire congregation (Hebrews 4:12). It is in these moments that lives are changed and the power
of God falls on His people. A Prophet in Greek means an inspired speaker. When we become
filled with the Holy Spirit and God has given us a revelation to share; we take on the form of
prophet and deliver a solid message to the body. It doesn’t matter if we have been a Christian for
five minutes or fifty years. Often times some of the most powerful prophetic messages come
from the “babies” in Christ.

The third form of prophecy is when God gives you something to give to someone else. This
form of prophecy was very common in the Old Testament. It was through the prophets that God
spoke to His people and it was the prophets that delivered messages of God to the people
concerning the future. God has given me prophecies for other people and whenever God gives
me a prophecy I always make sure that God gives me a scripture to go with it. However, there
have been times in prayer meeting when God has given me a prophecy for someone and has
given someone else the scripture. The person will be unsure why God gave them the scripture
and it will fit perfectly with the prophecy. I love it when God does this; it is in these moments
that the body truly becomes one.

In a prayer meeting several years ago, there were three people that were new to the meetings.
I prayed for each person individually and the Lord began to open to me what was happening in
each of their lives. The Lord actually let me feel what each one of them was feeling; I felt their
joy, their excitement, and their pain. As the Lord let me feel their emotions He gave me a vision
concerning their lives and a scripture to go along with it. The Lord often gives me messages to
give people and it is truly an amazing experience, one that I cannot put into words. There is no
greater joy in this world than to be at a place where God can speak to you and give you a
message that will change someone’s life.
Know that I have explained to you a little bit about prophecy, I should highly warn you to beware of false prophets! Jesus said beware of false prophets they will come to us in sheep’s clothing (Matthew 7:15). This is important; at first glance they will look and sound the same as every other prophet/preacher. Jesus also said many false prophets will rise and deceive many (Matthew 24:11), this means there will be many false preachers out there. Here are few scriptures to look at to help tell a false prophet/preacher (Luke 6:26, 2 Peter 2:1, 1 John 4:1-3, 2 Timothy 3:5). If everyone likes them and they are always being patted on the back, they deny God’s power and if they do not testify that Jesus Christ came in the flesh. These are a few dead give-a-ways. There are many false prophets who distort the truth (God’s word) and there are going to be more, as we get closer to the end of times. They will take God’s word and try to twist it. Be careful this is not the Holy Spirit speaking through them, but a different spirit. Here is one thing to be very careful of; anyone that tries to teach you about God’s word. But does not help you learn how to read and understand God’s word for yourself. This is very scary because this person or the spirit speaking through this person can now tell you anything and you will not know the truth. This is how Satan works and has always worked; distorting God’s truth. If it is truly the Holy Spirit speaking through them, they will try to lead you to the truth (understanding scripture on your own). If it is not the Holy Spirit speaking through them, they will try to keep you coming to them to understand God’s truth. This way they can keep you deceived and keep you in bondage. They will have a form of Godliness, but denying the power (2 Timothy 3:5). Because if they were speaking truth, and helping you understand it on your own, the truth would be setting you free (John 8:32). Satan does not care if we know about God (head knowledge); its God’s power he has to prevent you from. Beware of anyone that claims to be speaking the truth and there congregation is in bondage. Because the truth sets people free!!!!!!

I have prayed for the gift of prophecy and I have received it. God showed me I will be like an interpreter traveling around with God. When I speak to a group of people, the people will be looking at me, but I should only speak what I have been given. When the messenger stops speaking, the interpreter stops, this is how God wants me to preach the Gospel. The interpreter has no confidence in himself; his confidence is only in translating the words of the messenger. In this way, God can speak directly to His people and I will hopefully learn to get out of the way. If I start speaking my own words, instead of repeating only what I am given, although I might get the job done (deliver a good message), the power (Holy Spirit) will no longer cut to the heart. “For the word of God is quick, and powerful, and sharper than any two-edged sword, piercing even to the dividing asunder of soul and spirit, and of the joints and marrow, and is a discerner of the thoughts and intents of the heart” (Hebrews 4:12). My words could never do this; it is only through the power of the Holy Spirit.

The message goes to the head and it is the head that delivers the message to the body. The message should always bring direction (suppleness through the poll and loin/ sanctification). If the message does not bring direction then it is because of self-preservation. If I fail to speak only the words that I am given, then I will be bringing self-preservation to the body instead of direction. We must follow the example of Paul and not let our self-preservation prevent the message from getting to the body. “And I, brethren, when I came to you, came not with excellency of speech or of wisdom, declaring unto you the testimony of God. For I determined not to know anything among you, save Jesus Christ, and him crucified. And I was with you in weakness, and in fear, and in much trembling. And my speech and my preaching was not with enticing words of man’s wisdom, but in demonstration
(manifestation) of the Spirit and of the power: That your faith should not stand in the wisdom of men, but in the power of God” (1 Corinthians 2:1-5).

Teachers, Pastors, Evangelists: Shoulders

The shoulders bring guidance and support to the body and connect the message (head and neck) to the power (hindquarters). Without the shoulders connecting the message from the head and the power of the hindquarters, we would not have a body to work with. The same is true with the body of Christ. We must have teachers, pastors, and evangelists bringing solid scriptural guidance and teaching to the body of Christ. If the message and the power are not supported by solid scriptural guidance the body cannot function, it is that simple. Jesus performed miracles and prophecies. However, a very key part to Jesus’ ministry was solid scriptural teaching from the word of God.

The word of God was the backbone to Jesus’ entire ministry. Everything that He did was lined up in perfect order with the written word of God. Jesus was the word of God, “In the beginning was the word, and the word was with God, and the word was God. The same was in the beginning with God. All things were made by him; and without him was nothing made that was made. In him was life; and the life was the light of men” (John 1:1-4). Jesus was the Word and He came to fulfill the Word (Scripture), “Think not that I am come to destroy the law, or the prophets: I am not come to destroy, but to fulfill” (Matthew 5:17). Jesus taught from the Scriptures and everything He did was in perfect order with the Scriptures. This should be our goal as Christians, to have everything that we do fall in perfect order with the written word of God.

Jesus taught the ways of His father and trained men to carry on His teachings. “Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost: Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you” (Matthew 28:19-20). These eleven disciples then taught and trained other men to carry on Jesus’ teachings. “And daily in the temple, and in every house, they ceased not to teach and preach Jesus Christ” (Acts 5:42). The disciples then left behind teachers that could carry on the teachings of Christ. “A bishop then must be blameless, the husband of one wife, vigilant, sober, of good behavior, given to hospitality, apt to teach” (1 Timothy 3:2). “And the servant of the Lord must not strive (quarrel, dispute), but be gentle unto all men, apt to teach, patient” (2 Timothy 2:24).

It is very important to point out that these teachers were not left behind to stand in the gap and be the end all of information about God. They were not left to preach sermons on Sunday and be the only link to God for the congregation. No, they were to teach the elementary teachings about Christ, settle childish disputes, and help others come into maturity. They were to teach the New Covenant and under the New Covenant we could be cleansed of all our sins and taught directly from God (Hebrews 8:11). As teachers we are supposed to help little children in Christ learn how to go from drinking milk to eating meat (Hebrews 5:12). We are supposed to introduce them to the Holy Spirit and let the Holy Spirit guide comfort and teach them (John 14:26). “But the anointing which ye have received of him abideth in you, and ye need not that any man teach you: but as the same anointing teacheth you of all things, and is truth,
and is no lie, and even as it hath taught you, ye shall abide in him” (1 John 2:27). We as teachers are supposed to teach the children in Christ, until they are able to hear from the teacher (Holy Spirit).

It is important to note that Jesus taught in parables. Jesus taught in parables and then explained it to the disciples so that it would make sense. The disciples understood fishing, and farming so Jesus told stories that would make sense and help them remember His teachings. Teachers, pastors, and evangelists do the same thing. We should be preaching the same message that the disciples did 2,000 years ago; we are only changing the delivery so that our audience can understand it. God has called me to preach the message to cowboys and horse people and He has given me a distinct message that will make sense to them. I am to deliver the message through analogies (parables) of building a “foundation for perfection” in the horse. If all our teachers, pastors, and evangelists did stand up and read Scripture word for word the audience would probably fall asleep, or get lost. Just as Jesus taught and explained the Scriptures, teachers, pastors, and evangelists are to do the same thing. To draw people in, God helps these men form Spirit-filled sermons that will keep their interest and teach them God’s word. God helps these men form messages that will speak to the people. The messages should not come from the wisdom of men, but the power of the Holy Spirit (1 Corinthians 1:17, 2:1) and sound Scripture.

Jesus appointed the disciples to teach the Gospel and then the disciples appointed godly men to continue the teaching of the Gospel. If you have not been directly appointed by God to teach the Gospel as a preacher, or evangelist, you are still called to teach. We are called to be a light for Christ and part of being a light for Christ is teaching others about God. “Whosoever therefore shall break one of these least commandments, and shall teach men so, he shall be called the least in the kingdom of heaven: But whosoever shall do and teach them, the same shall be called great in the kingdom of heaven” (Matthew 5:19). “But whoso shall offend one of these little ones which believe in me, it were better for him that a millstone were hanged about his neck, and that he were drowned in the depth of the sea” (Matthew 18:6). Whether you realize it or not, you are a teacher and what you are teaching others around you, you will be accountable for. If you are a parent make sure that what you are teaching your children about; life, marriage, sex, God etc., lines up in perfect order with the word of God. Even if you are not a parent, realize that younger people around you still learn from your actions and the way you live your life. Stop and think about your nieces, nephews, siblings, friends, or younger kids around you and what you may be teaching them through your actions. Little kids are like sponges and they mimic the adults that are around them. When little kids mimic you, do they bring glory to God? I know I am not always the best example of Christ and I have been a horrible example for Christ at different times in my life. However, through Christ’s blood He is able to give us grace and forgiveness for our actions. However, be very careful about the beliefs you are teaching to others around you. If your teachings do not line up directly with Scripture, you will be held accountable.

Without the guidance and support of the shoulders, the head and neck, and hindquarters would be unable to function and the same is true with the body of Christ. Teaching was a very key part to Jesus’ ministry and it continues to be a very key part in the body of Christ today. On the same note, without the hindquarters and the head, the shoulders would have no power and would be unable to receive direct messages. Teaching was very important in Jesus’ ministry.
However, His teachings were powerfully supported by the prophetic word (John 14:12) and miracles. All the parts must function properly in the horse to achieve perfection and the same is true with the body of Christ. Teachers, pastors, and evangelists play a very key role in the body. They teach sound doctrine, shepherd their flock, and bring souls to Christ. They play a very key role in saving lives and bringing people to Christ. However, that should not be where it ends. Teachers, pastors, and evangelists, should then help these newborn believers come into perfection in Christ. Help them to return to Eden and experience willing submission and good communication, here on earth.

**Parts of God: Father, Son, and the Holy Spirit**

The hindquarters are not the only part of the horse; they are part of the horse. The Holy Spirit is not the only part of God; He is part of God. To prevent resistance, we must grow in the Lord to truly understand who God is. The three parts of the horse have three separate functions and so do the three parts of God. Whenever I begin to think I have pretty well grasped about all there is to know about the three parts of the horse and how they are supposed to operate in true harmony to achieve a job, something else is revealed to me and I am totally blown away with how that little piece of information, could make all the difference in coming into perfection. If we have not quite achieved total perfection in our horse; there is still more to know about three parts of the horse and how they must come together in perfect unity to do a job. The same is true with the Lord and the parts of God. If we are yet to come into total perfection in Christ Jesus; we still need a better understanding of how the three parts of God are supposed to function in our life, to do a job.

Maybe we need to remind ourselves that God is our Father. No matter what age we get, we are still a child of God and should lay everything at our Father’s feet, like a helpless infant would. We have a Father that can solve all our problems and will never send us away discontented. He will love us and care for us and wipe away all our cares and worries.

Maybe we need to be reminded of the blood that Jesus shed. That through the Son of the living God and His selfless sacrifice we can become sons of God. We no longer have to live in sin and the bondage of the Old Covenant. We have freedom in Christ, freedom in the New Covenant. We no longer have to suffer from sickness and disease because by Jesus’ stripes we are healed. By the blood of Jesus we are freed from all sin and can live in the perfect will of God.

Maybe we need to be reminded that Jesus did not leave us as orphans. He sent the Holy Spirit to bring power to the sons of God. That we, as children of God, would stand apart from the rest of the people on earth and people would know without a shadow of a doubt, that we’re God’s children. We have the Holy Spirit to guide, council and comfort us, whenever we are a little lost and unsure. We have the ability to spend every second, of every day, walking in the power and guidance of the Holy Spirit just as Jesus did. We do not have to live in confusion and despair; through the Holy Spirit and the blood of Jesus we have direct access to God and He can answer all our questions.

We must receive a mechanical foundation of who God is. The Father created the heavens
and earth, and made some rules that we were to obey. We had trouble obeying these rules because one of God’s fallen angels wanted to be God. God told him the job was already taken and kicked him out of heaven (Isaiah 14:12-20). This made the fallen angel (Lucifer) mad. If he couldn’t be God then he wanted to get God’s creation as far away from God as possible.

Satan kept us from having a close relationship with our creator until God sent His son, Jesus Christ. God sent His son, who became a man; that through Him, man could become the sons of God. Jesus died so we could become children of God and have a close relationship with our Father. Jesus died so we could become born again and receive the Spirit of God. The Spirit that comes inside us is a brother to Jesus, “For those God foreknew he also predestined to be conformed to the likeness of his Son, that he might be the firstborn among many brothers” (Romans 8:29), and a son of God, “The Spirit himself testifies with our spirit that we are God's children. Now if we are children, then we are heirs—heirs of God and co-heirs with Christ” (Romans 8:16-17). The Spirit (new creature/born again) cries out “Abba, Father,” “For you did not receive a spirit that makes you a slave again to fear, but you received the Spirit of sonship. And by him we cry, ‘Abba, Father’” (Romans 8:15). This is not the Holy Spirit. If it was the Holy Spirit it would not be a brother to Jesus and would not call God, Father, because the Holy Spirit is God. We receive a new spirit, one in Christ’s image, “But we all, with open face beholding as in a glass the glory of the Lord, are changed into the same image from glory to glory, even as by the Spirit of the Lord” (2 Corinthians 3:18), when we are saved. Then it is through this Spirit we become part of God’s family and He is able to love us as a son. It is this Spirit from God that comes to live inside our hearts when we become a Christian, and it is by accepting the Lord and receiving this Spirit (new creation) that the Holy Spirit is then able to communicate with us.

Smith Wigglesworth, in his book Greater Works says, “You must first receive a double cure. You first need saving and cleansing and then the baptism of the Holy Spirit.” His daughter once asked some African boys what was the difference between being saved and being filled with the Holy Spirit. They told her, “Ah, when we were saved, it was good; but when we received the Holy Spirit, it was more so.” Wigglesworth says, “Many of you have never received the ‘more so.’” He goes on to say, “After the Holy Spirit comes upon you, you will have power. God will mightily move within your life; the power of the Holy Spirit will overshadow you, inwardly moving you until you know there is a divine plan different from anything that you have had in your life before.”

Hear what the Scripture says to us: “However, when He, the Spirit of truth, has come, He will guide you into all truth; for He will not speak on His own authority, but whatever He hears, He will speak” (John 16:13). The Holy Spirit is inspiration; the Holy Spirit is revelation; the Holy Spirit is manifestation; the Holy Spirit is operation. When a man comes into the fullness of the Holy Spirit, he is in perfect order, built up on scriptural foundations” (Wigglesworth, 1998).

“That if you confess with your mouth, ‘Jesus is Lord,’ and believe in your heart that God raised him from the dead, you will be saved” (Romans 10:9). Through this “believing in our heart and confessing with our mouth” we attain salvation. “For with the heart man believeth unto righteousness; and with the mouth confession is made unto salvation”
Salvation is a matter of life and death. This is when we become a new creature, God’s child. The baptism and being filled with the Holy Spirit is the earnest of the inheritance, “In whom ye also trusted, after that ye heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation: in whom also after that ye believed, ye were sealed with that holy Spirit of promise, Which is the earnest of our inheritance until the redemption of the purchased possession, unto the praise of his glory” (Ephesians 1:13-14 KJV). The Holy Spirit prepares us to enter into the Kingdom (Greek – realm) of God. “Know ye not that the unrighteous shall not inherit the Kingdom of God” (1 Corinthians 6:9 KJV). If we are unrighteous (with sin) we cannot enter into the kingdom of God (Eden). In order to enter into Eden we must first be sanctified (Greek – to make holy, purify, consecrate). We are sanctified through the blood of Christ and the cleansing power of the Holy Spirit. “And such were some of you (unrighteous): but ye are washed, but ye are sanctified, but ye are justified in the name of the Lord Jesus, and by the spirit of our God (1 Corinthians 6:11 KJV). “Wherefore Jesus also, that He might sanctify the people with his own blood…” (Hebrews 13:12 KJV).

All we have to do is ask. “Jesus answered and said unto her, If thou knewest the gift of God, and who it is that saith to thee, Give me to drink; thou wouldest have asked of him, and he would have given thee living water” (John 4:10 KJV). If we ever feel like we are empty inside and have lost the over flowing joy and peace that comes from the Spirit, “…the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, longsuffering, gentleness, goodness, faith, meekness, temperance” (Galatians 5:22-23 KJV), all we have to do is ask and He will fill us to the top of overflowing. “Now the God of hope fill you with all joy and peace in believing, that ye may abound in hope, through the power of the Holy Ghost” (Romans 15:13 KJV). However, as I will explain the importance through the parable of the prodigal son, if we do not ask He cannot give us peace of mind.

Scripture tells us that salvation and receiving the Holy Spirit can happen at the same time like the men at the Pentecost, “All of them were filled with the Holy Spirit and began to speak in other tongues as the Spirit enabled them” (Acts 2:4). Or a person can receive the Holy Spirit after they have received salvation, like Paul. I believe that the parable of the prodigal son can also give us insight into this as well; it all depends on the heart.

We can learn a lot from the story of the prodigal son. The prodigal son asked for the inheritance and then had a heart to receive his father’s blessings; he was humble, hungry, and repentant.

Jesus tells us in the Beatitudes where our heart needs to be:

Blessed are the poor in spirit, for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.
Blessed are they that mourn, for they shall be comforted.
Blessed are the meek, for they shall inherit the earth.
Blessed are they which do hunger and thirst after righteousness, for they shall be filled.
Blessed are the merciful: for they shall obtain mercy.
Blessed are the pure in heart: for they shall see God.
Blessed are the peacemakers: for they shall be called the children of God.
Blessed are they who are persecuted for righteousness sake, for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.
Blessed are ye when men shall revile you, and persecute you, and shall say all manner of evil against you falsely, for my sake (Matthew 5:3-11 KJV).

Let’s take a quick look at the parable of the prodigal son (Luke 15). I asked the Lord about salvation and the baptism of the Holy Spirit one time and He told me to look at the story of the prodigal son. After looking at the story, this is what the Lord showed me. First of all, we need to read the parable in context. Jesus told this parable after the Pharisees and Scribes began to murmur (Greek – complain) that Jesus was teaching to sinners; it was the sinners that had drawn near to Him, to listen to Him speak. Jesus leads into the parable saying, “Likewise, I say unto you, there is joy in the presence of the angels of God over one sinner that repenteth” (Luke 15:10 KJV).

The parable starts with a man who has two sons and the younger of the two asks His father for his portion of the inheritance. The younger son then takes the money and wastes it on riotous living. After he had spent all his inheritance there was a great famine over the land and he became in “want” (Greek – be destitute, fall, lack, need, suffer). The son then finds a guy in the country and takes on a job feeding his pigs. Dying from hunger he starts to eat some of the pig feed, but catches himself and realizes that even his father’s hired servants have more than enough to eat. The son decides he will go to his father and tell him that he has sinned against heaven and against his father and he is no longer worthy to be called his son and beg him to make him as one of his father’s hired servants.

The son walks home and his father sees his son coming in the distance and runs to him, embraces and kisses him. The son is repentant and humble and says he is no longer worthy to be called his son. But the father tells one of his servants to fetch his best robe to put on him, a ring to put on his finger and shoes on his feet. The father commands the fattened calf to be killed so that they can eat and “be merry” (Greek – to put in a good frame of mind; rejoice). The father begins to rejoice saying, “For this son of mine was dead and is alive again; he was lost and is found” (Luke 15:24). Meanwhile the older son is out in the fields and hears all the festivities and asks one of the workers what is going on. When the older son hears that his father is throwing a party for his rebellious brother, he becomes very angry and will not go to the house. The father then goes out to him and invites him in, but the brother will not go in. He tells his father, “Lo, these many years do I serve thee, neither transgressed I at any time thy commandment: and yet thou never gavest me a kid, that I might make merry (give me piece of mind) with my friends: But as soon as this thy son was come, which hath devoured thy living with harlots, thou hast killed for him the fatted calf” (Luke 15:29-30 KJV).

The father then says, “Son though art ever with me and everything I have is yours, but it
is important that we ‘put your brother in a good frame of mind’ because he was lost and is now found, was dead and is now alive.” The older son did not get showered with his father’s blessings. The older son never did get “put in a good frame of mind” by his father. The story ends with the older son standing out in the field angry with his father and jealous of his brother.

Whose is the kingdom of heaven? “The poor in spirit” (Matthew 5:3). Who shall be fed? “Blessed are those who hunger and thirst after righteousness, for they shall be filled” (Matthew 5:6). I never really understood this parable until the Lord opened it to me. I always thought that the moral of the story was that the Lord will always forgive. Although the story does prove this, it also shows the importance of asking for our inheritance and letting our Father put us in a good frame of mind. We seem to always look at the younger son when reading this story. However, it is the older son who has the hard heart at the end of the story. It is the older son (Pharisees) that we should be learning from.

The story is very applicable today. The two sons symbolize two different children of God; two Christians. The younger son asked for the inheritance, leading to hunger, repentance and humility and his father putting him in a good frame of mind. The older brother never asked for the inheritance, was never hungry, repentant, or humble, and never did get put in a good frame of mind by his father. The older son tells his father, “I never left you! I always served you! I never broke a commandment! And still you NEVER gave me peace of mind!” The father softly replies, “Son, you are always with me and everything I have is yours.”

The older son NEVER asked. “Ask and it shall be given to you, seek and ye shall find; knock and the door will be opened unto you” (Matthew 7:7 KJV). “If ye then, being evil, know how to give good gifts unto your children, how much more shall your Father which is in heaven give good things to them that ask him” (Matthew 7:11 KJV).

I firmly believe that Jesus has spoken to me the way He has because I have asked that He would teach me, I have tried to seek Him with all my heart and I have pounded on the doors of heaven. If you catch yourself working for the Lord and still never having any peace; ASK FOR IT! Ask for the comforter, “But the comforter, which is the Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send in my name, he shall teach you all things, and bring all things to your remembrance, whatsoever I have said unto you” (John 14:26 KJV). Remember Jacob. He desperately wanted the inheritance from his father and he came to his father to receive it. His father was going to give it to Esau (Pharisees) but it was Jacob (Gentiles) who received it. Jacob was hungry and passionate. He wrestled with God all night (Genesis 32:24). It is so important that we go to Him and ask for the cleansing of the Holy Spirit.

The longer I go without being sanctified by the blood of Christ, without being washed by the Holy Spirit, the more proud I become like the older son and begin to look at the speck in my brother’s eye and forget about the plank in my own. “Why do you pay attention to the speck in your brother’s eye and pay no attention to the plank in your own” (Matthew 7:3). It is so important that we become sanctified by the blood of Christ daily. “I protest by your rejoicing which I have in Christ Jesus our Lord, I die daily” (1 Corinthians 15:31 KJV). “And he said unto them all, if any man will come after me, let him deny himself, and take up his cross daily, and follow me” (Luke 9:23 KJV). The more that we die with Christ the
more we can be risen in Christ. It is then that our Father in heaven rejoices saying, “For this my son was dead and is alive again; he was lost and is found” (Luke 15:24). There must be death, before there can be life. “Buried with him in baptism, wherein also ye are risen with him through the faith of the operation of God, who hath raised him from the dead” (Colossians 2:12 KJV). Like the prodigal son the Holy Spirit kills off our flesh and we are brought to life again in the Spirit (peace of mind). “Knowing this, that our old man is crucified with him, that the body of sin might be destroyed, that henceforth we should not serve sin” (Romans 6:6 KJV). Do not become proud like the older son (Pharisees/caught up in religion). Let God teach you daily, “Give us this day our daily bread” (Luke 11:3 KJV). Let God’s spoken word sanctify you daily. “Sanctify them through thy truth: thy word is truth” (John 17:17 KJV).

I believe that the older son symbolizes people who try to serve God under the Law (religion). The older son did not leave his father and served him all his life (as far as the story tells us). However he never asked for the inheritance and his father never gave him peace of mind (Holy Spirit – Comforter). This also symbolizes the Jews and the Gentiles. The Jews were entitled to the inheritance; however it was the Gentiles who were getting baptized in large numbers. We also see huge revivals and the Holy Spirit working in mighty ways many times among the unsaved, new believers, instead of in a church filled with believers. The presence of the Holy Spirit is a direct reflection of the hearts and hunger of the people serving Him.

When I became sick it was through the Holy Spirit that I found comfort and healing. The Lord revealed Himself to me and I learned amazing things. Just like feel, timing, and balance can have an amazing impact on your horsemanship, the Holy Spirit can have an amazing impact on your life. “In the last days, God says, I will pour out my Spirit on all people. Your sons and daughters will prophesy, your young men will see visions, your old men will dream dreams. Even on my servants, both men and women, I will pour out my spirit in those days, and they will prophesy. I will show wonders in the heaven above and signs on the earth below, blood and fire and billows of smoke. The sun will be turned to darkness and the moon to blood before the coming of the great and glorious day of the Lord. And everyone who calls on the name of the Lord will be saved” (Acts 2:17-21).

The Lord promises to pour out His Spirit in the last days. “Verily, verily I say unto you, this generation shall not pass, till all these things be fulfilled” (Matthew 24:34). The last days began when Jesus rose from the dead. “But mark this: There will be terrible times in the last days. People will be lovers of themselves, lovers of money, boastful, proud, abusive, disobedient to their parents, ungrateful, unholy, without love, unforgiving, slanderous, without self-control, brutal, not lovers of the good, treacherous, rash, conceited, lovers of pleasure rather than lovers of God – having a form of godliness but denying its power” (2 Timothy 3:1-5). I think this can pretty well describe the world that we live in.

If we are living in the last days and God says He will pour out His Spirit in the last days, why can’t everyone see His Spirit being poured out? “Whoever has my commands and obeys them, he is the one who loves me. He who loves me will be loved by my Father, and I too will love him and show myself to him. Then Judas said, “But Lord, why do you intend to show yourself to us and not to the world?” (John 14:21-22).
Jesus said He would show Himself to the ones that loved Him and obeyed His teachings. He said that the world would not see Him because they do not know Him. However, He will reveal Himself to those who love Him. “We do, however, speak a message of wisdom among the mature, but not the wisdom of this age or of the rulers of this age, who are coming to nothing. No, we speak of God’s secret wisdom, a wisdom that has been hidden and that God destined for our glory before time began” (1 Corinthians 2:6-7).

“No eye has seen, no ear has heard, no mind has conceived what God has prepared for those who love him” (1 Corinthians 2:9).

God destined for us a secret wisdom. One that is hidden and that was destined for our glory before time began. This secret wisdom (revelation knowledge about God) can be found through the Holy Spirit. “But God has revealed it to us by his Spirit. The Spirit searches all things, even the deep things of God. For who among men knows the thoughts of a man except the man's spirit within him? In the same way no one knows the thoughts of God except the Spirit of God. We have not received the spirit of the world but the Spirit who is from God, that we may understand what God has freely given us. This is what we speak, not in words taught us by human wisdom but in words taught by the Spirit, expressing spiritual truths in spiritual words. The man without the Spirit does not accept the things that come from the Spirit of God, for they are foolishness to him, and he cannot understand them, because they are spiritually discerned” (1 Corinthians 2:10:14).

If you have accepted Jesus Christ as your Lord and Savior then you have the spirit of God living inside you, and you have the ability for the Holy Spirit to work mightily in your life. There is only one Spirit and one God, “There is one body and one Spirit—just as you were called to one hope when you were called—“(Ephesians 4:4). The same Spirit that spoke to the apostles is the same Spirit that can speak to you and the same Spirit that has spoken to me. There is uniformity in Christ. The Spirit searches all things and brings light to all things, unifying all things.

There may be some of the things in this book that you do not understand or you do not agree with; that is ok. When going to men to learn about God, you need to learn to eat the meat and throw out the bone. Go to God and ask Him to reveal the truth to you. The purpose of this book is not for me to teach you; to try to tell you what you should believe and think. The only thing I hope to teach you from this book is that we can be taught by the teacher. “But the comforter, which is the Holy Ghost, whom the father will send in my name, he shall teach you all things, and bring all things to your remembrance, whatsoever I have said unto you” (John 14:16).

The purpose of this book is to show the power of the Holy Spirit and feel, timing and balance with your horse. Also to help people learn how to communicate with God and with their horse and come into perfect unity. God is perfect, Jesus is perfect, and the Holy Spirit is perfect; man is not perfect.

However, the Spirit inside the man is perfect and from God. It is through the Holy Spirit that
this new creation is able to grow and reach maturity. The purpose of this book is to encourage everyone to seek God’s will for their life, and to learn how to listen to the Holy Spirit. Then, that they may live a perfect life through Christ; find the perfect wife/husband, have the perfect job, and make perfect decisions in their life. I have certainly not obtained this, but I know it is obtainable, through God and the Holy Spirit living through us.
Solid Foundation of Maneuvers

4 Things Needed To Prevent Resistance

A) Willing submission
B) Good communication
C) Balanced direction to life ratio
D) **Solid foundation of maneuvers**
   1) Mechanical
   2) Mental

**Part 2 (Mental)** – *Horse and rider* begin to receive insight, into how they can move together in perfect unity to accomplish a job: Horse experiences willing submission, good communication, a balanced direction to life ratio, and a mechanical foundation of maneuvers all at the same time.

It’s like you are riding in the dark and somebody switches on a light, all resistance leaves and it makes perfect sense to you and the horse. The horse becomes as light as a feather, moving in perfect unity with the person; no resistance in doing the job. We are able to pick up the feet and move them wherever we want. These are the “ah-ha” moments when riding a horse. It is by multiplying these moments that we are able to build and keep a “foundation for perfection.” The goal is to multiply these moments from brief seconds, to minutes, to hours; until we are left with no more resistance and find ourselves riding, in absolute perfection.

**Part 2 – Solid Foundation of Maneuvers (Mental/Revelations)** -

Three Mental stages: Moments of perfection/true unity (Horse):
- Stage 1 – Brief seconds during the ride
- Stage 2 – Minutes during the ride
- Stage 3 – Consistency during the ride

Three Mental stages: Moments of perfection/true unity (God):
- Stage 1 – Brief moments during your life
- Stage 2 – For periods of time, during your life
- Stage 3 – Relative consistency in your life

~Mental/Revelation: Solid foundation of Maneuvers~

In order to mature in our relationship with God, we must receive revelation of God’s make up (Father, Son, and Holy Spirit) and how they fit together in perfect unity to complete a job (let your light shine before men). The same is true with our horses. We must receive revelation of the horse’s makeup (head and neck, shoulders, hindquarters) and how they fit together in perfect unity to complete a job. These are the “ah-ha” moments when all resistance leaves and we find ourselves operating with perfection in Christ. No more self-preservation, lack of communication, and disobedience due to unwilling submission. The light bulb comes on and we “Return to Eden; True Unity and Willing Communication.” It is through these mental/revelation moments that we see drastic improvement with our horses and the same is true us.
Revelation in the Greek can also be translated as manifestation and means – disclosure, appearing, coming, lighten, manifestation, be revealed, revelation. Revelation/Manifestation comes from a word meaning – to take off cover, disclosure. Sin is a covering and it is sin (flesh, self-preservation) that keeps us from communicating with God. However, through Jesus taking that sin and transforming us into His image, we are then able to communicate again. As we are transformed into His image, pieces of our old self, “. . . since you have taken off your old self with its practices and have put on the new self, which is being renewed in knowledge in the image of its Creator” (Colossians 3:9-10), fall off (cover) and we are able to receive revelation.

When we submit our will and open our heart, we are able to receive revelation. God is perfect; He has perfect feel, timing, and balance so to speak. He does not force revelation upon us, He lets it happen. Once our heart is right, the cover comes off and we receive a mental foundation of maneuvers. We must offer the horse the same thing. God’s heart is always right and always perfect, He just has to wait on us.

However, with our horse we need to make sure that our heart is right, then for the horse to submit his will. We need to become Christ-like. We need to prepare our heart and be filled with patience and understanding, giving the horse mercy and grace just like God does to us, “Let us then approach the throne of grace with confidence, so that we may receive mercy and find grace to help us in our time of need” (Hebrews 4:16). Once we have prepared ourselves, then we just need to wait on the horse. God does not make things happen, He lets them happen. This is something we need to learn. Nearly all of the braces and tight spots I cause in my horses are because I try to make things happen with my horse, instead of letting them happen. God never tries to make a square peg fit into round hole; God is a perfectionist. God is perfect and will always be perfect; everything He does is perfect. A square peg will slide perfectly and easy into a square hole, causing no grief or destruction.

The more we try to force something that will not fit, the more we begin to destroy the receiving and the giving objects. We can force a square peg into a round hole, but not without causing some damage. The same is true with our horses. The more we try to force a horse to do something they do not want to do, the harder it is on us, and the harder it is on the horse. Often we will both be sweating, tired, mad, and frustrated by the time we get the job accomplished. If we and the horse did have a good level of communication, more than likely we would have destroyed a great deal of it and it will take a considerable amount of time to gain it back.

We can force a horse to do just about anything, but not without sacrificing willing submission. Without willing submission, communication is very limited. Once we have willing submission and good communication, building on the foundation through revelation will slide into place just like a square peg sliding into a square hole. It is easy and effortless and starting colts becomes extremely fun. If we do not have willing submission, good communication, and a balanced direction to life ratio, starting colts becomes lots of work.

The more revelation a person receives about the horse, the further they can take the horse into perfection. Perfection is only attainable through revelation upon revelation about the three parts of the horse, and when the three parts of the horse become balanced and in
perfect unity with one another. The same is true with the Lord.

Revelation comes from a word meaning “to take off cover – disclosure”; this is a perfect way to describe it. I will give an example of getting a horse to turn around. I have been trying to get a horse to really spin and turn around for the past couple of years. I have been riding horses my whole life, but I am a long way from perfection and spins are one of the many areas that need work.

Whenever I get around somebody that is good at getting a horse to spin, I will really pick their brain. I will ask lots of questions and have them watch me and tell me what I am doing wrong. They are able to watch me and help me “take off the cover” that is preventing me and the horse in furthering our relationship together. They can tell me what is holding me back from moving further into perfection. They will tell me things like; “get them moving off your leg better,” “shift your weight,” “alter your hand placement” and tell me when to apply pressure and give relief.

They are able to see what is holding me back, and in a few minutes the cover comes off and the square peg slides in the hole just as perfect and easy as could be. The horse pulls with his hindquarters, walks around the inside hind foot using centrifugal force and goes into a nice spin. It is similar to if I was riding in the dark and somebody switched on the light switch causing everything to make perfect sense and appear so easy.

Whenever this happens, I always smile with disbelief and amazement at how easy it just falls into place when all the pieces are lined up. I have the same reaction (though often multiplied) when I receive revelation from the Lord. I can’t help but to smile and laugh; sometimes for days. It seems to me that the revelations/ mental foundation with the most power (with our horse and with God) are determined by how long and how hard we have been fighting something before we received the revelation of how easy it can be. It is so amazing how it can be right in front of our face and we can be blind to it. However, when the cover is taken off it is as clear as day. “How that by revelation he made known unto me the mystery” (Ephesians 3:3 KJV). There is no greater feeling in this world than receiving revelation from God.

It may seem a little weird comparing revelations from God with revelations about the horse. Although the ones from God far exceed the ones from the horse, they seem to be very similar in the way they happen and the fruit they produce. They both seem to happen when I soften my heart and begin to really hunger, wanting to further my knowledge. I have been a Christian for as long as I can remember, and I have been riding horses for as long as I can remember. However, the times in my life where I have noticed a drastic improvement have been following a new revelation, or when reminded of an old revelation.

Willing submission is a prime example of this. Once we have submitted our life to God and accept Jesus into our heart, we will notice a drastic and immediate improvement. Once we learn to not force the horse to obey our commands and learn to wait for them to submit willingly, we will also notice a drastic and immediate improvement. However, both of these very simple concepts seem to be so easy to forget when we get caught up in the world.
When things get complicated and it seems like we are paddling up stream, we need to stop and remind ourselves of old revelations. Submit our entire life to God again and let Him take back control over our life (my yoke is light). The same is true with our horse; things are easy once the horse has submitted willingly. To reach maturity we must build on this revelation (willing submission), gaining revelation of better communication, and revelation for improving our mechanical foundation of maneuvers and balancing our direction to life ratio. When all of these factors come together, this is when we find ourselves in a “mental/revelation” moment. All resistance leaves and we find ourselves in absolute perfection.

It doesn’t matter if you are a new Christian or you have been a Christian your whole life, the only way we grow is revelation upon revelation, furthering our knowledge about God. If we are having trouble communicating with God and are starting to feel a little stagnant like we are not growing, we may need to find a man or woman of God who can talk to us and help us find the “cover” that is holding us back from maturing further in Christ. These should be people that have received revelation upon revelation of who God is, and are familiar with operating through “soft feel/Holy Spirit,” giving them the ability to see what is holding you back. Through this operation they are able to help us position ourselves so that we can receive revelation from God.

It is not as powerful if I go to someone to get help with my horse and they tell me what to do and show me how to do it, but never help me do it myself. Everything may make perfect sense and look very easy when they did it, but when I go back home I will be just as lost as when I came. We can go to church and have our pastor tell us what the Bible says we should do, and tell stories of how the apostles and other great men of God were able to do it, but it needs to take root in our own lives. Through Jesus we are able to take off the “cover” and the Holy Spirit is able to communicate to us, giving us revelation upon revelation, further building our foundation and taking us further into maturity.

It saddens me that some people receive revelation that Jesus died for their sins and accept Him into their heart, but never receive further revelations of God. They continue the rest of their lives through unwilling submission and a lack of communication. The only link they have of communication with God is by receiving instruction from their pastor. We cannot mature in our relationship with God by communicating solely with man; no more can we communicate with our horse by communicating solely with man. This would be as absurd as trying to strengthen my marriage by communicating only with my pastor.

If by communicating with my pastor it leads to communicating with my wife, then that is perfect; that is how God intended it. However, if I never learn to communicate with my wife, and only develop a relationship with my pastor instead of my wife, then that is not how God intended it. In order for my wife and me to mature in our relationship, we must be able to communicate. The same is true with the Lord and the same is true with our horse. If by listening to your pastor/priest it strengthens your communication with God, then that is perfect; that is how God intended it. However, if you only learn to listen to your pastor/priest and never learn to communicate with God, then that is not how God designed the Church, “His intent was that now, through the church, the manifold wisdom of God should be made known to the rulers and authorities in the heavenly realms, according to his eternal purpose which he accomplished in Christ Jesus our Lord” (Ephesians 3:10-11). Our relationship with God and
our horse must have willing submission, good communication, a balancing the direction to life ratio, and a mechanical foundation of maneuvers leading to a mental foundation of maneuvers. Then, it is through multiplying these mental/revelation moments from brief seconds, to minutes, to consistency that perfection is attainable.

---Revelation---

To prevent resistance we must grow in the Lord; receiving revelation knowledge. We must gain a solid mental foundation of who God is. The solid mental foundation of maneuvers comes from revelations of who God is. This revelation comes from the Holy Spirit talking to us, or the Spirit revealing Scripture. The Spirit gives life to the Scripture, “...for the letter killeth, but the spirit giveth life” (2 Corinthians 3:6 KJV), and then we can receive direction.

Revelation

“When Jesus came to the region of Caesarea Philippi, he asked his disciples, ‘Who do people say the Son of Man is?’ They replied, ‘Some say John the Baptist; others say Elijah; and still others, Jeremiah or one of the prophets.’ ‘But what about you?’ he asked. ‘Who do you say I am?’ Simon Peter answered, ‘You are the Christ, the Son of the living God.’ Jesus replied, ‘Blessed are you, Simon son of Jonah, for this was not revealed to you by man, but by my Father in heaven. And I tell you that you are Peter, and on this rock I will build my church, and the gates of Hades will not overcome it. I will give you the keys of the kingdom of heaven; whatever you bind on earth will be bound in heaven, and whatever you loose on earth will be loosed in heaven.’” (Matthew 16:13-19).

In this scripture Jesus tells the disciples that He will give them the keys to the kingdom of heaven. He also tells them His intentions for the Church, and how the gates of hell will not prevail over it. First of all, let’s understand exactly what the Strong’s Concordance says the kingdom of heaven is. Kingdom in the Greek comes from a word meaning – kingdom, royalty, or a realm (lit. or fig). Heaven in the Greek means – heaven (as the abode of God); sky; by implication, happiness, power, eternity. I believe the context in which the kingdom of heaven is taken in these verses; Jesus is telling the disciples He will give them access to the realm of God. “And to make all men see what is the fellowship of the mystery, which from the beginning of the world hath been hid in God, who created all things by Jesus Christ. To the intent that now unto the principalities and powers in heavenly places might be known by the church the manifold wisdom of God.” (Ephesians 3:10-11) He is giving them the ability to communicate with and experience God; just as Peter was given when God revealed to Him who Jesus was.

When Jesus asked the disciples, “Who do men say that I am?” Peter replied, “You are the Christ, the Son of the living God.” Then Jesus calls Peter an interesting set of names in reply to Peter’s statement. Jesus told Peter, “Blessed art thou, Simon BarJona.” BarJona means “son of Jona.” So Jesus tells Peter, “Blessed art thou, Simon son of Jona.” Jesus tells Peter that flesh and blood did not reveal his knowledge of Christ but God in heaven did. Then He says, “And I tell you that you are Peter.” Peter in the Greek means – a (piece of) rock. Jesus goes on to say, “And on this rock I will build my church.” Rock in the Greek means – a (mass of)
In this scripture, Jesus tells Peter that he was a piece of, the mass of rock that God was going to build His church upon. This piece that Peter received and Jesus said He would build His church upon, was revelation knowledge about God. It was this revelation knowledge that Jesus said, “the gates of hell shall not prevail against it.” Revelation in the Greek, can also be translated as manifestation and means – disclosure, appearing, coming, lighten, manifestation, be revealed, revelation. Revelation/Manifestation comes from a word meaning – to take off cover – disclosure.

After the fall of Adam and Eve, man has had a covering. This covering, which is sin, has kept man from God. But through Jesus’ death, this covering can be lifted and we can communicate with our heavenly Father. “I keep asking that the God of our Lord Jesus Christ, the glorious Father, may give you the Spirit of wisdom and revelation, so that you may know him better. I pray also that the eyes of your heart may be enlightened in order that you may know the hope to which he has called you, the riches of his glorious inheritance in the saints, and his incomparably great power for us who believe. That power is like the working of his mighty strength” (Ephesians 1:17-19).

Jesus did not want to build His church under the Old Covenant talked about in Hebrews 9:1-10. “Now the first covenant had regulations for worship and also an earthly sanctuary” (Hebrews 9:1). He wanted us to be under a New Covenant, which He would die to establish (Hebrews 9:11-28). “For this reason Christ is the mediator of a new covenant, that those who are called may receive the promised eternal inheritance—now that he has died as a ransom to set them free from the sins committed under the first covenant” (Hebrews 9:15). In this New Covenant, we would not need men appointed to act as intercessors for us. In this New Covenant, through Christ we could go behind the curtain to the Holy of Holies and experience God. “And where these have been forgiven, there is no longer any sacrifice for sin. Therefore, brothers, since we have confidence to enter the Most Holy Place by the blood of Jesus, by a new and living way opened for us through the curtain, that is, his body” (Hebrews 10:18-20). This is what the first church of Christ experienced, during the day of the Pentecost. People left everything behind and came together in one accord to know God. It was then that God opened up the heavens and poured out His spirit. “God has raised this Jesus to life, and we are all witnesses of the fact. Exalted to the right hand of God, he has received from the Father the promised Holy Spirit and has poured out what you now see and hear” (Acts 2:32-33).

I believe this is what the scripture above is talking about. Revelation knowledge we receive from God and Satan has no power to manipulate the truth from us. Jesus wants to give us the keys to the kingdom of heaven. He tells us, His intent for the Church is to give us revelation knowledge and manifest Himself upon us. “How that by revelation he made known unto me the mystery” (Ephesians 3:3 KJV); “Which in other ages was not made known unto the sons of men, as it is now revealed unto his holy apostles and prophets by the Spirit; That the Gentiles should be fellow heirs, and of the same body, and partakers of his promise in Christ by the gospel” (Ephesians 3:5-6 KJV); “And to make all men see what is the fellowship of the mystery, which from the beginning of the world hath been hid in God,
who created all things by Jesus Christ: To the intent that now unto the principalities and powers in heavenly place might be known by the church the manifold wisdom of God” (Ephesians 3:9-10 KJV).

However, there is a catch to Him being able to manifest Himself upon us, “and whatsoever thou shalt bind on earth shall be bound in heaven: and whatsoever thou shalt loose on earth shall be loosed in heaven” (Matthew 16:19 KJV). Jesus lays it out for us. He gives us the keys to the kingdom of heaven, but we must be willing to die to ourselves, and take up our cross and follow Him. We cannot be tied to this world and expect to experience the kingdom of heaven. The more we die to our flesh, the more our spirit is able to hear from God. Then He is able to manifest Himself upon us and give us revelation.
Solid Foundation of Maneuvers

4 Things Needed To Prevent Resistance

A) Willing submission
B) Good communication
C) Balanced direction to life ratio
D) Solid foundation of maneuvers
   1) Mechanical
   2) Mental

3 Steps in bringing Mechanical F of M to Mental F of M, resulting in perfection
Salvation = Lateral movement of hindquarters (freely), Stage 1.
Sanctification = Direction – Suppleness through the poll and loin.
Justification = Perfection – No resistance, moving in perfect unity.

There are three steps in bringing a mechanical foundation of maneuvers to a mental foundation of maneuvers; salvation, sanctification, and justification. Stage 1 is the most important step in the foundation of maneuvers. Stage 1 allows us to keep control of the horse in high self-preservation situations. When a horse’s self-preservation is engaged they will want their hindquarters underneath themselves for “fight or flight.” The hindquarters are the powerhouse of the horse and they enable the horse to buck, run, or rear. Once the hindquarters are “disengaged” (no longer pushing the horse), all the power of the horse’s self-preservation is taken away. Although the horse may be tight and scared, we can still keep the horse from falling apart if we have Stage 1 (submitted hindquarters). “The Lord is my light and my salvation; whom shall I fear? The Lord is the strength of my life; of whom shall I be afraid” (Psalm 27:1). It is through salvation (Stage 1) that we can keep our horses from losing confidence. “By terrible things in righteousness wilt thou answerer us, O God of our salvation; who art the confidence of all the ends of the earth” (Psalm 65:5).

Salvation/ submission (Stage 1), is the most important thing in the foundation of maneuvers. We must have an understanding that Christ died for us and through His blood we can be freed of sin and become born again into the kingdom of God. When we accept the Lord into our heart, we submit our life over to Him and say we will no longer be driven by our own self-preservation (flesh). We give Him control of our lives and say we will seek His will for our life. “For with the heart man believeth unto righteousness; and with the mouth confession is made unto salvation” (Romans 10:10). Although we receive salvation through believing in our heart and confession with our mouth, salvation is far from a one-step process. “Work out your own salvation with fear and trembling” (Philippians 2:12).

Think of the wrecks that we would get into with our horses if they only submitted their hindquarters once. It is through getting tight and scared and resubmitting their hindquarters over and over that their self-preservation is killed off and sanctification and justification are attainable. “For it became him, for whom are all things, and by whom are all things, in
bringing many sons unto glory, to make the captain of their salvation perfect through sufferings” (Hebrews 2:10). It is through experiencing discomfort that comfort can be appreciated, it is through losing confidence that we can gain confidence in someone greater than ourselves. “And whether we be afflicted, it is for your consolation and salvation, which is effectual in the enduring of the same sufferings which we also suffer or whether we be comforted, it is for your consolation and salvation” (2 Corinthians 1:6). Just like a young horse, we must continually resubmit our lives over to the Lord (Stage 1) on a weekly, daily, hourly basis. “O Lord, be gracious unto us; we have waited for thee: be thou their arm every morning, our salvation also in the time of trouble” (Isaiah 33:2).

It is through salvation (Stage 1) that sanctification (direction) can be attained. Sanctification comes from the Greek word meaning purification (the state) of purity and was translated to: holiness and sanctification. It is only through salvation that we can be purified and we can be purified only through the blood of Christ and the cleansing power of the Holy Spirit, “Elect according to the foreknowledge of God the Father, through sanctification of the Spirit, unto obedience and sprinkling of the blood of Jesus Christ: Grace unto you, and peace, be multiplied” (1 Peter 1:2). Salvation and sanctification go hand in hand. We attain salvation through sanctification, “because God hath from the beginning chosen you to salvation through sanctification of the spirit and belief of the truth” (2 Thessalonians 2:13), and we become sanctified through resubmitting our life to God and becoming cleansed by the Holy Ghost. “That I should be the minister of Jesus Christ to the Gentiles, ministering the gospel of God, that the offering up of the Gentiles might be acceptable, being sanctified by the Holy Ghost” (Romans 15:16).

Sanctification (direction) is the most important thing that I teach in my class and it is the most important thing that Jesus taught as well. “To open their eyes, and to turn them from darkness to light, and from the power Satan unto God, that they may receive forgiveness of sins, and inheritance among them which are sanctified by faith that is in me” (Act 26:18). If you wish to attain true unity with your horse you must learn how to achieve direction (suppleness through the poll and loin/ removing self-preservation) and if you wish to attain true unity with the Lord you must learn how to become sanctified (purified, cleansed of sin). Just like our horse, it is a daily process, not a once in a lifetime event. Whenever we feel self-preservation start to build up in the horse, we need to remember Stage 1 (submit the hindquarters) and then bring direction to the body (suppleness through the poll and loin). The same is true in our own life, when we feel our self-preservation (flesh) start to swell up, we need to submit our life over to God (Stage 1), and then ask for the cleansing power of the Holy Spirit to come and wipe away the stiffness (sin) that has crept into our body. The Holy Spirit (comforter, soft feel) then wipes away our self-preservation and leaves us in total peace (supple poll and loin).

Becoming sanctified was a very important factor in the Old Testament “Sanctify yourselves therefore, and be ye holy: for I am the Lord your God. And ye shall keep my statutes, and do them: I am the Lord which sanctify you” (Leviticus 20:7, 8), and it is just as important under the New Covenant “And for their sakes I sanctify myself, that they also might be sanctified through the truth” (John 17:19). No one could come near to God in the Old Testament without first becoming sanctified (Leviticus 21:21-23) and the same is true today.
We cannot enter into the Holy of Holies with sin and it is the sanctification process that cleanses us of our sin. However, through Jesus’ blood we are sanctified once and for all. “By the which will we are sanctified through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ once for all” (Hebrews 10:10). By the blood of Jesus and the cleansing power of the Holy Spirit we can be cleansed from sin once and for all and have free access to God in the Holy of Holies. It is just a matter of staying “in” Him and not falling into our self-preservation.

Once we have salvation and sanctification, justification follows right after. “Justification” comes from a Greek word meaning an equitable deed; by implication statute or decision and was translated to: judgment, justification, ordinance, righteousness. “Justified” comes from the Greek word meaning to render just or innocent and was translated to; free, justify, be righteous. Through the blood of Christ and the cleansing power of the Holy Spirit we are washed of our sins (salvation/sanctification) and become justified before God. “And such were some of you: but ye are washed, but ye are sanctified, but ye are justified in the name of the Lord Jesus, and by the Spirit of our God” (1 Corinthians 6:11). Once we have been sanctified (direction) there is no longer any self-preservation left in our bodies and we are totally submitted to the will of God. We have willing submission, good communication, a balanced direction to life ratio, and are experiencing a mental foundation of maneuvers; we are riding in absolute perfection.

These are the three stages of bringing a mechanical foundation of maneuvers to a mental foundation of maneuvers. It doesn’t matter which mechanical stage we are in; Stage 1 (stopping forward motion pivoting around the inside front foot), Stage 2 (hindquarters pulling the horse in a reverse motion), Stage 3 (lateral movement of shoulders and hindquarters together), or Stage 4 (stopping forward motion pivoting around the inside hind foot), a horse must go through the three steps I have just mentioned in order to attain perfection. A person must be able to move the hindquarters freely (salvation/submission), get direction/sanctification (suppleness through the poll and loin, removing self-preservation) and the final step is justification; riding in absolute perfection, true unity and willing communication. In order to stop the forward motion and pivot around the inside front foot the hindquarters obviously have to be submitted. To use the hindquarters to pull the horse in a reverse motion, we must have stage 1 and then bring the life into the back. To move the shoulders and hindquarters together we start by moving the hindquarters (Stage 1) and then move the shoulders. Finally, if we are having problems in Stage 4 we need to get the hindquarters freed up. In every mechanical stage of a foundation of maneuvers we must first go through salvation (hindquarters), sanctification (direction) and finally justification (perfection).

To explain this concept a little further I will give an example of working with a young horse. The first thing I do with a horse is attain horizontal direction standing and build a solid foundation in Stage 1. Horizontal direction – Lightly take the slack out of the rein and have them put the slack back in the rein breaking in the poll. Solid Stage 1 – Pivoting around the inside front foot with willing submission (after initial contact; rein, calf, the horse performs the task on a loose rein and no leg pressure – It’s the horse’s idea). I want the hindquarters to move like an oiled-up hinge. Where I can lightly bring my calf into them and have them swing a quarter of a turn either direction on their own, pivoting around the front feet. Once I have horizontal direction standing and Stage 1, I then put the two together and this is how I get “direction.”
I will ride the horse forward and lightly take the slack out of the rein. If the horse does not give with suppleness through the poll and loin, I do not pull harder. I just stop the forward motion and pivot around the inside front foot a quarter of a turn (Stage 1), and then walk forward again. I keep doing this and pretty soon the reins will get tied to the horse’s feet, so to speak. When I take the slack out of the rein the horse will be thinking about stopping and pivoting around the inside front foot (swinging his hindquarters out), and will begin to put the slack in the rein on his own. Pretty soon the horse will not let the slack come out of the rein and will walk in a perfect circle with suppleness through the poll and loin (direction). The important thing is that we have willing submission. I consider a horse to have good direction when I can make a full circle without taking the slack out of the rein and without bringing my leg into them. After initial contact, they should put slack back in the rein and complete a perfect circle on their own. If I do the same thing at a slow trot, trot, and lope, then I never have any problems with my circles or leads. The only time we have problems with our circles, leads, or spins for that matter, is when we lose direction, when they become tight through the poll and loin and begin to operate through unwilling submission.

Direction to this extent can only come if we have perfect submission of the hindquarters. The same is true with the Lord; we cannot attain sanctification (direction), if we have not submitted our entire life to the Lord. If we are still living our life being driven by our self-preservation (flesh), we have no hope of becoming sanctified and attaining perfection in Christ Jesus. Start with salvation/ submission, give your life to the Lord, and ask Him to cleanse you of all your sins. Submit to His authority and let the Holy Spirit wipe away all your self-preservation (stiff poll and loin). When the comforter comes, He will take away everything that is holding you back from true unity and you will become justified. You will begin to operate in the perfect will of God with; willing submission, good communication, a balanced direction to life ratio, and a solid foundation of maneuvers.
I. Setting foundation – Baby Christian
II. Using jobs to build foundation – Growing Christian
III. Using foundation to do a job – Mature Christian

-Neglecting the foundation to get a job done is the cause of many problems. The job becomes more important (sorting cows, loping circles, opening a gate) than building the foundation. They complete the job, but at the expense of weakening the foundation. By thinking only about the job, negative patterns are set, and the horse learns to operate through unwilling submission. An ounce of prevention is worth a pound of cure: Do not let negative patterns form.

If good communication, willing submission, solid foundation of maneuvers, and a balanced direction to life ratio have been established, the person is on the right path for perfection. Most of the problems we have with our horse result from a lack of confidence in one of these areas. All hope of perfection leaves when willing submission is lost. Once the person tries to force the horse into operating through unwilling submission, the perfection that was previously established slowly starts to diminish.

I have never achieved total perfection in any of my horses. However, there have been times when I have felt perfection while I was riding. It is by “feeling” these times of perfection and multiplying them, that I believe perfection is attainable. I don’t know if I will ever attain total perfection with my horses, but I know that it is attainable. I think the amount of perfection that can be experienced is entirely up to the person and how much time they are willing to work on it. Perfection does certainly not need to be attained to enjoy riding a horse. However, for me the more times of perfection I have when I am riding, the more enjoyment I receive. My livelihood revolves around horses, and if I am not improving I get bored and riding colts becomes work. The times I have improved the most with my horses, have been when I have been aware of the times of perfection during a ride and tried to multiply them.

This is true for my life as well. The best times of my life have been when I have been in God’s perfect will, regardless of the circumstances. There are some people that say that perfection is unattainable; if they want to believe that, that is fine for them. However, I am going to believe my Bible and strive for perfection in Christ Jesus. I would rather be an optimist and run the risk of failure, than a pessimist and run the risk of being right. I would rather strive for perfection and end up mediocre, than try to be mediocre and end up worthless. We are already perfect in Christ Jesus; it is just a matter of staying in Him. Just like when working with our horses, we just need to multiple the times of perfection; from seconds, to minutes, to days, to weeks etc. Whenever perfection is lost and we fall out of the perfect will of God, we just need to regroup and start over; starting over in God’s perfect will.
Theme of the Book: Communication

The title of this book is *Returning to Eden: True Unity and Willing Communication*. The theme throughout the book has been the power of the Holy Spirit in our life, and feel, timing, and balance with our horses, and how they can help us attain perfection “Return to Eden.” Through being transformed into Jesus’ image we are able to return to the “House of Pleasure,” experience God on earth, and better communicate with our animals. I have shown you how the Lord has revealed Himself to me through the Spirit, but I am not saying that this is how He will reveal Himself to you. I think the Lord speaks to us in different ways, and this is determined by how we learn the best. I learn the best through pictures and analogies and this is the primary way that He speaks to me. However, some people learn through concepts and others learn through words.

I have commented how the Lord has spoken to me throughout this book. However, it hasn’t been a booming voice like we picture God speaking to Moses. Nonetheless, I know it has been from the Lord and I would like to explain how I have heard it. This is the best way I can explain it. It is similar to when you are thinking hard trying to remember something, like someone’s name, or an answer on a test. When you quit thinking about it, and relax, it suddenly pops into your head.

This is what I experience with the Lord. I will ask Him a question, or ask Him to reveal Himself to me, and then I will wait patiently. All of the sudden something will pop into my head, whether it be a word or a whole sentence. I know it is from God because it will answer my question and will speak to my heart. The more time we spend in His presence the easier it is to hear His voice.

However, we need to make sure that Satan does not try to lead us astray. Scripture tells us to test the spirits. If we are not sure something came from the Lord, all we have to do is ask the Spirit, “Did Jesus come in the flesh?” “Dear friends, do not believe every spirit, but test the spirits to see whether they are from God, because many false prophets have gone out into the world. This is how you can recognize the Spirit of God: Every spirit that acknowledges that Jesus Christ has come in the flesh is from God, but every spirit that does not acknowledge Jesus is not from God” (1 John 4:1-3). If the spirit was from God, it will confess that He did. If it does not, the spirit wasn’t of God and will vanish. Do not get caught up in rebuking Satan, but love on the Lord. When we start rebuking Satan, our focus goes from God, to the evil spirits that we are trying to fight. Do not give Satan the pleasure of having our focus on him. Love on the Lord, and let God take care of the evil one.

The Lord has also given me pictures, or visions. With these, I did not go into a heavenly realm and leave my body (yet, I wait with eager expectation). The Lord just gave me a picture and then elaborated on it.

Once you are in His presence, just ask Him to reveal Himself to you and then try to picture Jesus. The first time I did this, I saw Jesus standing with His hand out, as if to say, “I am waiting.” I then asked the Lord to speak to me and He said, “Path of Righteousness.” I had never experienced anything like it before and I knew in my heart it had come from Him.
The next time I saw Him, I envisioned Him being crucified. I saw Him being beaten by the guards. I saw them put a crown of thorns on, which ripped through His flesh as they smashed it down on His head. I then saw Him receiving the lashes, how the whip was thrown, and how the straps with glass and bone stuck into His flesh taking pieces of our Lord with it, as it was drawn back. I saw how He was beaten and torn apart to the point of not even being recognizable, and then how He was forced to carry His own cross up the hill, with people spitting and cursing at Him. When He had made it to the top, they laid him on the cross, and drove spikes into His hands and feet. Then they hoisted Him into the air.

I saw all of this and I began to cry. I was sad at first, but my feelings then turned to anger. I thought if I was there, I would defend him. I would fight to the death. I then saw God off the cross and He walked over to me. I fell to the ground and felt as worthless as I ever had before. God helped me to my feet and He showed me His hands. He then said, “I did this for you.”

The next day He gave me a scripture. “It is impossible for those who have once been enlightened, who have tasted the heavenly gift, who have shared in the Holy Spirit, who have tasted the goodness of the word of God and the powers of the coming age, if they fall away, to be brought back to repentance, because to their loss they are crucifying the Son of God all over again and subjecting him to public disgrace” (Hebrews 6:4-6).

I have been told since I was very young, that Jesus died to take away my sins and I have always been grateful for that. But, it wasn’t real until I saw it with my own eyes, as He revealed it to me in Spirit. When He showed me how I was crucifying Him all over again, by turning to sin once He had washed me, then I fully understood what all He had done for me. That was real!! That was God!! That is what this whole book is about; God’s spirit changes lives, not man’s words.

I would like to further explain how to get into the spirit of God. To hear from the Lord, we must first prepare ourselves to be able to receive Him. If we come to the Lord being full of sin, it is hard to come into His presence. When we are in sin, we are in the land of Nod, the place that Cain was sent after he sinned. To return to Eden and enter back into His presence, we must first wash ourselves of all sin. To eat at the Lord’s Supper, we must first prepare ourselves to dine with Him.

We wouldn’t walk into the Lord’s house and sit down for dinner, after rolling around in a pig pen. No, we would wash ourselves and look our very best. The blood that Jesus shed for our sins will wash us of all our inequities and we can enter once again into Eden, and dine with Him. Once we have done this, we must forget about the world, and focus on Him.

A good way to turn our focus to Him is to start thanking Him for everything He has given us. Listening to worship music and singing along or even agreeing with the words is also a great way to get into the presence of God. I also like to think about what the Lord has revealed to me in the past, and think about how good it felt to be in His presence. I then remember what His presence specifically feels like, and I ask Him to shower me with His love again; that I may be changed from the inside out.
Once we have asked the Lord to wash us of our sins, He tells us He no longer remembers them. They are as far from us as the east is to the west, “As far as the east is from the west, so far has he removed our transgressions from us” (Psalm 103:12). If we have been meditating and praying to the Lord, since we have asked Him to wash our sins, then we have likely not sinned and we are still perfect before God’s eyes.

If however, we have sinned after we were just forgiven, we then ask for forgiveness and for Him to wash us again. Once we are perfect in God’s eyes, we are then ready for God to speak to us. The Lord will sometimes reveal Himself to us without us even asking, but Scripture says we are to come boldly to the throne, “Let us therefore come boldly unto the throne of grace, that we may obtain mercy, and find grace to help in time of need” (Hebrews 4:16 KJV). “If you then, though you are evil, know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father in heaven give the Holy Spirit to those who ask him!” (Luke 11:13).

I ask the Lord to reveal Himself to me. I pray that He will come to me and show me His glory. For we are transformed to the image of Christ, from glory to glory. “But we all, with open face beholding as in a glass the glory of the Lord, are changed into the same image from glory to glory, even as by the Spirit of the Lord” (2 Corinthians 3:18 KJV). Sometimes He gives me visions with concepts, sometimes words, and sometimes He has a scripture pop into my head.

Sometimes when He shows me a vision, I will ask Him to verify it with Scripture and He will give me an exact verse to learn from. Then, sometimes He just reveals Himself so we can become closer and He does not give me a scripture. We cannot put God inside a box and say what He is going to do with us in His spirit because, “No eye has seen, no ear has heard, no mind has conceived what God has prepared for those who love him” (1 Corinthians 2:9).

Also, what He is doing with you may be different from where He is at with someone else. The main thing is that we are seeking after Jesus Christ and want to know Him and be close to Him and what we receive lines up with Scripture. We should be waiting with eager expectations for Christ to reveal Himself, “The creation waits in eager expectation for the sons of God to be revealed” (Romans 8:19). He promises He will quench our thirst and never send us away hungry, “Then Jesus declared, ‘I am the bread of life. He who comes to me will never go hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty’” (John 6:35).

Scripture says that they will know us by our fruit, “Watch out for false prophets. They come to you in sheep’s clothing, but inwardly they are ferocious wolves. By their fruit you will recognize them” (Matthew 7:15-16). If our lives reflect God and we are helping others to come to know God, this is the fruit that we produce. However, if we are not being changed from glory to glory, the Lord is not growing in us. Then this effort to save the world comes more from our efforts than from God speaking through us. God says He will give us the words to speak, “The LORD said to him, ‘Who gave man his mouth? Who makes him deaf or mute? Who gives him sight or makes him blind? Is it not I, the LORD? Now go; I will help you speak and will teach you what to say’” (Exodus 4:11-12).

It is the Spirit that speaks through us. If we do not spend time in the Spirit, then how do we
expect to grow and have Him speak through us? If it is not the Spirit speaking through us when we are trying to lead others to Christ, often we drive them away instead of drawing them in.

I do not seek after the Holy Spirit and God revealing Himself to me because it gives me a high, although it does. I seek after the Spirit because it is in this place, that we are transformed into His image. Alcohol and drugs are Satan’s substitute for what God has in store for us in His Holy Spirit. People seek after drugs and alcohol because it makes them feel good, it helps them forget about this bitter world, and they have a great time while experiencing the high.

However, Satan is out to destroy us and once we have given our bodies over to these substitutes, we become numb to the still small voice in our hearts, which comes from the Lord, “and after the fire a still small voice. And it was so, when Elijah heard it” (1 Kings 19:13).

It is then, that we do things we thought we would never do. It is then that we ask our friends, “I did what last night?” and “Wow, I was out of it.” That’s right, you were out of it and it was Satan working through you. I am not saying it is wrong to drink, but the more you do drink past your tolerance, the more you begin numbing yourself to the will of God. We should also make sure that if we drink in moderation, we are not causing others to stumble, “but it is wrong for a man to eat anything that causes someone else to stumble. It is better not to eat meat or drink wine or to do anything else that will cause your brother to fall” (Romans 14:20-21).

Alcohol and drugs benefit only the flesh, but the new wine fills the Spirit living inside you “And no man putteth new wine into old bottles; else the new wine will burst the bottles, and be spilled, and the bottles shall perish. But new wine must be put into new bottles; and both are preserved” (Luke 5:38). The more that you drink of the new wine, the further you leave your fleshly body, and you will begin doing the will of the Father. Paul talks about being beside himself, “For whether we be beside ourselves, it is to God: or whether we be sober, it is for your cause” (2 Corinthians 5:13)” and doing things where he didn’t know if he was in his body, or outside his body. “I knew a man in Christ above fourteen years ago, (whether in the body, I cannot tell; or whether out of the body, I cannot tell: God knoweth;) such an one caught up to the third heaven. And I knew such a man, (whether in the body, or out of the body, I cannot tell: God knoweth;) How that he was caught up into paradise, and heard unspeakable words, which it is not lawful for a man to utter” (I2 Corinthians 12:2-4). If we tasted what Paul had tasted, I am sure it would be hard to return to this world. He had the most pure addiction possible: hooked on God.

Satan tries to imitate God’s glory with his drugs and hallucinogens. They too are addictive and keep people hooked on this world and the high they receive in the flesh. Seek after God and drink the wine that fills your Spirit. I have been drunk on the Holy Spirit and I am here to tell you, Satan’s high is a poor substitute. God’s high is pure and holy, and the aftermath is joy and happiness. Satan’s high is a bad headache, hugging the porcelain goddess, and feeling ashamed of what you did, but can’t remember.

I hope while reading this book the Lord is able to speak through me and you have gained something. I hope that you have learned how to go to the man on the dock, who gives out the boats freely, and you now have the desire to row out to our Father in heaven. Everything else in
this life is meaningless. We have eighty years on this earth if we are lucky, and then eternity; in either heaven or hell. Eternity is a long time. I hope that you are certain where you will be going when this life ends.

If you know that you are going to heaven, you need to remember that we are going to be accountable for what we have done in our life, “We shall all stand before the judgment seat of Christ” (Romans 14:10). If you were ever intimidated by your earthly father, and did not want to disappoint him; I guarantee, you do not want to disappoint your heavenly Father, and He will be very intimidating. Do not be conformed to the ways of the world, but be transformed into the image of Christ, by the waters that flow from the throne of God.
I wrote the next section of this book a couple of years ago and have been working on it for over three years. I talk about what I believe to be different stages we find ourselves in while trying to get closer to the Lord (four stages). Our horses also go through these same stages. There is a lot more I want to add regarding these four stages and tie it all back into the theme of the book (God and man, horse and man).

I reference two different places in Scripture regarding these stages. However, the Lord has shown me five more references (a total of seven) that I believe show us we must go through different stages to reach spiritual maturity. The Lord opened my eyes to these different stages a while back and I prayed for confirmation. In a very short time period God led me to a writer from the 1600’s named Madam Guyon. Similar to what God showed me, He spoke to her regarding different rivers (stages) that God leads us through.

I love the confirmation we can receive from God. When God started speaking to me about returning to Eden, returning to perfection, in less than a week my pastor out of the blue sent me George Fox’s journal. Fox spoke of the exact same thing that the Lord had been showing me. God is awesome; He truly does want to teach His children.

**Rivers in Eden: The Way to Paradise**

Five years ago the Lord let me receive Mononucleosis. In his love He kept me from the pit of destruction, “Surely it was for my benefit that I suffered such anguish. In your love you kept me from the pit of destruction; you have put all my sins behind your back” (Isaiah 38:17). He loved me so much He helped me to die to my flesh, so that I could live in His spirit. I was very sick and weak, but when I spent time in His presence, He made me strong. So naturally, I spent lots of time in the Spirit and what the Lord showed me was truly out of this world.

One time I was praying, and the Lord showed me a box. Inside that box, was God. I approached the box and once I saw God was inside it, I wanted to get inside of it. I walked up to the box and began shaking it, thinking that maybe He would fall out. When that didn’t work, I tried tapping it a little and that didn’t work either. The more I thought about getting in the box and that I could not, the more frustrated I began to get.

Soon I was beating the box with all that I had. I was kicking it, hitting it, and then I had a bat and was beating it for all I was worth. Eventually, I was exhausted. I fell to the ground breathing hard, with sweat rolling down my face. It was at this point that I saw the box had a keyhole. I asked the Lord, “What is the key?” And he told me, “The Lord rewards those with patience with kindness and love.”

The Lord is the same yesterday, today, and forever, “Jesus Christ is the same yesterday and today and forever” (Hebrews 13:8). When we read our Bibles, we read stories of people doing amazing things and God revealing Himself in amazing ways. God has not changed, only
the people who are serving Him have. I know that the Lord wants to use me, and I am excited about that. However, He wants all of me. Therefore, I want as much of Him on this earth as I can have. I pray that He will show me what is holding me back from tasting what Moses tasted, and experiencing what the apostles experienced.

I thought it was pretty simple: spend time in the Spirit, read your Bible, be transformed into His image, and He will take us to the Father. I had been spending time in the Spirit, and He had been revealing little pieces of heaven to me.

However, what He has been showing me lately, is that it is not easy at all. Jesus was crucified, and apostles we tortured; it is a grueling process to die to yourself. I had been pressing into His presence, and He had showered me with His love. The Lord wanted me to give up everything, but I guess I still wanted to hold on to some things. He showed me some things when I was praying, that I wouldn’t fully understand until later.

Once as I was praying, I saw myself wanting to run to Him, but chains were holding me back. Another time, there were meat hooks that were digging into my flesh, that would not let me go. In the same way that the horse’s self-preservation holds them back from true unity with us, our flesh holds us back from true unity with the Lord. I thought that I was trying to serve Him, but I guess I didn’t understand what your “all” meant. Some time went by; I went through a little tribulation. I quit charging after Him with the same intensity and He quit revealing Himself to me like He had been.

This summer I felt like I was to get a Strong’s Concordance and dig into Scripture the same way I did in the Spirit. This was the first verse He gave me: “I press toward the mark for the prize of the high calling of God in Christ Jesus” (Philippians 3:14 KJV). I looked up mark in the Strong’s and it meant – To peer about “skeptic” though the idea of concealment, a goal: mark. It was akin to another word meaning – to dig. So that is exactly what I did.

I use the King James Version of the Bible, to do my digging in Scripture. The King James Version is translated word for word as best they could, and most of the other versions are translated thought for thought. It is my belief, that the original writings of Scripture were the inspired word of God. With some of the recent translations, we cannot be sure that the translators were in the same spirit, as the men of God who originally wrote them. “Therefore how should they be able to bear being told that nay should grow up to the measure of the stature of the fullness of Christ, when they cannot bear to hear that any should come, whilst upon earth, into the same power and Spirit that the prophets and apostles were in? Though it be a certain truth, that none can understand their writings aright without the same Spirit by which they were written” (Fox, 1997).

However, please don’t misinterpret me I do not feel that the King James Version is the only Bible to read. There are certainly many other versions that are much easier to read. Although, I do feel when we are digging into Scripture, to truly understand the hidden treasures of Christ, the King James is the version that is best.

I started in Genesis and looked up Eden. Eden means – Region of Adam’s home, the same as
a word meaning – *pleasure, to be soft or pleasant, to live voluptuously, a house of pleasure.* Cain was sent out of the Lord’s presence and went to the land of Nod. Nod means – *vagrancy, exile, wandering, to Nod, waver, flee, disappear, taunt.* I fully understood the meaning of these words. I had lived in both of these places, but wanted to learn how to stay in Eden.
The rivers in Genesis have special meaning when you look them up in the Strong’s Concordance. I believe that the different rivers symbolize the different places we find ourselves with the Lord. I would like to explain what the rivers mean. Then, I will tell you what I have experienced in these rivers in my walk with the Lord and how it can be applied to our horses. The waters that came out of Eden, in the second chapter of Genesis, I believe are the same waters we find in Ezekiel 47. I believe that the rivers in Ezekiel are a road map to understand the rivers in Genesis and the different places we find ourselves with the Lord.

“A river watering the garden flowed from Eden; from there it was separated into four headwaters” (Genesis 2:10). God showed me in Ezekiel 47 that the Lord “brought him unto the door of the house; and behold, waters issued out from under the threshold of the house” (Ezekiel 47:1 KJV). The Lord then takes him in a circle around the house. He enters in the east, “waters issued out from under the threshold of the house eastward” (Ezekiel 47:1 KJV). Then Ezekiel looks to the south, and he sees water running down from the south side of the altar, “and the waters came down from under the right side of the house, at the south side of the altar” (Ezekiel 47:1 KJV).

Ezekiel is then taken to the north side, and walks around to the west side of the house looking back to the east, and he sees water running from the west down to the north. “Then brought he me out of the way of the gate northward, and led me about the way without unto the utter gate by the way that looketh eastward; and, behold, there ran out waters on the right side” (Ezekiel 47:2 KJV). Ezekiel then starts in the east and measures four times taking him through the waters. First, the waters are to his ankles, next they are to his knees, then to his loins, and finally the waters were over his head and he had to swim.
I. Euphrates: Up to Our Ankles

“And the fourth river is Euphrates” (Genesis 2:14 KJV)

In Ezekiel, they approached the house from the east. The forth river in Genesis was the Euphrates, and it means – river of the east; the root means – to break forth, rushing. This I believe is when we find ourselves to our ankles, in the Lord. We have accepted Jesus into our hearts, we have felt His spirit, and we become born again. We have broke forth from living solely in this world and have stepped foot into the rushing waters of His Holy Spirit. For our horses this is the first time they submit to our will and gain confidence that we are not out to destroy them. They experience comfort and companionship in us and stop being driven by their self-preservation. Although they are far from “true unity” with us, they have taken the first step; an elementary level of trust.

This is where I spent the first eighteen years of my life. I knew that I had a savior, and if anyone asked, I would say, “Yes, I am a Christian, I have accepted Jesus Christ as my Lord and Savior.” I led the football team in prayer, before and after the games, and knelt down by the mat to pray before every wrestling match. I would also pray before I got on a saddle bronc horse and would pray with anyone who wanted me to.

I was not ashamed to testify for Him, but I was living my life following my own will, instead of the will of the Father. Anyone that knew me knew I was a Christian and that I believed Jesus was the way to heaven. They also knew I would get into a heated debate with anyone who said otherwise. If I had a beer in my hand, this would cause me to be even more passionate about the matter.

I was living on milk during this time, hearing the word of God mainly from preachers at church. I would sometimes try to read my Bible, but I usually wouldn’t get a lot from it. What I read sounded good. I wanted to be more like the men of the Bible, but I never really had any life changing experiences through Scripture. I was the little seed that had been planted, but never received enough water to sprout and grow into the ground.
II. Hiddekel: Up To Our Knees

“And the name of the third river is Hiddekel: that is it which goeth toward the east of Assyria” (Genesis 2:14 KJV)

The third river is Hiddekel, and it runs toward the east of Assyria. I believe this is the river from the south that runs down to the east. Assyria comes from a word meaning – in the sense of successful, the root means – to be straight, to be level, right, happy. Figuratively, it means – to go forward, be honest, prosper. This is the next step we find with the Lord. This is when we are to our knees. This is the next step our horse goes through. The elementary level of trust rises to a new level and they begin to trust us to do a job. We are able to line out, “to be straight” and go somewhere. More self-preservation is killed off, they continue to experience comfort and companionship with us and more confidence is gained. We begin to build on the foundation of maneuvers and we are able to use these maneuvers to do a job. I entered this place after I had received Mononucleosis and had no choice but to turn to Him to heal me of my sickness. I went from living my own life, to needing Him in order to live my life.

Through a very dear friend of mine, I came in contact with an evangelist. This new friend was then able to lead me to the man waiting on the dock. With Christ working through him, he began to help me know and experience the Holy Spirit. I grew in the Lord’s spirit, in deeper and greater ways than I ever had. I spent more time in the Spirit in a few months than I had in my entire life combined. I was watering the little seed living inside me, and it began to grow. The Lord began to show me things in the Spirit, and through the Spirit the Scriptures came to life and spoke to me, “He has made us competent as ministers of a new covenant—not of the letter but of the Spirit; for the letter kills, but the Spirit gives life” (2 Corinthians 3:6). The Lord showed me how He wanted to use me and I was excited to experience everything He had in store for me.

I had decided to be straight, to live my life for Him. For the first time in my life, I knew I was on the right path and I felt happier than ever. I was going forward with my life and I was letting God lead me in all of my choices. I was willing to leave everything behind, everything that I held dear, and follow Him wherever He chose to lead me. It was during this time that He blessed me in this world; He let me prosper. Through my dad, God sold two of my horses for a little under twenty thousand. I also had about ten mares at this time. All the yearlings out of the mares, along with some other horses I sold, also did very well. The Lord told me to marry my best friend. He told me, “Take your wife and preach the Gospel.” The Lord was blessing me in Spirit; healing my flesh from my sickness; He had given me a lovely wife, and He was letting me prosper in my business. He also gave me a scholarship back. After not rodeoing for two years, I received a full ride scholarship to Montana State University. Hiddekel was a very good time during my life. However, He wanted me to reach Pison.
III. Reaching Pison: Up To Our Loins

The name of the first is Pison:
that is it which compasseth the whole land
of Havilah, where there is gold” (Genesis 2:11 KJV)

The first river in Genesis is where we find ourselves next. The name of that river is Pi
son. Pison means – grow up, be grown fat, spread selves, be scattered. God wants us to mature in
Christ so that He can give us heavenly blessings. This is when we find ourselves up to our loins.
We are trying to live our life for the Lord, but we are still trying to live our lives on this earth at
the same time. He wants to get us past that, He wants us to mature in Him, and He wants us to
grow up.

The Scripture says, “Pison: that is it which compasseth the whole land of Havilah.”
Compasseth means – revolve, surround or border. In order to get to Pison, we must first go
through Havilah, and Havilah is not fun. Havilah means – to twist or whirl, to dance, to writhe
in pain (especially of parturition) or fear; to wait, to pervert: - bear, (make to) bring forth, (make
to) calve, dance, drive away, fall grievously (with pain), fear, form, great, grieve, hope, look,
made, be in pain, be much (sore), pained, rest, shake, shapen, (be) sorrowful, stay, tarry, travail
(with pain), tremble, trust, wait carefully, (patiently), be wounded.

The first two stages I mentioned would be similar to the first couple of rides on a colt. If we
do not have the first three stages and jump to Stage 4, you had better be a good bronc rider and
get ready for the rodeo. If you want to live out your dreams of being in a John Wayne movie this
is fine, but don’t expect true unity and willing communication. The main things in the first three
stages are to get willing submission (hindquarters/doubling) and build as much confidence as
possible. It is in these stages that we set the foundation, and most of our work is done in the
comfort and security of a pen. However, in order to reach Pison (maturity) the horse must go
through Havilah, we must open the gate and face the scary world.

The horse needs to go through a little discomfort at times, so that comfort may be
appreciated. “It takes pressure for relief to be effective, and relief for pressure to be effective”
(Martin Black). It is through Havilah that we begin to kill off their self-preservation and they
find total peace in us. “That in me ye may have peace: In the world ye shall have
tribulation” (John 16:33). Remember that “tribulation” in the Greek comes from the root word
meaning “pressure.” It is through getting a little tight, unsure, and losing confidence that
confidence can be gained and reaching a deeper level of submission can be achieved. It is
through Havilah that our self-preservation is killed off and we are able to reach Pison, “grown up
(maturity).” Just like our horse, until our self-preservation is totally killed off, we must go
through Havilah. Although Haviliah is not fun, it is very crucial to the advancement of our
maturity and enables us to achieve “true unity.”

Now to get back to my story and what the Lord showed me about Havilah. I was trying to
serve the Lord and I was willing to leave everything behind and follow Him. It was at this time
that Satan started to really tempt me. I was a threat to Satan and he was going to try everything
he had to get me off the straight and narrow path I was on. It was during this same time that God
wanted me to mature in Him. For it is through maturity He guides us to the gold that He has waiting for us.

During Hiddekel the Lord had brought me a great deal of money for my horses and He told me to sell everything. I knew that this was what the Lord had told me, but I let Satan convince me that God did not really mean, "Give up everything to follow him." I kept all my horses and because I was feeling better, I took fifteen outside horses to train for the public. I began to get wrapped up in the world again.

The Lord then stepped back and I began to go through Havilah. Within one year after He had told me to sell everything, my wife and I had eight horses die. In the past, out of the roughly thirty mares my family owned, if we lost four horses throughout the entire year that was a lot. With my ten mares, and roughly twenty-five head of horses total, eight horses died. Within two years, my parents were divorced, and my brother and I tried to take over our family’s horse operation. My brother was in the army and I was trying to go to school in Montana.

This put a tremendous amount of strain on my mother, who took care of the horses while we were gone. Our horse operation did not prosper and ended up only costing us money. I had the headache of trying to make our horse operation be successful and riding colts to pay the bills. Meanwhile my wife and I were in our first year of marriage, I was going to school full time on a rodeo scholarship, and my wife was working. I felt like I had drifted a long way from where I once was in Hiddekel.

The Lord then gave me a scripture, “Better is an handful with quietness, than both the hands full with travail and vexation of spirit” (Ecclesiastes 4:6 KJV). Travail means to – toil, work severely, wearing effort, worry and vexation means – feeding upon, the root means – to graze, pasture. The Lord showed me in one hand I had my business of riding horses for the public, and in the other hand I had my business of raising and selling horses. One gave me a sense of quietness and the other a sense of travail and vexation. He then gave me another verse. “The sleep of a laborer is sweet, whether he eats little or much, but the abundance of a rich man permits him no sleep. I have seen a grievous evil under the sun: wealth hoarded to the harm of its owner” (Ecclesiastes 5:12-13).

He showed me that there is a sense of freedom in working for the public. The Lord could lead me wherever He chose while I was riding horses for other people. However, I could not leave my business at home because it needed managing. I often stayed up at night trying to think how I was going to make my business of selling horses work. I had spent a lot of time trying to build up a nice group of mares and I had twelve head of well-bred roans and greys. I have always been a sucker for color, and I had a sense of pride and accomplishment in the horses I was selling.

However, my horses were ties to this world. Christ tells us to leave everything behind and follow him, “Then Jesus said to his disciples, ‘If anyone would come after me, he must deny himself and take up his cross and follow me’” (Matthew 16:24); “Jesus answered, ‘If you want to be perfect, go, sell your possessions and give to the poor, and you will have treasure in heaven. Then come, follow me’” (Matthew 19:21). I was focusing on how I was going to
make our business work; selling and buying horses. It became a *wearing effort*, and I would often *worry* about the business. Then the Lord showed me that these things were a *vexation* on the spirit. When we are in His spirit, the Spirit begins to eat on our flesh, helping us to become like Christ. However, the more time we spend thinking about the world, the flesh begins to *feed upon* our Spirit and we fall back into the ways of the world.
III. a. Havilah: Tribulation That Leads Us To Pison

Once in prayer the Lord showed me a picture of Havilah, and how it changes our lives. I was approaching a farmhouse with a porch on it and there were two dogs sitting on the porch. The first one I went up to was a cute little puppy. I went over to him, and he was bouncing around and acted as if he had been waiting for me. This was the first time I had ever seen this puppy, but he acted as if he had loved me forever. I picked him up and he tried to lick my face; he wanted to love me so much, and his joy was contagious.

The other dog I approached was enormous. He was mean and charging at the end of his chain. He was foaming at the mouth, and wanted nothing more than to get hold of me and tear me to pieces. I kept walking to the dog and he lunged towards me. He got me down on the ground and bit into my flesh. Once he had a hold, he started shaking his head violently, and tore me to pieces. I was screaming and was in excruciating pain. Once he had ripped apart my flesh and there was nothing left, he became as calm as a kitten; a gentle bear.

He then put his head down to me and helped me up. Once I was on my feet, he led me into the house, and behind the door was heaven. The two dogs symbolized the Holy Spirit. There is a time when He wants to love us and bless us in this world. However, He does not want us to be in love with this world. No, He wants to take us to a better place. The big dog helps us to let go.

I believe that going through Havilah can be two-fold. I have experienced it in my earthly life, to help me to let go of this world and to draw me into His presence. However, I have also experienced it in the Spirit.

When I first felt His presence it was a feeling in my heart. It was pure and holy, and I knew it was from the Lord. Other times His presence was butterflies in my stomach and caused my hands to shake. I felt this when I knew I was supposed to say, or do something. I knew what His presence felt like, and Scripture tells us to spend time in the Spirit, so that is what I did. I would enter into a time of prayer and meditation. I would turn on some music and lie down, and ask Him to wash my sins, and to let me feel His presence.

I would then feel His presence fall on me. At first, it felt like it was sprinkling down, as if He was raining from heaven. The more time I spent in His presence it began to feel like I was under a waterfall. There were times when His presence would be so heavy on me, that I felt I could not get up. If I quit thinking about the Lord, the heaviness would leave, but while I was thinking about Him, there were times when I could not raise any part of my body.

There were other times in the Spirit when I felt a joy come over me which made me smile and laugh. At times this joy would grow to the point that I would laugh uncontrollably and would not be able to stop. As I experienced more and more of these experiences in the Spirit, I noticed that they began to change. If I even thought about the Lord, I could feel His presence on me. When I would lie down to pray, I would start to shake.

At first it was nice, but at times I would shake uncontrollably as if I was having a seizure. I would feel my body tighten up, my back would arch, and my chest would rise. It felt like
something was being pulled from my body and the process was painful. I would keep praying through it and after it passed, a peace would fall on me. I would then go into a deeper place in the Spirit than I was before.

There was a time that whenever I would get into His presence, I would go through this unpleasant experience. My body would shake, my muscles would tighten, and I often got cramps. There were times when it was too much for me to handle. I would tell the Lord that I couldn’t take it anymore, and everything would vanish instantly. Although it is not always fun, I keep seeking His presence, because I know that He is trying to transform me into His image and it is just my flesh trying to hold on. I am just experiencing that big dog trying to tear apart my flesh. (I am not saying that everyone has to, or will go through Havilah in the Spirit. I am only describing what I have experienced.) There are over ten places in the Bible that people have testified to similar experiences to what I have experienced in the Spirit.

“I consider that our present sufferings are not worth comparing with the glory that will be revealed in us” (Romans 8:18). Romans 8:16-27 testifies to what I have experienced in the Spirit.

We will go through Havilah when the Lord is trying to help us let go of the world. Remember, He is not trying to torture us; He is just trying to take us to a better place. I often find myself bouncing back and forth from Hiddekel and Havilah. I will be serving the Lord and He will be blessing me, with the peace that comes only from the Lord. Then He will ask me to give more of myself. I will question God, hesitate in obeying and then Satan will come and deceive me. The Lord then steps back and I go through Havilah. I am then smashed around in Havilah, until I have had all the world I can stand. Then come running back to Him willing to seek His will for my life. I am looking forward to getting past my childish desires and towards maturity in Christ.

Our horses do the same thing. They go bouncing back and forth from the comfort and companionship of Hiddekel, to experiencing the “pressure” of Havilah when they fall into their self-preservation. After they experience the pressure of Havilah, they will no longer want to live in their self-preservation and will return to the peace that can be found “in” us. It is easy to shake your head at your horse and say, “What is your deal, if you would just do what I say, life would be easy.” The Lord has been saying the same thing to us, ever since Adam and Eve.
III. b. Havilah: Repent of Un-Nakedness

I would like to tell more of what the Lord showed me, regarding the two dogs on the porch. It is how we approach these dogs (the Holy Spirit), that determines when we enter The House of the Lord. It depends on if we are approaching the house to give, or to receive. If we come to receive, we go to the little dog. We stay on the porch and we receive warm fuzzies from the cute little puppy. We then go away feeling better about life, but return to the world with little change.

However, when we approach the big dog, we come to give. As we approach the porch, we ask the Lord, “What is holding me back from entering your house?” “What must I lay at your feet, to be closer to you?” He told me, “Repent of Un-Nakedness.” After digging in the Strong’s Concordance to fully understand the meaning of this, the Lord began to open my eyes. Un-Nakedness meant anything we were wrapping ourselves in that keeps us from entering Eden, “The House of Pleasure.” After Adam and Eve had sinned, they covered themselves because they saw that they were naked and were ashamed. They were ashamed because they were in sin. The Lord tells us to repent of our sin.

Sin in the Strong’s means – offense, sin and comes from a word meaning – to miss the mark (and so not share in the prize). “I press toward the mark for the prize of the high calling of God in Christ Jesus” (Philippians 3:14 KJV). Mark (Skopos, in Greek) means – to peer about “skeptic” through the idea of concealment, a goal; mark. The Strong’s tells us of another word that is comparable to, but the opposite of mark (Keposna). It means – a covering and is like a word meaning – through the idea of noticeableness; a covering.

Sin is a covering. We need to “press toward the mark” so that Christ can remove the covering and free us from sin. “Let us therefore; as many as be perfect, be thus minded: and if in any thing ye be otherwise minded, God shall reveal even this unto you” (Philippians 3:15 KJV). We are not perfect when we are covering ourselves with sin. Repent of Un-Nakedness. Approach the big dog; let Him reveal your covering. Let Him show you what is holding you back from perfection in Christ.

Once He showed me this, I started approaching the Throne of God asking, “What’s holding me back?” Instead of approaching the little dog when I still wanted to live my life in the flesh, I started approaching the big dog wanting to die to flesh, so I could live in the Spirit. Instead of going to the Lord to receive, I went to the Lord to give up more.

When I started approaching Him in this manner, He started to reveal to me what had been my covering. I had wrapped myself with worry, bitterness, selfishness, and unfaithfulness. He revealed to me that I had been worrying about how I was to provide for my family. I had bitterness towards the people that had hurt me in the past. I wanted to do things out of my own will instead of the will of the Lord, and I didn’t have faith in the Lord, knowing that He could provide me with everything I needed. The next time you go to the House of God ask yourself, “In what manner am I going to the Lord? Am I going to receive the warm fuzzies and get filled for the day, then live my life the way I have been?” Or, am I approaching the Lord so He can reveal to me how I must die to myself? What in your life, must you give up so you can enter into
the House of The Living God?

The Lord gave me the analogy of the dogs, because it stressed the pain of dying to yourself. It would not be fun to walk up to a dog, and let him tear you to pieces. It would be extremely painful, and you would likely be resisting and trying to fight for your life. We have the Spirit living inside us from God, and this Spirit wants to know God. However, we also have the flesh wrapped around us, that comes from the sin we were born into. The sin living inside our flesh does not want to die, and the flesh is going to put up a fight. “Dearly beloved, I beseech you as strangers and pilgrims, abstain from fleshly lusts, which war against the soul” (1 Peter 2:11). We have to be willing to die to this world daily. “And he said unto them all, If any man will come after me, let him deny himself, and take up his cross daily, and come follow me. (Luke 9:23). We have to kill our flesh daily. I protest by your rejoicing which I have in Christ Jesus our Lord, I die daily. (1 Corinthians 15:31). It is much better to die to our flesh, so we can live in the Spirit. “For to me to live is Christ, but to die is gain” (Philippians 1:21). The more flesh we kill off on this earth, the more our spirit grows and we can spend more time with Jesus in heaven. “For I am in a strait between two, having a desire to depart, and to be with Christ; which is far better: Nevertheless to abide in the flesh is more needful for you” (Philippians 1:22-23).

If we approach the ferocious dog which cannot stand the flesh, and we stay until he kills the flesh, it would be over quick and we could enter into the House. However, the flesh does not like being killed, and it runs back into the world to seek relief. When the Spirit starts taking pieces of our flesh, Satan is going to do everything he can to draw us back into the world. If we let the big dog take a piece of our flesh, then run back into the world, the dead piece of flesh would eventually heal and we would be right back to where we started; living fully in the flesh.

However, if He took a piece of our flesh and we kept seeking Him the flesh would not grow back, and the Holy Spirit could eventually finish the job. The more time we spend in the Spirit, the more of the flesh He will kill, until He has ripped apart everything that was holding us back from entering His house. Inside His house is heaven, and that is where He would like to take us all. For it is then, that we have died to our childish ways and have walked on to maturity in Christ. “When I was a child, I spake as a child, I understood as a child, I thought as a child: But when I became a man, I put away childish things” (1 Corinthians 13:11).
Once we make it through Havilah, God has gold for us, **“And the gold of that land is good: there is bdellium and onyx stone” (Genesis 2:12).** Onyx means – *to blanch, the beryl (from its pale green color)*, beryl means – *to bleach, or turn white.* Revelations 7:14 tells us of something similar, **“These are they who have come out of the great tribulation; they have washed their robes and made them white in the blood of the Lamb.”** Bdellium means – *pearl* and comes from a word meaning – *to divide, separate, distinguish, difference.*

These are the horses that stand out, “divide, separate” in a crowd. All their self-preservation as been wiped clean through Havilah, and they are experiencing the “true unity” that can be experienced with the rider. They may not be totally perfect yet; they still might have to fall back to Havilah at times. However, they know what Havilah is and they know what Pison is and they would much rather operate in Pison. These horses operate in true unity and willing communication, enjoy being ridden and we can use them to accomplish a lot in a job, they’re “broke.”

Once we have been through Havilah, we are not concerned with this world. We die to our flesh and stand out in this world. We are *different and separate* from this world of sin. This is when we feel as though we are in the world, but not of the world. It is then that we start to become *grown up,* and the Lord is able to have adult conversations with us. The gold that He gives us, I believe, are heavenly treasures. Since we have died to this world, He can bless us in His world.

Remember that when we are going through Havilah, He will be there. He will also give us tastes of what is in store for us when we reach Gihon. In Ezekiel He says, **“Then brought he me out of the way of the gate northward, and led me about the way without unto the utter gate by the way that looketh eastward; and, behold, there ran out waters on the right side” (Ezekiel 47:2 KJV).** The waters that ran out the right side, I believe will come down to Havilah, and help us to reach Pison. This is the meat that we get from the Lord. This is what we live on while going through the tribulation in Havilah. I think we often bounce back and fourth. Once we have been through Havilah and killed off our flesh, God is able to speak to us.

However, sometimes we fall back into our old ways and we have to go back through Havilah again. I am constantly bouncing from Hiddekel (peace in the world) to Havilah (unpleasantness in the world) to Pison (in the world but not of the world, totally consumed with the love of God, having adult conversations with God). Pison is awesome, but God wants to take us further.
VI. Gihon: Over Our Heads

The next river in Genesis is Gihon. Gihon means – *a river of paradise* and comes from a word meaning – *to gush forth (as water), to issue:* break forth, labor to bring forth, come forth, draw up, take out. Ethiopia means – *hot, warm, (from a tropical habitat).* The last river in Genesis is when the waters will be over our heads. We will no longer be in sin, and God will *draw us up and take us out.* This is what the apostles experienced when they left their bodies and God was able to take them to heavenly realms. They were able to return to the Garden of Eden (tropical habitat) and walk and talk with God.

This is the final stage that we reach with our horse. I think we could be great horsemen and ride horses our entire lives, yet, still have only a few horses, if any, ever reach this stage. These horses are truly out of this world; all self-preservation is dead and the horse and person truly become one. It is like we have returned to Eden with perfect submission and willing communication. I have definitely not attained this with any of my horses. However, I will ride the rest of my life in hopes to get to with our horses, or with the Lord. Of all the great people in the Bible, there were only two people that fully completed this stage, Elijah (*2 Kings 2:11*) and Enoch (*Genesis 5:24*).

One time as I was praying, I saw myself walking with Jesus, through a field. We walked for a ways, and after a while He ascended into heaven. I told the Lord that I wanted to go with Him. I wanted to experience what the apostles experienced when they left their bodies and were able to go into the heavens. He said, *“You must first have the full armor of God.”* I then saw myself with a breastplate of gold. He gave me a piece of the armor, but to go with Him, we must be fully armed with the armor of God. Sin will then have no hold on us. “*Put on the full armor of God so that you can take your stand against the devil's schemes*” (*Ephesians 6:11*) and He can *take us out* to the river of paradise.

Going through Havilah, although it is not fun, will help us to stay focused on Him and help us to receive the full armor of God. This will then enable us to mature in Christ (Pison) and be able to reach the final river on earth, where we will *break forth* from this world and *come forth* to the heavens (Gihon). “*I know a man in Christ who fourteen years ago was caught up to the third heaven. Whether it was in the body or out of the body I do not know—God knows. And I know that this man—whether in the body or apart from the body I do not know, but God knows—was caught up to paradise. He heard inexpressible things, things that man is not permitted to tell*” (*2 Corinthians 12:2-4*), just as the apostles were able to do. The same rivers that the apostles were able to walk into are the same rivers that are here today. We just need to ask ourselves, “How far am I willing to leave this world and walk out into His waters?”
Waters from God: Pure River of Life

“Then the angel showed me the river of the water of life, as clear as crystal, flowing from the throne of God and of the Lamb down the middle of the great street of the city. On each side of the river stood the tree of life, bearing twelve crops of fruit, yielding its fruit every month. And the leaves of the tree are for the healing of the nations” (Revelation 22:1-2). Jesus was the Lamb of God and He told the Samaritan woman that if she would drink of Him she would never thirst again, “but whoever drinks the water I give him will never thirst. Indeed, the water I give him will become in him a spring of water welling up to eternal life” (John 4:14). Scripture says that by Jesus’ stripes we are healed, “and with his stripes we are healed” (Isaiah 53:5 KJV). He took all our infirmities, “Surely he took up our infirmities and carried our sorrows” (Isaiah 53:4).

“Now when I had returned, behold, at the bank of the river were very many trees on the one side and on the other. Then said he unto me, These waters issue out toward the east country, and go down into the desert, and go into the sea: which being brought forth into the sea, the waters shall be healed. And it shall come to pass, that every thing that liveth, which moveth, whithersoever the rivers shall come, shall live: and there shall be a very great multitude of fish, because these waters shall come thither: for they shall be healed; and every thing shall live whither the river cometh” (Ezekiel 47:7-9 KJV).

Jesus is life. He spoke life into people, “The Spirit gives life; the flesh counts for nothing. The words I have spoken to you are spirit and they are life” (John 6:63). At His command the dead rose, “When he had said this, Jesus called in a loud voice, ‘Lazarus, come out!’ The dead man came out, his hands and feet wrapped with strips of linen, and a cloth around his face. Jesus said to them, ‘Take off the grave clothes and let him go’” (John 11:43-44), and the sick were healed, “Many followed him, and he healed all their sick” (Matthew 12:15).

“And by the river upon the bank thereof, on this side and on that side, shall grow all trees for meat, whose leaf shall not fade, neither shall the fruit thereof be consumed: it shall bring forth new fruit according to his months, because their waters they issued out of the sanctuary: and the fruit thereof shall be for meat, and the leaf thereof for medicine” (Ezekiel 47:12). Inside the rivers are leaves for medicine to heal and trees for meat. By stepping in the rivers that flow from the throne of God we can be fed and healed. However, we must be willing to step into the rivers.

The Lord told Ezekiel that the land was to be the inheritance for the twelve tribes of Israel, “This is what the Sovereign LORD says: ‘These are the boundaries by which you are to divide the land for an inheritance among the twelve tribes of Israel’” (Ezekiel 47:13). However, the Lord speaks to Ezekiel concerning “strangers that sojourn among you.” “They shall be unto you as born in the country among the children of Israel; they shall have inheritance with you among the tribes of Israel” (Ezekiel 47:22 KJV). Because of Israel’s unbelief Paul tells us that like grafted branches we may become children of God, “And if some of the branches be broken off, and thou, being a wild olive tree, wert grafted in among them, and with them partakest of the root and fatness of the olive tree” (Romans 11:17).
And you also were included in Christ when you heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation. Having believed, you were marked in him with a seal, the promised Holy Spirit, who is a deposit guaranteeing our inheritance” (Ephesians 1:13-14). These rivers are part of our inheritance. Through Jesus Christ dying on the cross, we can become children of God “Ye are of God, little children, and have overcome them: because greater is he that is in you, than he that is in the world” (1 John 4:4 KJV), and He can feed us “Blessed are ye that hunger now: for ye shall be filled. Blessed are ye that weep now: for ye shall laugh” (Luke 6:21 KJV) and heal us of all our infirmities. “That it might be fulfilled which was spoken by Esaias the prophet, saying, Himself took our infirmities, and bare our sicknesses” (Matthew 8:17).

“No longer will there be any curse. The throne of God and of the Lamb will be in the city, and his servants will serve him” (Revelation 22:3). No more curse and without sin. Just like it was in the beginning; walking and talking with God.

“They will see his face, and his name will be on their foreheads” (Revelation 22:4). Name, in the Strong’s Concordance means – authority, character, name, and comes from a word meaning – To know, allow, be aware of, feel, have knowledge, perceive, be resolved, can speak, be sure, understand. Through these waters we can grow and know God. We are capable of knowing Him in a deeper and more intimate way. We can speak to Him, have knowledge about Him and will be aware of His presence in our lives.

I feel all these things about my wife, but we did not obtain this relationship through a few interactions. We grew to where we are today by spending time together, getting to know one another, and the more time we spend together, we will only become closer. The same is true with our Father in heaven. In order to truly know Him, we must spend time with Him, and the rivers are the way that we do that. Revelation 22:3 and Ezekiel 47:12 tell us that we will be able to grow in the rivers, be healed from sickness and disease, and mature in Christ. By growing in the rivers, the Lamb will wash our sins away, the curse will be gone, and we will return to “Eden.” Where we will walk and talk with God.

“Whoever is thirsty, let him come; and whoever wishes, let him take the free gift of the water of life” (Revelation 22:17). The Lord said, “I am the Alpha and the Omega, the Beginning and the End. To him who is thirsty I will give to drink without cost from the spring of the water of life” (Revelation 21:6). In the second chapter and the last chapter of the Bible God tells us about the rivers. I believe He did this for a reason.
What is the Problem?

Being born into a fallen world, a world full of sin and turmoil we are guaranteed to run into problems in our life. Jesus tells us that we are going to have tribulation in this world, “These things I have spoken unto you, that in me ye might have peace. In the world ye shall have tribulation: but be of good cheer; I have overcome the world” (John 16:33 KJV). Jesus gives us a simple solution to solve all our problems. A solution that is so simple that we are easily confused by its simplicity. “…in me ye might have peace” (John 16:33 KJV). In Him we may have peace; that is all there is to it, this is the simple solution to ALL our problems. If we are in Him we are no longer in ourselves. “This I say then, Walk in the Spirit, and ye shall not fulfil the lust of the flesh. For the flesh lusteth against the Spirit, and the Spirit against the flesh: and these are contrary the one to the other: so that ye cannot do the things that ye would” (Galatians 5: 16-17 KJV).

It is so simple!!!! In Him we will have peace; in our flesh we will have tribulation. It is black and white; we are either in our flesh, or in the Spirit. One leads to perfection, the other leads to destruction. So what should be the goal of Christians? What should be the goal of the church? Learn how to stay in the Spirit!!!! Learn how to stay “in Him,” learn how to live in the perfect will of God, learn how to stay in “true unity.” This is where the Lord has spoken to me and this is where God has directed my ministry; “Returning to Eden.” Helping people find the man waiting on the dock that gives out the boats freely. Helping people get out from under the cave and start experiencing the power of the presence of God. Helping people understand what it means to be under the Old Covenant (the law), or experiencing the New Covenant (taught by God).

To help my class determine if they are operating under the traditional thought process (Old Covenant), or the alternative thought process (New Covenant) I tell them to pay attention to the horse’s confidence level. To make it simple, I tell them to look at the horse’s head. The horse’s head is a good measure of how confident the horse is in its rider. If the horse is highly confident in the person, they will also have confidence in the jobs that the person expects the horse to perform. The level of confidence that the horse has in the person can be determined by the intensity of the job and consistency of the head. The same is true with our faith in God.

A horse operating in willing submission, with good communication, a solid foundation of maneuvers and a balanced direction to life ratio will have a high confidence level while performing a job; indicated by a low head set. A horse that is operating in un-willing submission, with a lack of communication, high self-preservation and an unbalanced direction to life ratio will have a low confidence level; indicated by a high head set. All we have to do is look at the horse’s head height. As the horse’s head begins to elevate while doing a job, he begins losing confidence in the person and in the jobs which the person puts them in. The longer the horse is ridden with a high head set the more confidence will be destroyed. The longer the horse is ridden with a low head set (often crowding the line of losing confidence, but not pushing it too far) the more confidence will be built.
This simple concept also lines up with Scripture and operating in the flesh and in the Spirit. “Better is a handful with quietness, than both the hands full with travail and vexation of the spirit” (Ecclesiastes 4:6 KJV). As I said earlier in the book, travail in Hebrew means- toil, work severely, wearing effort, worry. Vexation in Hebrew means- feeding upon, to graze, pasture. If we are experiencing travail in our life, we are no longer in the Spirit, but in our flesh. We are no longer in Christ (peace), but in the world (tribulation; John 16:33). When we are in the flesh, the flesh begins to “feed upon” our Spirit and weaken our faith in Christ. When we are in the Spirit, the Spirit begins to “feed upon” our flesh and strengthen our faith in Christ. As simple as our horse’s head giving us a measure of their confidence level, Paul gives us a measure of our faith level in God. In Galatians he gives us specific signs to help us determine if we are in the flesh or in the Spirit.

Here is a list of the works of the flesh, “Now the works of the flesh are manifest, which are these: Adultery, fornication, uncleanness, lasciviousness, idolatry, witchcraft, hatred, variance, emulations, wrath, strife, seditions, heresies, envyings, murders, drunkenness, revellings, and such like: of the which I tell you before, as I have also told you in time past, that they which do such things shall not inherit the kingdom of God” (Galatians 5:19-21 KJV).

Here is a list of the fruit of the Spirit, “But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, longsuffering, gentleness, goodness, faith, meekness, temperance: against such there is no law. And they that are Christ’s have crucified the flesh with the affections and lusts. If we live in the Spirit, let us also walk in the Spirit” (Galatians 5: 22-26 KJV).

To break it down even further, I put into two columns the “fruit of the Spirit” and the “works of the flesh.” I will include what Paul (1 Corinthians 13) says love is (one of the fruits of the Spirit) and I will also include various translations of the original Greek words, along with the NIV translations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fruit of the Spirit (New Covenant)</th>
<th>Works of the flesh (Old Covenant)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Love (Agape-love feast):</strong></td>
<td><strong>What love isn’t:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patient</td>
<td>Envious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kind</td>
<td>Boastful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rejoices in the truth</td>
<td>Delight in evil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Always protects</td>
<td>Proud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Always trusts</td>
<td>Rude</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Always hopes</td>
<td>Self-seeking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Always preservers</td>
<td>Easily angered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Joy</strong></td>
<td>Keeps records of wrong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cheerfulness</td>
<td>Adultery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calm delight</td>
<td>(To look at a woman lustfully,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Matthew 5:28)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Peace</strong></td>
<td>Sexual immorality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quietness</td>
<td>Fornication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rest</td>
<td>Impurity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Set at one again</td>
<td>Uncleaness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Longsuffering</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Longevity
Forbearance
Fortitude
Gentleness
Kindness
Moral excellence
Goodness
Virtue
Beneficence
Faith
Assurance
Belief
Fidelity
Meekness
Humility
Temperance
Self-control
(especially continence)

Physically or morally
Debauchery
Lasciviousness
Filthy
Wantonness
Idolatry
Image worship
Witchcraft
Magic
Hatred
Hostility
Variance
Quarrel
Wrangling
Contention
Debate
Strife
Discord
Emulations
Jealousy
Fervent mind
Wrath
Fits of rage
Fierceness
Indignation
Strife
Selfish ambitions
Contentious
Seditions
Dissensions
Disunion
Division
Heresies
Factions
Disunion
Envying
Ill will
Spite
Jealousy
Murders
(Angry with your brother, Matt 5:22)
Drunkenness
Revelling
Orgies
Carousal (as if letting loose)
Rioting
Maybe I am just young and ignorant of the ways of the world and the interpretations I have received from Scripture. However, it seems extremely simple to me and it appeared to be simple for the early disciples. Paul pretty well summed it up, “Walk in the Spirit, and ye shall not fulfil the lust of the flesh” (Galatians 5:16 KJV). Reading down through these columns, it is hard to imagine experiencing any problems while being in the Spirit. I cannot think of any problem we will have in this world, which cannot be linked back to living in the flesh instead of in the Spirit. This is how Paul learned to find contentment in any situation, “I have learned the secret of being content in any and every situation” (Philippians 4:12). Because no matter what the situation, when we are in the Spirit we are content, “I have told you these things, so that in me you may have peace” (John 16:33). When we are in the Spirit of the living God “Death has been swallowed up in victory” (1 Corinthians 15:54). Everything that is not pure and perfect leading to absolute peace and joy is swallowed up in the presence of God.

Testing our faith in God is as easy as looking at our horse’s head height to measure their confidence level. All we have to do is look at these two columns and figure out which side we are in. It is all or nothing; you are either in the flesh or in the Spirit, “For the flesh lusteth against the Spirit and the Spirit against the flesh: and these are contrary the one to the other” (Galations 5:17 KJV). As we go down the list in the two columns, if we are experiencing anything in the flesh column, we are no longer in the Spirit. The cause of every problem in our life lies with whether we are in the flesh, or in the Spirit. Everything else is a symptom to the cause of the problem. I firmly believe that this is why Jesus Christ died on the cross for our sins; to give us eternal life and to get to the cause of the problem while we’re here on earth, instead of treating symptoms. When we read through the books of the New Testament keep in mind the cause of the problems and the symptoms of the problem. In every book the symptoms can be traced back to being in the flesh (Old Covenant/ under the law) and the solution lies with staying in the Spirit (New Covenant/ freedom in Christ)

Walk in the Spirit

I think a common misconception of people in the church is that they do not understand what it means to be “in” the Spirit and “in” the flesh. They say, “We have the Holy Spirit living in us and He never leaves.” I will not go in too deep “preaching” on doctrine, because this is where Satan wants us, focusing on where there may be a possible disagreement, instead of where we agree. Like I said before, I have observed more division between God’s children “talking” about the Holy Spirit than anything else. This is a no-brainer, people! God did not send the Holy Spirit so we could talk about Him, He sent the Holy Spirit so we could experience Him! This is the best defense that Satan has against God’s children; keeping us trying to understand God through head knowledge, instead of being transformed by opening our heart and experiencing Him.

Jesus fed five thousand people in John 6 and the next day the crowd followed Him to the other side of the shore. Jesus began to speak to them concerning the flesh and the Spirit and how we are to feed our Spirit and they could not comprehend Jesus’ teachings through head knowledge. They began to murmur against themselves and Jesus said, “The Spirit gives life; the flesh counts for nothing. The words I have spoken to you are spirit and they are life” (John 6:63). He also went on to say, “This is why I told you that no one can come to me
unlesstheFatherhasenabledhim”(John6:65).The crowd did not understand the words that Jesus spoke and many left. “From this time many of his disciples turned back and no longer followed him” (John 6:66). It does not exactly say how many people left, but it does say that the people from the “crowd” (John 6:22) of five thousand followed Him to the other side of the lake. After speaking on the flesh and the Spirit, He was left with only twelve disciples.

Twelve disciples that also didn’t have a clue what He was talking about. They were just as confused as the people that left. What was the reason that they stayed? They believed Jesus had the words of eternal life and that He was the Son of God, “You have the words of eternal life. We believe and know that you are the Holy One of God” (John 6:68-69). These twelve disciples abandoned everything they owned to follow Jesus and spent more time than anybody following and learning from Him. They were hungry and looking to Jesus and they were still lost. This tells us it is ok to be confused, to keep seeking Jesus for the answers, and to not settle for head knowledge. Everything will make sense when the Holy Spirit comes (Acts 1 and 2). What else can we learn from the disciples?

Well, eleven of the same men (Judas betrayed Jesus) diligently followed Jesus up until the time of His crucifixion. Then what happened? They remembered His teaching and continued doing the will of God? NO, they lost hope, denied knowing Jesus (Peter) and returned to their old lives. These twelve men that walked and talked with Jesus Christ, the son of the living God, Jesus’ own disciples forgot everything that He had told them, when He left. What does this tell us? The importance of the Holy Spirit! If Jesus’ own disciples couldn’t do it without the help and power of the Holy Spirit, what makes us think we can? If you are unsure about doctrine do not fall under the Old Covenant and only have man tell you what you should think. Be like the early disciples; it is ok to be confused, this is exactly where God wants us, HUNGRY and looking to Him to feed us. This is why Jesus chose the disciples He did, they were ignorant men that wanted to know the truth; He could teach them. This is an awesome place to be; EVERY time I have been hungry and have desperately pressed into the presence of God trying to find the truth, God has opened up the heavens. Believe that He has the “words of eternal life” and let HIM be your teacher.

Jesus told the Pharisees, “For judgment I am come into this world, that they which see not might see; and that they which see might be made blind. And some of the Pharisees which were with him heard these words, and said unto him, Are we blind also? Jesus said unto them, If ye were blind, ye should have no sin: but now ye say, We see; therefore your sin remaineth” (John 9:39-41).

I will only point out one thing and give a few scriptures for you to think about. If the Holy Spirit is always in us and He never leaves, then why do we sin? Why don’t we always display “the fruits of the Spirit?” Why do we sometimes display “the works of the flesh?” The reason is: It is our choice. We choose to either be “in” the Spirit or “in” the flesh. “Walk in the Spirit, and ye shall not fulfil the lust of the flesh” (Galatians 5:16 KJV). We have a new man (Spirit) living inside us and we have an old man (flesh). See: Romans 6:6, Ephesians 4:22, Colossians 3:9-10, 1 Corinthians 5:7, 2 Corinthians 5:17, Galatians 6:15, Ephesians 2:15, Ephesians 4:24, Luke 5:36-39. We are born into this world twice; once in the flesh and the other in the Spirit (see: John 3, 1 Corinthians 15:39-50).
This is the mystery (Mark 4:11, Romans 11:25, 16:25, 1 Corinthians 2:7, 15:51, Ephesians 1:9, 3:3, 4, 9, 6:19, Colossians 1:26-28, 2:2) that we will never comprehend in the flesh. It is only by revelation and the power of the Holy Spirit, that we will be able to “see” in a new light, “the people living in darkness have seen a great light; on those living in the land of the shadow of death a light has dawned” (Matthew 4:16). If we could have understood it in the flesh, by having someone talk to us and understood it through head knowledge, then it would have made sense to the crowd that Jesus fed in John 6 and there would be no division between Christian churches; because there is NO division in the Spirit, only in the flesh.

**Cause of the Problem**

What is……?

An incredible gift if you have it
A terrible curse if you lose it
Blind men can see through a new one
However, you can’t buy a new one at Wal-Mart
But someone can give you theirs.

I wrote this riddle for my class and gave them a demonstration, to help them see the importance of the two thought processes. For the demonstration I had a student stand in the middle of the arena and I told them to look at the wall; only think about the wall, try to get to the wall and do not think about anything else. I told them to close their eyes and put their hands behind their back. I then tied a rope around their waist and told them to accomplish their goal (getting to the wall). They began to walk to the wall and when they hit the end of the rope they stopped. I then asked them “What is the problem?”

They usually said, “I have a rope tied around my waist.” I reminded them that they can only think about the wall and asked them again, “What is the problem?” They then said, “I cannot get to the wall.” I then told them to open their eyes and tell me what the problem is. Once their eyes were open and they looked down “seeing the resistance” they could then describe the resistance. I had them tell me what color the rope was; what kind of knot I used to tie the rope to their waist, and I had them tell me how they would untie the rope. After this step, I told them to untie the rope without using their hands. They obviously could not untie the rope without using their hands and they stood there helpless. I then told them to go ahead and untie the rope and walk to the wall. They were then able to walk to the wall with no resistance.

The wall symbolizes accomplishing the job. The rope is resistance in accomplishing the job; disobedience, self-preservation, lack of communication (problems of the traditional thought process). Opening their eyes symbolizes a new approach to accomplishing the job; eliminate the resistance (the alternative thought process). Their hands symbolize the valuable tools to be able to remove the resistance (willing submission, good communication, driving factors), then they are able to teach the horse how to do the job (foundation of maneuvers, balance the direction to life ratio).
The answer to the riddle is “perspective.” I try to demonstrate the importance of perspective through the class demonstration. I try to help them see the impact that the traditional thought process (job completion) has on perfection (true unity). I tell them that with the alternative process (focusing on eliminating the resistance) perfection is attainable. In my class I try to give them a “formula for building a foundation for perfection.” When you stop to think about it, this is what the early disciples tried to give us as well. I try to break it down in the simplest form for my class. To help them determine what thought process they are operating in. I give them a one-page handout and have them pack it in their pocket to determine which method they are using; the traditional method (Old Covenant) or the alternative method (New Covenant). One has the potential of leading to perfection; the other guarantees resistance, yielding no hope of perfection.

What is the problem?

I can’t get my horse to do ………. (A job)

Two ways to solve the problem: 1- Traditional way, 2- Alternative way.

1) **How can I make my horse do the job?**  
   *Slave Mentality*  
   
   How can I make him to the job?  
   Focus on …….  

2) **How can I help my horse do the job?**  
   *Partnership Mentality*  
   
   Why does he not want to do the job?  
   Focus on …….  

1) **Foundation of Maneuvers**  
2) **Direction and Life**

How can I move the horse’s head and neck, shoulders, and hindquarters in the direction I want, with the speed that I want; in order to accomplish the job?

Focused on **Job Completion**

Run the risk of **un-willing** submission which leads to…..

1) **Lack of communication**  
2) **Self-preservation**  
3) **Disobedience**

*Guaranteed Resistance*

Level of Resistance is determined by ….  

1) **Solid** Foundation of Maneuvers

**Guaranteed Resistance**

Once the horse has **willingly** submitted his will and we are operating with **good communication**….

Then we are in a position to teach him to do do the job. Then we work on building a ….
1) Intensity of Job  
2) Energy level of horse  
3) Patience of person

2) A balanced direction to life ratio

Remember the three stages of training a horse:

1) Setting a foundation  
2) Using jobs to build the foundation  
3) Using foundation to do a job

*Fewer Problems and No Resistance*

because the horse wants to do the job and understands how to do it.

The next time you are experiencing a problem in your life, stop and think which side you are on; Job Completion or True Unity? When you have a problem do you try to figure out how to fix the problem on your own (self-preservation)? Do you go to someone else to have them tell you what you need to do to fix the problem (Old Covenant)? Do you go to church and have someone tell you about God (Old Covenant)? Do you open up your Bible and quickly read Scripture, trying to find some direction (foundation of maneuvers)? Do you try listening to sermons about the Holy Spirit and the word of God and how important they are in your life (direction and life)? Do you find yourself wanting someone to tell you, what they think you should do to fix the problem? Well, some of the things I have mentioned can have positive results in your life. However, they all have the potential of having negative results, by not eliminating the resistance.

If you have tried the things I have just mentioned in the first column and they have not worked, or you think there might be more to life, try jumping over to the other column, it is awesome! Try serving the God of Elijah!!! Believe that we serve a real and living God that can come down and manifest His presence in our lives. Fall down on your knees and give God everything that you have (willing submission). Pour your heart out to God and worship Him with all of your heart, with all your soul and with all your strength, “Love the Lord your God with all your heart and with all your soul and with all your strength” (Mark 12:30). Humble yourself before the Maker of the universe and praise Him for His infinite wisdom and undying love for you. Get with a group of people that desperately want to hear from God and believe in the New Covenant; that we can come boldly to the throne of God and enter into the Holy of Holies, “Therefore, brothers, since we have confidence to enter the Most Holy Place by the blood of Jesus, by a new and living way opened for us through the curtain, that is, his body, and since we have a great priest over the house of God, let us draw near to God with a sincere heart in full assurance of faith, having our hearts sprinkled to cleanse us from a guilty conscience and having our bodies washed with pure water” (Hebrews 10:19-22). Get with a group of people and come expecting, come hungry, come thirsty, come desperate, “Then Jesus declared, I am the bread of life. He who comes to me will never go hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty” (John 6:35). “Let them give thanks to the LORD for his unfailing love and his wonderful deeds for men, for he satisfies the thirsty and fills the hungry with good things” (Psalm 107:8-9).
Once you have willingly submitted your life to God, He will start communicating with you using your driving factors. You will start to feel the presence of God. You will “feel” the comfort of the Holy Spirit and will experience the companionship of your heavenly Father. The Holy Spirit will start to wipe away your self-preservation (flesh) and you will gain confidence (faith) in a living God; one that we can see, feel, and experience. Your energy (motivation and determination) will be driven by the Spirit and you will want to go further into the presence of God. You will become hungry and thirsty for more and will want to do the will of God. You will begin to build on your foundation of maneuvers (receiving revelations) and you will automatically balance your direction to life ratio. Because the Holy Spirit always speaks truth, bringing life to the Scripture, giving us meat so we can grow. You will eliminate the resistance in your life and you will begin to experience perfection in Christ Jesus.

In Hebrews 10:10-22 Paul points out three very major points in the New Covenant. First, we become “sanctified” (Strong’s— to make Holy, purify or concentrate) through the blood of Jesus, “…we are sanctified through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ once for all” (Hebrews 10:10 KJV). Once we are sanctified, we are perfected through Christ, “For by one offering he hath perfected for ever them that are sanctified” (Hebrews 10:14 KJV). The first step removes our self-preservation by giving us comfort and companionship through the blood of Jesus. Second, the Holy Ghost will be our witness (Strong’s— testify) and He will put His laws in our minds and in our hearts and He will remember our sins no more, “This is the covenant that I will make with them after those days, saith the Lord, I will put my laws into their hearts, and in their minds will I write them; And their sins and iniquities will I remember no more‖ (Hebrews 10:16-17 KJV). The second step transforms us through His comfort and companionship “fruits of the Spirit” and builds on our foundation of maneuvers/revelations. Third, we will have boldness to enter into the Holiest by the blood of Jesus, “Having therefore, brethren, boldness to enter into the holiest by the blood of Jesus” (Hebrews 10:19 KJV). After coming out of the Holy of Holies we will have a perfectly balance direction to life ratio.

I believe so strongly that this is all God wants from us. He wants us to come to Him as little children, desperately wanting to be held by our Father. God wants so badly to hold and comfort His children. “O Jerusalem, Jerusalem, you who kill the prophets and stone those sent to you, how often I longed to gather your children together, as a hen gathers her chicks under her wings, but you were not willing” (Matthew 23:37).

There may be many things in this book that you do not agree with, that is ok; if we would only agree on this last verse. If we could only come into agreement that we are “willing” to let God gather us under His wing and submit our lives to Him (willing submission). God wants to gather His children together and love on us, teach us and take away all our suffering and give us total peace and joy in Him. I believe that God wants to take us to Eden. Christ died to remove our sin, all we have to do is willingly submit every area of our life and we can enter in; enter into the presence of the living God. I so desperately want to serve the God of the universe and be transformed into the image of Jesus Christ and learn from the King of Kings and Lord of Lords. I desperately want to know the truth. If there are some things that do not line up with what the Lord has showed you, then please help me find the truth.
However, let’s not fall under the Old Covenant. Under the Old Covenant there was disunion; there were debates, quarrels, fractions, quick tempers, and fits of rage. There were people that were so passionate about doing what they thought was the will of God, that they crucified the Son of God! As result of being in the flesh trying to do the will of God, they were blind to God’s will and went directly against it. It does not work to try to solve disunion in the flesh. Because when we are in the flesh we are drawn to quarrels and debates, we focus on where we are disunited instead of focusing on unity. This is exactly where Satan wants us. There will never be unity with God’s children until we all learn to live in the Spirit and not the flesh.

Let’s not fall into Satan’s trap. Let’s not become confused by the simplicity. All we have to do is get into the presence of God and He will transform our disunited minds into like minds. All we have to agree on is Jesus Christ died for our sins and that He sent the Holy Spirit to teach, comfort and council us, “But the Counselor, the Holy Spirit, whom the Father will send in my name, will teach you all things and will remind you of everything I have said to you” (John 14:26). I so desperately want to find people that want to know the truth; people that are willing to come boldly to the throne like the early disciples did, “Let us therefore come boldly unto the throne of grace, that we may obtain mercy, and find grace to help in time of need” (Hebrews 4:16 KJV), people that are willing to come together in one accord (Acts 2:1, Philippians 2:1-2) and experience God’s power in their lives. God did not change from the early disciple’s times, “For there is no respect of persons with God” (Romans 2:11), only the people that are serving Him have.

I am far from perfection in any area of my life. I am often a total wreck and a very poor example of Christ. However, I do know one thing; I am transformed when I am in the presence of God. It is like I am two separate people. When I am running around in the flesh, I become a person that I do not like and I know that my heavenly Father is not too pleased. However, after spending time in the presence of God, I become overflowing with God’s love and the fruits of the Spirit become manifested in my life; it is awesome! Scripture says “Let us not give up meeting together, as some are in the habit of doing, but let us encourage one another” (Hebrews 10:25) and “For where two or three come together in my name, there am I with them” (Matthew 18:20).

I am so excited about my calling; I am so excited about the ministry that I am called to do. I am called to get people together that want to know God and help them step into the presence of God and be taught by Him. What a job, huh? I am a vessel for God; this is where it gets good. In order for a vessel to do any good, it has to be full. In order for God to reach people through me, He has to first fill me up. This book is the start of my ministry; I pray that after reading this book you have a desire to know more about God. If there is anything I can do to help you, let me know. It is fun to be filled to the top of overflowing. If God can use me to be a vessel for you, then I am more than willing. I am looking forward to the day when I can talk about God all day, every day. It will then be much easier to stay in the Spirit instead of falling into the flesh. I am looking for people that are hungry to know God and I am excited to be the vessel.
The handout that I give my class is a “formula for building a foundation for perfection.” I believe that if a person follows the simple principles in the handout a person can start building a “foundation for perfection.” I also believe that if a person applies the same principles to their life with God, they too will have a foundation for perfection. It is all about “Returning to Eden: True Unity and Willing Communication.” First willing submission (give God your entire life) then good communication (Holy Spirit) followed by foundation of maneuvers (revelations) and a balanced direction to life ratio (Spirit bringing life to the Scripture).

Below are some different handouts I give my class; the first semester final, definitions, and my thesis project. After the “colt breaking final”, I put in “God’s Midterm” to see how you are doing “being a light for Christ.” I bet you didn’t know there was going to be a pop quiz. Well don’t worry, this is just a quiz; soon enough though we will all stand before our maker and be accountable for what we have done. “For we shall all stand before the judgment seat of Christ” (Romans 14:10).
Foundation for Perfection
Learning How to Eliminate Resistance, When Doing a Job

3 Causes of Resistance
1) Self Preservation
   - Due to lack of confidence
2) Lack of Communication
   - Horse needs more time, patience, teaching
3) Disobedience (Resentment to commands)
   - Due to unwilling submission

4 Factors to Eliminate Resistance

1) Willing Submission - When a request is made the horse willingly performs the task requiring little to no pressure; it is the horse's idea. After initial contact the horse performs the task on a lose rein and with no leg pressure.

2) Good Communication - Learning to read, feel, and understand what the horse is saying in response to our request (Communication involves two individuals, what is the horse saying? Ex. head level). We communicate through the horse’s driving and underlying factors along with feel, timing, and balance.

3 Primary Driving Factors: Self-preservation, Comfort and Companionship
   1 Valuable Factor: Hormones
   2 Underlying Factors: Confidence, Energy (motivation and determination)

Increase in Confidence = Decrease in Self-Preservation (vice versa)
Comfort and Companionship Increase = Increase in Confidence (vice versa)
Comfort and Companionship Increase = Decrease in Self-Preservation (vice versa)
As the Energy level decreases ~ Self-Preservation decreases ~ which opens the door to increase Comfort and Companionship (when presented in the correct manner)

3) Balanced direction to life ratio - The ratio is determined by the speed which we can willingly bring the life up and willingly direct it on set line (straight or curved), without loosing “direction”.

   Life - The ability to move the horse, with any given speed at any given time.
   Direction - When the slack is taken out of the rein, the horse puts the slack back in the rein with suppleness through the poll and loin.

   a) Vertical Direction - (Atlas Vertebrae) – Up and down
      - Break in the poll vertically: Nose should be perpendicular to the ground.

   b) Horizontal Direction - (Axis Vertebrae) - Left to Right
      - Break in the poll horizontally:
- Nose should be directly underneath the eye
  - Should not see any white in the eye (white leaves when horse is looking back, instead of forward)
  - Poll and loin should make a perfect “C”.
  - Should be able to ride a perfect circle (“C” is half an “O”)
  - After tipping the nose, the front feet and hind feet should travel on the same path as the nose; curved line.

c) False Direction- Give nose putting slack in the rein, but do not break in the poll
- Poll and loin are “I” shaped instead of a “C” shaped in turns
- Results in dropped shoulders and leaning out in turns, kicking hindquarters out or hopping in spins and roll backs, and not holding a pivot foot.
- Also results in rubber-necked horses, hard mouths, stiff movements, missing leads and cross firing.

**Stiff Poll and Loin-** Self-preservation, unwilling submission, no confidence
**Supple Poll and Loin-** Willing submission, comfort, companionship, confidence

4) **Solid Foundation of Maneuvers (2 parts) -**

**Part 1 (Mechanical) –** Ability to move the 3 three parts of the horse (head and neck, shoulders and hindquarters) in any direction to accomplish any job

**Four stages:**
- Stage 1 – Stopping forward motion, pivoting around the inside front foot.
- Stage 2 – Pulling with the hindquarters in a reverse motion.
- Stage 3 – Lateral movement of shoulders and hindquarters together.
- Stage 4 – Stopping forward motion, pivoting around the inside hind foot.

**These are the necessary stages of having a solid foundation to do any job.**

**Part 2 (Mental) –** *Horse and rider* begin to receive insight, into how they can move together in perfect unity to accomplish a job: Horse experiences willing submission, good communication, a balanced direction to life ratio, and a mechanical foundation of maneuvers all at the same time.

It’s like you are riding in the dark and somebody switches on a light, all resistance leaves and it makes perfect sense to you and the horse. The horse becomes as light as a feather, moving in perfect unity with the person; no resistance in doing the job. We are able to pick up the feet and move them wherever we want. These are the “ah-ha” moments when riding a horse. It is by multiplying these moments that we are able to build and keep a “foundation for perfection”. The goal is to multiply these moments from brief seconds, to minutes, to hours; until we are left with no more resistance and find ourselves riding, in absolute perfection.

**Three Stages:**
- Stage 1 – Brief seconds during the ride
- Stage 2 – Minutes during the ride
- Stage 3 – Consistency during the ride

**These are the necessary stages of having a solid foundation “with no resistance” to do any job.**
The Effects of Rapidly Fermentable Carbohydrates on the Early Stages of Training, in Two-Year-Old Quarter Horses

Introduction

The primary purpose for horses in our society is to do a job. This job may include: ranch work such as sorting and moving cows; competition such as team roping, reining, and western equitation; or pleasure and therapeutic riding. If the only job our horse has to do is look pretty standing in the pasture and let us pet him from time to time, then that is the horse’s job; that is his purpose for being in our possession. Horses, much like us, have a reason for everything they do. I believe that these reasons can be attributed to their driving factors. I state in my class guide “Foundation for Perfection,” that horses have three primary driving factors and one variable factor. The primary driving factors are; survival/self-preservation, comfort and companionship, and the variable factor is hormones. These driving factors, along with two underlying factors (confidence and energy) either help us, or limit us, in our ability to accomplish a job.

Our objective is to use the horse to accomplish a job; this is “our will” for the horse. However, horses have their own will and this is driven by their driving factors. The goal in my class is to use the driving factors to help the “horse’s will” become “our will.” It is by not using the horse’s driving factors to our advantage that I believe the horse develops resistance, and it is resistance that keeps us from accomplishing the job. Resistance arises as a result of three sources: self-preservation (due to lack of confidence), lack of communication (horse needs more time, patience, and teaching) and disobedience (due to unwilling submission). To prevent resistance we must have four variables working for us: Willing submission, good communication, solid foundation of maneuvers, and a balanced direction to life ratio (see appendix). In this study, we looked at the impact that excess energy, one of the horses underlying factors, may have on accomplishing a job with a horse.

It is my theory that excess energy in young horses leads to an increase in motivation and determination. A starved-out horse with a body condition score of two or three (below maintenance) will have little motivation and determination. However, a horse with a body condition score of six or seven (above maintenance), or high quantities of rapidly fermentable carbohydrates, will be highly motivated and determined. This high level of motivation and determination is fine as long as it is driven in a positive manner.

Using the horse’s driving factors; if the horse is positively driven towards the Man’s will through comfort and companionship, there will likely be few problems. However, if the horse is negatively driven by self-preservation causing the horse to lose confidence in a person or situation; the ability to accomplish the job is very limited and the person and horse’s safety may be at stake.

When a horse is started correctly, as the training progresses the horse should increase its level of comfort and companionship with the person and situations where the person leads them, and decrease the level of self-preservation. As the training progresses the horse should also develop a solid foundation of maneuvers which enables the person to balance the direction to life ratio by
directing the life and decreasing the energy. Once the energy level starts to decrease, self-preservation starts to decrease and the person can develop a good level of communication, leading to willing submission and positive results, in accomplishing the job.

However, if the rider does not decrease the energy (decreasing self-preservation) before he tries to accomplish the job, then the horse will have an unbalanced direction to life ratio, which will lead to poor communication, un-willingness, disobedience and will have negative results in accomplishing the job.

As the horse begins to develop a solid foundation of maneuvers and gains trust in the person, a high energy level in the horse is not as important. If the horse is not driven by self-preservation and the person can direct the energy (life), then the person can use the horse’s motivation and determination to accomplish more in the job. The key is to be able to direct the life. If we cannot direct the life, and the horse has a high level of self-preservation, then we are doomed for failure. Due to the high level of self-preservation and lack of direction, self-preservation will take over and the horse’s confidence will be shattered. Similar to us, we can only shatter this confidence so many times and the horse will learn that we are untrustworthy.

It is because of this concept that I believe excess energy should have an impact on the early stages of training (horses with a high self-preservation level, no direction and not having a solid foundation of maneuvers). If my theory is true, increasing the energy while starting young horses will lengthen the time, or limit the ability to achieve; willing submission, good communication, a solid foundation of maneuvers, and balance the direction to life ratio. The horses with more energy should also have an increased level of self-preservation, lack of communication, and disobedience.

The purpose of this study was to measure the effects of rapidly fermentable carbohydrates (excess energy) on the early stages of training (setting a foundation) to accomplish a job.
FEEDING GRAIN DECREASES TRAINING EFFECTIVENESS IN 2-YEAR-OLD QUARTER HORSES

Montana State University, Bozeman 59717

ABSTRACT: Two replicated experiments (Exp. 1: May 14 to June 8; Exp. 2: June 25 to July 20) evaluated effects of feeding grain to 2-yr-old Quarter horses on behavior and physiological parameters during early stages of training. In each experiment, 6 different horses were allotted by sex and weight to 2 diets; hay only or hay plus 2.3 kg/d grain. Horses were group-housed with ad libitum access to grass/alfalfa hay and water, and were individually fed 1.15 kg grain or 40 g salt (placebo) at 0800 and 1600 for 7 d prior to and during training. The trainer was blind to diet assignments. Horses were trained 5 d/wk for 3 wk and scored (1 to 5) by the trainer daily on obedience (willingness to ride with a loose rein and little leg pressure), life (willingness to move at any desired speed), and direction (suppleness in the poll and loin), while an observer scored fearfulness. A heart monitor recorded minimum, maximum, and mean heart rate daily during training. Categorical data were transformed by subtracting the daily median as each horse’s score was relative to the other horses on that day. Data were analyzed as repeated measures (Proc Mixed of SAS) with horse as the experimental unit. In Exp. 1 grain did not affect \( P = 0.83 \) obedience, while horses fed grain in Exp. 2 were less obedient during training \( P = 0.02 \) than those not receiving grain. Horses fed grain showed greater \( P = 0.05 \) fearfulness than horses fed hay alone. Life:direction (ideal is 1.0, > 1.0 indicates high self-preservation) was higher \( P = 0.04 \) in horses fed grain than in those fed hay alone \( (1.29 \text{ vs. } 1.08, \text{ respectively}) \). Maximum heart rate was not affected \( P = 0.21 \) by grain, while mean heart rate was higher \( P = 0.03 \) for horses fed grain than hay alone \( (126 \text{ vs. } 119 \text{ beats/min, respectively}) \). Horses fed grain during training exhibited more self-preservation behavior, increased mean heart rate, and an unbalanced life to direction ratio, which could inhibit training effectiveness.

**Key words:** behavior, horses, training effectiveness

**Introduction**

Horses, being ridden by less experienced riders, need to be calm and easy to handle, characteristics that may be enhanced by more effective early training (Lansade et al., 2005). Behavior problems in horses often arise as a result of self-preservation. When the level of fear rises, then the horse’s reasoning ability starts shutting down and defensive reactions start to surface (Black, 2005). Increased dietary energy was shown to increase the level of self-preservation in horses, resulting in less learning during training. Feeding grain has been suggested to cause excitable behavior (Grewe et al., 1989). Horses fed grain had higher spontaneous activity, and greater reactivity to stimuli than horses fed energy in the form of fat (Holland et al., 1996), while learning performance was higher in calm horses (Kusunose and Yamanobe, 2002). Nervous horses, identified by having an increased heart rate (McCann et al., 1988), were found to be less trainable, as indicated by the negative correlation between higher levels of emotionality and the number of trials to criterion in a learning study (Heird et al., 1981). It is common in today’s equine industry to feed young and growing horses grain once or twice a day (Steelman et al., 2006) with the potential of reducing training effectiveness.

The purpose of this study was to determine the effect that feeding grain to 2-yr-old Quarter horses had on measures of training effectiveness (obedience, self-preservation behavior, heart rate, and time to achieve training satisfaction).

**Materials and Methods**

**Animals, Design and Treatments**

Procedures were approved by the Montana State University Institutional Animal Care and Use Committee. A total of 12 Quarter horses (24 to 28 mo old; 4 geldings, 8 fillies; 417 ±27.5 kg initial BW) were group-housed in two 30.5 x 45.7 m pens (6 horses per pen). In each of 2 experiments, 6 different horses were allotted by sex and weight to 2 treatments (3 horses•treatment•experiment). All horses had ad libitum access to grass/alfalfa hay and water.

Two replicated experiments (Exp. 1: May 14 to June 8; Exp. 2: June 25 to July 20) were conducted testing the effect of 2 dietary treatments, hay only or hay plus 2.3 kg/d grain (as-fed basis), on training effectiveness. Horses were placed in individual 3 x 3 m pens and fed 1.15 kg grain or 40 g salt (placebo) at 0800 and 1600 for 7 d prior to and during training. Each experiment consisted of 26 d, with 7 d for diet adaptation followed by 19 d of data collection. Within the data collection period, horses were ridden and trained 5 d/wk for 3 wk for a total of 15 d training. The trainer was blind to diet assignments. Both experiments utilized the same procedures.
Training Effectiveness

Effective training was defined as when the horse had: 1) a solid foundation of maneuvers, 2) a balanced life to direction ratio, 3) willing submission, and 4) low levels of self-preservation. During each training session, the following components were measured:

**Solid Foundation of Maneuvers.** A solid foundation of maneuvers consisted of 3 stages: stopping forward motion pivoting around inside front foot, lateral movement of shoulders and hindquarters together, and stopping forward motion pivoting around the inside hind foot. Foundation of maneuvers was defined as the horse’s willingness to move the front feet and the hind feet in any direction to accomplish any job. On d 15 to 19, and d 22 to 26, the trainer scored each horse on a scale from 1 to 5 (1 = very unwilling; 5 = very willing) on willingness to move the front feet and the hind feet.

**Life and Direction.** Life was defined as the willingness of the horse to move with any speed at any time; get-up-and-go, or liveliness. The trainer scored life on d 15 to 19, and d 22 to 26 on a scale of 1 to 5 (1 = drive spurs into belly to get movement, constant pressure; 5 = very free, fan legs or light pressure with calves).

Direction was scored as when the slack was taken out of the rein, the horse put the slack back in the rein for horizontal and vertical flexion, with suppleness through the poll and loin. The trainer scored direction on d 15 to 19, and d 22 to 26 on a scale from 1 to 5 (1 = fighting; when slack was taken out of the rein the horse flipped or shook his head; 5 = total agreement; when the slack was taken out of the rein the horse immediately put the slack back in the rein seeking relief).

The life to direction ratio was calculated by dividing the daily score for life by the daily score for direction. A balanced life to direction ratio was defined as being able to willingly bring the life up and direct it, and was considered numerically close to 1.0. A ratio greater than 1.0 indicated that the life was greater than the ability to direct it, and signified lack of control of the horse.

**Willing Submission.** Willing submission was measured by observations of obedience, and time to achieve training satisfaction. Obedience was defined as after an initial cue, the horse performed the task on a loose rein, with no leg pressure; it was the horse’s idea. Obedience was scored on d 11 to 12, d 15 to 19, and d 22 to 26 by the trainer on a scale from 1 to 5 (1 = lack of obedience; 5 = completely obedient).

During each training session, d 8 to 12, d 15 to 19, and d 22 to 26, the trainer recorded the amount of time it took to reach training satisfaction for that day. Training satisfaction was defined as the horse had improved from the day before in building a solid foundation of maneuvers, balancing the life to direction ratio, and attaining willing submission. Time spent training on the ground, and time to saddle the horse before riding were also recorded.

**Self-Preservation.** Self-preservation was measured through heart rate (HR), locomotor activity, fearfulness, reaction to social separation, and response to a novel stimulus, in this case a flag. Heart rate was recorded during each training session with a Polar S810i model HR monitor (Polar Electro Oy, Kempele, Finland) that consisted of 2 electrodes, a built-in transmitter, and a wrist watch receiver (Visser et al., 2002). The electrode belt was specially made to fit horses. The data received were stored and later downloaded via a Polar InfraRed Interface to a computer, using Polar Equine Software 4.0. Data were recorded as average HR every 5 sec during the training session as well as the mean and maximum HR. A pedometer was used to measure locomotor activity during training. An observer scored the horses during training on d 8 to 12, d 15 to 19, and d 22 to 26 from 1 to 5 on fearfulness (1 = no signs; 5 = high levels, bucking), and on d 8 scored the horses on response to a flag (1 = calm; 5 = highly excitable). Reaction to social separation was scored by the trainer on d 16, 17, and 19, which were the first solo rides outside the arena, away from other horses. Horses that lack confidence in the rider will seek comfort and companionship with other horses by constant vocalizations. Horses were scored on a scale from 1 to 5 (1 = constant whining; desperately looking for other horses; 5 = no vocalization, confident in rider, not concerned with other horses).

**Statistical Analyses**

Categorical data were transformed by calculating each daily score as a deviation from the daily median of that parameter. All data were analyzed using repeated measures analysis with the Mixed procedure of SAS (SAS Inst. Inc., Cary, NC). Covariance structure was modeled for each parameter. The model included effects of experiment, treatment, day, and all possible interactions. Data are presented as least squares means with differences considered significant at $P < 0.10$.

**Results and Discussion**

**Solid Foundation of Maneuvers.** The ability to move the horse’s front feet or hind feet in the foundation of maneuvers was not affected ($P > 0.17$) by diet. When a horse’s self-preservation is high they become stiff through the poll and loin, which can cause poor direction. However, although the poll and loin may be stiff, the horse’s front feet can still be directed in the foundation of maneuvers; forward, backward, and laterally.

**Life and Direction.** Life was greater ($P = 0.09$) for horses fed grain compared with horses fed only hay. Diet or experiment did not affect ($P > 0.93$) direction. However, the life to direction ratio was more ($P = 0.07$) unbalanced (defined as $> 1.0$) in grained horses than in horses fed hay alone (average 1.28 vs. 1.08, respectively). An unbalanced ratio indicates poor control in relation to life and can cause numerous problems during training. The further a horse’s life to direction ratio exceeds 1.0, the more self-preservation increases, and behavior problems may surface. To prevent behavior problems in young horses and possible injuries for unconfident riders, the ideal situation would be to have a balanced life to direction ratio. Our study suggests that feeding grain to horses resulted in a more unbalanced life to direction ratio compared to horses fed hay only.
Willing Submission. Experiment x treatment interactions were observed for obedience ($P = 0.02$), total time to achieve training satisfaction ($P = 0.005$), and ground time ($P = 0.02$). In Exp. 1, grain did not affect ($P > 0.10$) obedience, while horses fed grain in Exp. 2 were less obedient during training ($P = 0.02$) than those not receiving grain. Total time to achieve training satisfaction was increased ($P = 0.005$) by 20%, and time spent training on the ground before riding was increased ($P = 0.02$) by 40% by feeding grain in Exp. 2, but were not different ($P > 0.10$) due to diet in Exp. 1. The time it took to saddle the horses was increased ($P = 0.07$) by 42% in Exp. 2 compared with Exp. 1, indicating more time was required before the horses’ self-preservation levels were decreased enough to proceed with mounted training.

The experiment x treatment interactions may have been due to an increased BCS in horses in Exp. 2 compared with horses in Exp. 1. When the horses were initially allotted to their assigned treatments, the groups weighed the same. However, by the time Exp. 2 was conducted, the second group of horses, who had been eating hay ad libitum and were not being ridden, weighed 19 kg more ($P < 0.001$) than the horses in Exp 1, approximately equivalent to 1 BCS (NRC, 2007). Average daily gain during Exp. 1 was not different ($P > 0.10$) between diets (average 0.58 kg), whereas ADG during Exp. 2 was less ($P = 0.004$) for horses fed hay alone compared with those fed grain (-0.08 vs. 0.08 kg, respectively), and less ($P < 0.001$) than ADG in Exp. 1. This suggests that horses in Exp. 2 worked harder or expended more energy than horses in Exp. 1, resulting in a longer time to achieve training satisfaction. McCall (1989) found that horses with a higher body condition score were distracted more easily during discrimination testing than horses with a lower BCS.

Self-Preservation. Minimum HR during training was greater in grained horses ($P = 0.003$) during Exp. 2, suggesting a higher level of self-preservation compared with horses fed hay only. No difference ($P > 0.10$) in minimum HR was seen due to diet in Exp. 1. Horses in Exp. 2 had a higher ($P = 0.01$) mean HR during training than horses in Exp. 1 (average 127 vs. 117 beat/min, respectively), another indication that horses in Exp. 2 worked harder than those in Exp. 1. Maximum HR during training was not affected ($P > 0.21$) by diet or experiment (average 208 beats/min). Heart rate was shown to be highly correlated with behavioral and physiological estimates of self-preservation (McCall et al., 2006).

The locomotor activity during a training session was 20% greater ($P = 0.008$) for horses fed grain compared to those fed only hay in Exp. 2, while no difference ($P > 0.10$) in steps per session was seen due to diet in Exp. 1.

Fearfulness levels were higher in grained horses ($P = 0.05$) than in horses fed only hay. Horses fed grain had higher incidences of bucking and running compared to horses fed hay alone. Fiske and Potter (1979) reported high levels of fearfulness reduced learning ability in yearling horses. Self-preservation is the one of the horse’s primary driving factors and is the greatest limiting factor when training horses. High levels of self-preservation not only decrease training effectiveness, but may lead to injury of the rider or the horse.

There was an experiment x treatment interaction ($P = 0.09$) for reaction to social separation. Horses fed grain in Exp. 2 showed more signs of whinnying and desperately wanting to return to the other horses, indicating a lack of confidence in the rider compared with horses fed hay alone. Horses without security in the rider are more difficult to train because they are not focused on the rider’s cues; instead they are focused on seeking comfort and companionship with other horses.

An experiment x treatment interaction was observed for the response to a flag ($P = 0.07$). Horses fed grain in Exp. 2 demonstrated more self-preservation behavior during exposure to a flag on the first day of training compared with horses consuming hay only, while no difference was observed due to diet in Exp. 1.

Willing submission is a key factor in starting young horses. Horses that do not submit willingly may become resentful to commands and dangerous to their riders. Horses in training programs are often ridden for a defined period of time. These results suggest that training satisfaction may be reached sooner if horses have a lower dietary energy level.

Implications

These findings imply that feeding grain during the early stages of training decreased training effectiveness in 2-yr-old Quarter horses by increasing self-preservation behavior, decreasing willing submission behavior, and causing an unbalanced life to direction ratio.

Literature Cited

Table 1. Effects of feeding grain on measures of self-preservation behavior, willing submission behavior, and training effectiveness in 2-year-old Quarter horses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Treatments</th>
<th>Exp. 1</th>
<th>Exp. 2</th>
<th>SEM</th>
<th>P-values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial wt, kg</td>
<td>No grain</td>
<td>405.8</td>
<td>407.5</td>
<td>3.87</td>
<td>&lt;0.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Grain</td>
<td>407.5</td>
<td>425.5</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>426.1</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADG, kg</td>
<td>No grain</td>
<td>0.58c</td>
<td>-0.08a</td>
<td>0.028</td>
<td>&lt;0.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Grain</td>
<td>0.57a</td>
<td>0.08b</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foundation of maneuvers</td>
<td></td>
<td>-0.49</td>
<td>0.06</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-0.09</td>
<td>0.13</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Life and direction</td>
<td></td>
<td>-0.19</td>
<td>0.08</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.269</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-0.05</td>
<td>0.02</td>
<td></td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.15</td>
<td>1.31</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Willing submission</td>
<td></td>
<td>-0.24a</td>
<td>0.17ab</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.41b</td>
<td>-0.24a</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total time, min</td>
<td>No grain</td>
<td>34.3ab</td>
<td>31.4a</td>
<td>1.60</td>
<td>0.41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Grain</td>
<td>31.4a</td>
<td>37.4b</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ground time, min</td>
<td>No grain</td>
<td>11.7a</td>
<td>10.8a</td>
<td>1.15</td>
<td>0.09</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Grain</td>
<td>11.2a</td>
<td>15.7b</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time to saddle, min</td>
<td>No grain</td>
<td>5.0</td>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>1.06</td>
<td>0.07</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Grain</td>
<td>8.5</td>
<td>5.5</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Self-preservation</td>
<td>Minimum HR, bpm</td>
<td>53.8a</td>
<td>54.5a</td>
<td>1.65</td>
<td>0.002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mean HR, bpm</td>
<td>115.5</td>
<td>118.8</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Maximum HR, bpm</td>
<td>203.9</td>
<td>208.5</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Activity, steps</td>
<td>3,239bc</td>
<td>2,895ab</td>
<td>166.5</td>
<td>0.52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fearfulness</td>
<td>0.09</td>
<td>0.36</td>
<td>0.017</td>
<td>0.69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Social separation</td>
<td>0.14ab</td>
<td>0.31ab</td>
<td>0.470</td>
<td>0.34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Response to flag</td>
<td>0.17ab</td>
<td>-0.83a</td>
<td>0.646</td>
<td>0.62</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Two experiments with horses having ad libitum access to hay and supplemented with 0 kg/d (No grain) vs. 2.3 kg/d (Grain) commercial grain mix. Six different horses were used in each experiment.

2 Scored as 1 to 5; units are deviations from daily median for that parameter.

3 Within a row, means without a common superscript letter differ (P < 0.10).
What is the problem?

Eliminate the resistance and you will eliminate the problem

**Sources of Resistance**
1) Psychological – relating to the mind or mental processes
2) Physiological – relating to the way that living things function

**Psychological (Mental)** –
- Does the horse want to do what you are asking?
- Why does he not want to do what you are asking?

**Willing submission**-
Are you riding with a loose rein and light leg pressure?
- Yes – You will have no resistance (perfection/ true unity)
- No – Are you operating with a good level of communication?

**Good Communication** (driving and underlying factors)
- Does your horse have confidence in you (determined by head level)?
- Where is your horses head level?
- Is he experiencing comfort and companionship with you?
- Or is he being drawn somewhere else, looking for comfort and companionship?
- Where is your horse’s self-preservation level (high, low)?
- Where is your horse’s energy level (high, low)?

Increase in **Confidence** = Decrease in **Self-Preservation** (vice versa)
**Comfort and Companionship** Increase = Increase in **Confidence** (vice versa)
**Comfort and Companionship** Increase = Decrease in **Self-Preservation** (vice versa)
As the **Energy level** decreases ~ **Self-Preservation** decreases ~ which opens the door to increase **Comfort and Companionship** (when presented in the correct manner)

**Physiological (Mechanical)** –
- Does the horse know how to do what you are asking?
- Do you know what and how you are asking the horse?

**Willing submission**-
Are you riding with a loose rein and light leg pressure?
- Yes – You will have no resistance (perfection/ true unity)
- No – Do you have; good communication, balanced direction to life ratio, and a solid foundation of maneuvers?

**Good Communication** (Feel, timing, and balance)
- Are you helping the horse or hindering the horse?
  - Where is your weight (**Balance**)?
How long is your rein?
Can you feel when the horse does what you want?
Do you know when to apply pressure and give relief (timing)?

**Balanced direction to life ratio**

**Life**-
Do you have to make contact with your feet to get your horse to move?
How much pressure to you have to apply with your feet (light pressure with calves, hard kick with spurs)?
In what speed can you jump into from standing, in less than two strides? (Walking, trotting, extended trot, lope, gallop)

**Direction**-
Does your horse put slack in the rein with suppleness through the poll and loin, when you take the slack out?
At what speed will your horse put the slack back in the rein with forward motion? (Walking, trotting, extended trot, lope, gallop)

**Solid foundation of Maneuvers**

What stage is your horse in (1, 2, 3, and 4)?

Are they solid in Stage 1?
When you take the slack out of the rein does your horse willingly stop the front end and pivot the hind end around the inside front foot at a lope, in less than three steps from the initial contact?
After initial contact (quarter turn), will the horse complete a half turn on their own? (Willing submission)

Are they solid in Stage 2?
Does your horse pull with his hindquarters when backing?
Do they step with the hindquarters first, not the front feet?
Do you have to pull on your horse to get them to back, or can you lightly take the slack out of the reins?
Does your horses head go up when you ask him to back?
Can you speed up your backing by bring the life to the feet, or do you have to pull harder on his head which brings his head up?

Are they solid in Stage 3?
Can you fan your outside leg at a lope and have them willing move in a lateral motion crossing the front and hind feet without elevating the head?
From standing can you lightly bring your outside calf into your horse and have them step with their inside foot first? (Preparation for step four)
Can you move your horses front feet and hind feet together in a lateral motion?

Are they solid in Stage 4?
Can you fan your outside leg and have your horse pull (centrifugal force) the front feet around the inside hind foot (holding the pivot foot) on a loose rein?
Can you do this in a quarter turn, half turn, or full turn?
Can you do this in a quarter turn?
   If not do not attempt a half turn
Can you do this in a half turn?
   If not do not attempt a full turn.

What specifically are you trying to ask your horse to do?
   You are not asking your horse to open the gate; you are asking him to operate in Stage 3.
What are you asking his feet to do?
   Your reins just show them where to go (steering wheel), the feet (gas pedals) get them there.

Can you tell what your horse’s feet are doing?
Can you feel the instant your horse crosses his feet changing a forward to a lateral motion?
Do you relieve the pressure the instant the horse’s feet do what you want?
Do the reins control the horse’s feet? (Are the reins tied to the feet?)
Or do you pull on the reins and your horse’s head goes up?
Are you clear in your mind what you want your horse’s feet to do in response to your rein?
Do you know what it will feel like when his feet do what you want?
Can you pick up your horse’s feet and set them down one at a time in the direction you want, from the horse’s back?
Can you tell me the instant that any given foot leaves the ground and hits the ground?
Preparing a Horse to Shoe

Wade Black

5/24/03

I do not feel that I am an expert in this field by any means; however I have been around horses my whole life, and have been working with colts since I was very young. I am not saying that my way is the way to do it, but I have found some things that have worked for me, and I have definitely found some things that did not work. If nothing else, maybe by not doing the stuff that didn’t work for me, you can save yourself some headaches.

An old cowboy told my Dad once, “The way you shoe a horse the first time will likely be the way he gets shod for the rest of his life.” Meaning that if you take the time and get him good to shoe first, he will likely be good forever, but if you hurry and get in an argument the first time, an argument will come easy the next time.

Preparing a horse to shoe is a job that easily gets looked over, and the job that often gets left to the horse shoer. This poses a problem in many situations; it is the horse shoer’s job to shoe the horse, not to train the horse. The horse shoer is getting paid by the job, not by the hour, so the sooner he gets the job done, the quicker he can get down the road and have an opportunity to make more money. Too often with young horses the handling of their feet has been avoided or neglected, and the shoer shows up on a tight schedule without the time to make it a good experience for the horse. First impressions are very important, and if the experience is good for the horse they can be better the next time, but if the experience is bad for the horse, they can be worse the next time.

I feel it is the owner’s job to get the horse ready to shoe, but if the owner has failed to do this, the horse shoer must. Bottom line, a horse shoer can not afford to spend all day working with a young horse preparing them to shoe, but if they can take a little extra time they will be much better the next time they come back to shoe the horse.

There are two things that are important in preparing the horse to pick up a foot. First they need to stand still. If a horse is trying to move around they are going to pull the foot away to travel. And second, the horse needs to be comfortable being touched all the way down the legs. If they are not comfortable with the person touching the horse all around the legs inside and out there is no reason for them to be any better after the foot is raised up. If the horse will allow a person to touch them all over their body and the horse can stand still while being rubbed down to the coronet band, inside the gaskin and cannon bone, this can be a big help when the time comes to pick the feet up.

Most of the trouble we have with the horse is dealing with their self-preservation or defensiveness. If we can eliminate or minimize this issue, the horse and person can have a better experience and eliminate many issues that may arise. Once a person gets past the point of getting the horse comfortable it is pretty much an issue of just getting the horse to transfer the weight off of the foot to the other three feet. With a rope or by hand you can apply pressure until the horse transfers weight as if they were to cock a hind leg to rest or a front foot that is sore. Once they
learn to balance on the other three feet, taking one foot up and keeping it should not be a problem.

The sound of tools against the hoof or the feel of tools jarring the hoof may need an introduction, but most horses will gain confidence quickly and tolerate this if the experience has been good up to this point. If the horse has learned to stand on three legs patiently, rasping the foot is usually not a problem. However, when pounding in the nails the horse may feel a little bothered, and try to pull his foot away. It is important to avoid this from happening. When introducing the horse to the sound and feel of tools against his feet, be sure to start light and then work your way to pounding on the horse’s hoof. If the horse is comfortable with sliding the hammer across the shoe or light taps on the hoof then you can build to the point were you can pound the nails in.

Some things that can help maintain the horse’s confidence with picking the foot up would be not to hold the foot up too long. If the person is working with more than one foot at a time and rotates around, the person can be efficient with their time and the horse has more opportunities to prepare and give their feet. When shoeing a horse and especially a green colt, I will rotate around to all the feet as I am shoeing them, making sure that the horse does not have to keep a certain foot up for prolonged period of time.

I have talked about building the horse’s confidence, and helping the horse get past his self preservation. I have also said that they need to trust you touching them on the legs and to stand comfortable on three legs. It is good to take your time doing this, but there are many instances when there is not enough time. Sometimes the horse will want to pull his foot away after it is picked up, and you don’t have time to slowly build his confidence. The horse will generally pull his foot away for two reasons, the first being self preservation. The horse does not feel safe or comfortable with you or in the surrounding and would like to have all his feet on the ground to maneuver away from trouble. The second reason is that the horse is not scared or bothered, but simply impatient. Most of the time this comes from having excess energy and in some horses they are just spoiled and are used to walking over the people around them and doing what they want.

It is very important that the horse does not get in a habit of pulling his foot away from you. Something that I do quite regular, takes very little time, and will help the horse to become better the next time you shoe him, is to tie a foot up. The horse needs to stand quiet and learn to stand on three legs. By hobbling a foot (putting a hobble around the coronet band picking the foot up and hobbling the foot to the bicep) they learn to stand on three legs, they get out excess energy, and they learn to become more accepting of their surroundings. It is a lot of work for a horse to travel on three legs and after they have moved around a little they will be much more willing to stand.

In summary, we need to get the horse comfortable with our touch and willing to stand still. Then he must balance on the other three feet when we pick one up. It is important not to hold one foot up until the horse starts leaning or pulls away. Set the foot down before they take control.
Colt Breaking Final

B) Willing Submission -

When a request is made the horse willingly performs the task requiring little to no pressure; it is the horse’s idea. After initial contact the horse performs the task on a loose rein and with no leg pressure. If it is truly the horse’s idea we should not have to drive them to do the job.

1- Displayed 0-10% of the time during the ride.
2- Displayed 20-40% of the time during the ride.
3- Displayed 40-60% of the time during the ride.
4- Displayed 60-80% of the time during the ride.
5- Displayed 80-100% of the time during the ride.

1 2 3 4 5

C) Good Communication -

Learning to read, feel, and understand what the horse is saying in response to our request (Communication involves two individuals, what is the horse saying?). We communicate through the horse’s driving and underlying factors along with feel, timing, and balance.

Driving – Comfort, Companionship, Self-preservation
Underlying – Confidence, Energy

For the majority of the ride the rider displayed signs of…

1- Fighting - (High head set – resentful to direction, high self-preservation, no confidence, no feel, timing, and balance)
2- Arguing - (High head set – self-preservation, no confidence, very little feel, timing, and balance)
3- Disagreement - (Medium head set – displaying moments of feel, timing, and balance, bouncing back and forth from confident to lack of communication, brief glimpses of comfort and companionship)
4- Agreement - (Low head set – horse is being ridden through feel, timing, and balance displaying comfort and companionship for the majority of ride)
5- Total Agreement - (Low head set – true unity, two forces moving together as one, horse experiences total comfort, companionship and confidence with rider, absolutely no sign of self-preservation)

2) Head Height (Confidence) - Intensity of Job and consistency of head

1 2 3 4 5
C) Balanced Direction to Life Ratio

**Direction** – When the slack is taken out of the rein, the horse puts the slack back in the rein with suppleness through the poll and loin 3) **horizontal** and 4) **vertical flexion**.

**Six Signs to identify HD**
1) Broke in poll horizontally, hairline should curve between ears (poll).
2) Nose should be directly underneath the eye, no head tilting.
3) Can not see white in eye, horse should be looking back not forward.
4) Front feet and hind feet should follow on the same path made as the nose.
5) Horse’s body should arc around our leg leg.
6) If horse has horizontal direction should make perfect circles.
   Horizontal direction walking = perfect circle walking, horizontal direction trotting = perfect circle trotting etc.

1 = Standing – displays 1, 2, 3 in six signs to identify HD.
2 = Walking – displays 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, in six signs to ID HD.
3 = Slow Trot - 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6
4 = Trotting – 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6
5 = Loping – 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6

4) **Horizontal**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

5) **Vertical Direction**
1) When the slack is taken out of both reins horse breaks in the poll vertically resulting in the horse’s nose being perpendicular with the ground.

1 = Standing, 2 = Walking, 3 = Slow Trot, 4 = Trotting, 5 = Loping

5) **Vertical**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Life** – Ability to move the horse with any given speed at any given time

1 – Takes many steps to drive into a lope from standing: Horse goes from standing, to walking, to trotting, then finally loping. 5 – Can jump into a lope from standing instantly- Horse goes from standing to loping at any given time.

6) **Life**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

7) **Direction (horizontal) to Life Ratio** = ________________

More life than direction = Lack of confidence in horse
More direction than life = 5:3, 4:3 ok, if life is 2 or less horse is lazy and will begin loosing direction. Balance the ratio.
**D) Solid foundation of Maneuvers (Mechanical)**-

The ability to move the three parts of the horse in any direction, to accomplish any job. (4 stages)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage one-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Stop forward motion, pivot around inside front foot.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage two-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Using the hindquarters to pull the horse in a reverse motion</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage three-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-Shoulder and hindquarters moving together in a lateral motion</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage four-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-Stop forward motion, pivot around the inside hind foot</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**EC) Helping the horse**

(Weight placement/ Length of rein) 1 2 3 4 5

**D) Solid foundation of Maneuvers (Mental)**-

*Horse* and *rider* begin to receive insight, into how they can move together in perfect unity to accomplish a job: Horse experiences willing submission, good communication, a balanced direction to life ratio, and a mechanical foundation of maneuvers all at the same time. It’s like you are riding in the dark and somebody switches on a light, all resistance leaves and it makes perfect sense to *you* and the *horse*. The horse becomes as light as a feather, moving in perfect unity with the person; no resistance in doing the job. We are able to pick up the feet and move them wherever we want. These are the “ah-ha” moments when riding a horse.

Three Stages:
- Stage 1 – No mental foundation
- Stage 2 – Brief seconds during the ride
- Stage 3 – Bouncing from second to minutes during the ride
- Stage 4 – Minutes during the ride
- Stage 5 - Consistency during the ride

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>12)</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
God’s Midterm

A) Willing Submission

All day every day, I am about my father’s business. (Luke 2:49)

In every thing I do, I work at it with all my heart as for working for God not for man; because I know it is from the Lord I will receive the reward of my inheritance. (Colossians 3:23-24)

I serve only one master, I do not get caught up in the world and worry about money. (Matthew 6:24)

I look to my heavenly Father and only Him, nothing is tying me to this world. (Matthew 19:21)

My focus all day is to store up for myself treasures in heaven, not on earth. (Luke 2:49)

What percentage of the day do you have willing submission?

1(0-10%)  2(20-40%)  3(40-60%)  4(60-80%)  5(80-100%)

B) Good Communication

Walk in the Spirit and you shall not fulfill the lusts of the flesh (Galatians 5:16).

Fruits of the Spirit – Love, joy, cheerfulnes, calm delight, peace, rest, longsuffering, gentleness, goodness, faith, meekness, humility, temperance, self control.

Works of the Flesh – Envious, boastful, proud, rude, self-seeking, easily angered, keeps records of wrong, wanting to debate, sexual immorality, contentious, jealousy, fervent mind, fits of rage, selfish ambitions, division, disunion, ill will, spite.

1) What percentage of the day do you seek comfort, companionship and confidence; with the world, with other people, or in your own self-preservation – Shown by the Works of the flesh.

5) What percentage of the day do you have comfort, companionship, and confidence with God – Shown by the Fruits of the Spirit?

Flesh   1(0-10%)  2(20-40%)  3(40-60%)  4(60-80%)  5(80-100%)  Spirit
C) Balanced Direction to Life ratio.

Direction

Unlike a stiff necked Pharisee, I follow God’s word because I choose to, not because I have to (Matthew 23:25-28).

I am supple through the poll and loin (entire body) because I am sanctified daily by God’s spoken word. *(John 17:7)*

I can hear God’s voice. “My sheep hear my voice and I know them and they follow me” *(John 10:27).*

I live off of every word that procedes out of the mouth of God *(Matthew 4:4).*

What percentage of the day do you have “Direction” with God and what percentage of the day are you stiff through the poll and the loin (operating with self-preservation).

Self-preservation = Any thought that envolves yourself: I, me, we, us.

In order to truly have direction we must get rid of our self-preservation. *(Luke 9:23, 1 Corinthians 15:31)*

1- No direction, or False Direction (FD = Following Gods commands, but operating with self-preservation)
2- Following God’s commands with no self-preservation.

1(0-10%) 2(20-40%) 3(40-60%) 4(60-80%) 5(80-100%)

Life

The Lord has the ability to move me, with any given speed at any given time. *(Acts 4:8)*

I can feel the power of the Holy Spirit come on me *(Act 1:8).*

The Holy Spirit is my comforter, counselor, and teacher. *(John 14:26).*

How well can God bring His life (Holy Spirit) into you judged by the fruits of spirit: Love, joy, peace, longsuffering, gentleness, goodness, faith, meekness, humility, temperance, self-control.

1- I have never felt the life of God come in me and experienced the fruits of the spirit.
2- I usually walk in the spirit and do not fulfill the lusts of the flesh (Galations 5:16), my days are empowerd by the Holy Spirit *(Acts 1:8).*

1 2 3 4 5
D) Solid Foundation of Maneuvers- Mechanical

From the time we wake up in the morning, until the time we go to bed at night. We are either being drawn to the kingdom of darkness, or the kingdom of light. The people that we come in contact with are either drawing us to the kingdom (greek = realm) of God, or the kingdom of darkness (John 16:33). When people come in contact with us, we either draw them to the realm of God, or keep them in the world. We cannot control which direction we are being pulled, but we can control who and what we put in front of us, that pulls us. Just like our horses we run into problems when we try to accomplish the job skiping stages.

God’s will for our life: 4 Mechanical stages
- Stage 1 – Save us from the kingdom of darkness. John 3:3
- Stage 2 – Draw us to the kingdom of light. Matthew 6:33
- Stage 3 – Save others from the kingdom of darkness. John 21:17
- Stage 4 – Draw others to the kingdom of light.

If you averaged the seven days of an average week in your life, which mechanical stage would you find yourself in.

1 2 3 4

Solid Foundation of Manuevers- Mental (1 CO 2:16)

It’s like you are riding in the dark and somebody switches on a light (Ephesians 1:17, 3:3), all resistance leaves (John 16:33) and you find yourself riding in absolute perfection (Colossians 1:28), expericing the fruits of the spirit (Galations 5:22, 23).

Stage 1 – No mental foundation
Stage 2- Brief seconds during the day
Stage 3 – Minutes during the day
Stage 4 – Hours during the day
Stage 5 - Consistency during the day

1 2 3 4 5

After taking this quiz you may say it is impossible to meet these standards. Well, you are right it is impossible for us to meet these standards. However, we serve a mighty God, a God of perfection, a God that makes the impossible possible. “With men this is impossible; but with God all things are possible” (Matthew 19:26). We are not talking about perfection in ourselves; we are talking about perfection in Christ Jesus. “…that we might present every man perfect in Christ Jesus” (Colossians 1:28). If we are not moving closer to perfection in Christ Jesus, I guarantee you we are drifting further from it.

What do you want? What do you hope to get out of this life? Is the only hope that you have salvation? “For in this hope we are saved. But who hopes for what he already has? But if we hope for what we do not yet have, we wait for it patiently. In the same way, the Spirit helps us in our weakness” (Romans 8:24-26). Do not become content with mediocrity; strive
for perfection and let the Holy Spirit help you. If you did not do very well on this quiz, that is ok; I usually don’t either. However, I am striving for perfection in Christ Jesus. What are you striving for?

You may have noticed that a good portion of the quiz dealt with communicating with God. I stress to my class, just as I have stressed to you by the theme of this book, if we are to ever have any level of perfection, we must have a good level of communication.